

UC-NRLF



B 4 507 504

YD 12780









# GERMAN GRAMMAR



# A Conversational Grammar of the German Language

WITH COMPREHENSIVE  
REFERENCE-PAGES

FOR USE IN TRANSLATION AND COMPOSITION

AND

*NOTES ON THE HISTORY AND ETYMOLOGY OF GERMAN*

BY

OTTO CHRISTIAN NÄF

B.A. LOND. UNIV.

LATE GERMAN MASTER AT GIGGLESWICK SCHOOL

RIVINGTONS  
*WATERLOO PLACE, LONDON*

MDCCCLXXXVII



PF 3111  
N3

## P R E F A C E

DURING a long experience in teaching German in English schools and preparing pupils for various Examinations, I have often felt the want of a sufficiently complete Grammar *of small bulk*, and especially of comprehensive Reference-Pages, for constant use in Translation and Composition. I have here tried to supply this want, and I hope this effort will meet with some favour, and be granted a trial.

I wish to draw special attention to the "*Reference-Pages*" interspersed throughout the book. I have used them with success for some years in my own classes, and have found them much appreciated by the more thoughtful students. They ought first to be gone through in portions in the Grammar lessons, and the Examples attached to each portion learnt, and the Exercises written out and learnt after correction by the teacher. Then, in the Translation and Composition lessons, these Reference-Pages should be constantly by the side of the student, to be again and again referred to until thoroughly familiar; for it is only thus that they will become of real advantage.

The whole Grammar will be found divided into *Six Terms*, every one complete in itself. Each of the first four has appended to it *Additional Exercises*, to be written out when revising the work of the Term, and a *Dictionary* of the words to be used in the Exercises for writing during the Term, besides a page of *Conversational Sentences*, and a *Poem* or two for Repetition. I have found it a good plan to set a few sentences, words, and verses for every lesson, to be heard by the teacher *viva voce*, before beginning the regular work of the lesson. The same sentences or words, repeated over and over again, must at last become fixed in the memory, and accustom the pupil to the sound and genius of a language.

In the Exercises for writing during the first two Terms, I have purposely confined myself to very few words, so as not to hamper the ready understanding of the grammatical rules and their application, and also because it is important that some common words, though they may be few, should be firmly fixed in the memory during the first few months of learning a new language.

After the Second Term an easy translation-book should be at once begun, and every new word should be shortly parsed in writing. I have, at the commencement of the Third Term, inserted a page containing a short easy piece for translation, and shown how the words ought to be parsed. The number of words to be parsed will of course very rapidly decrease. It is now that the Reference-Pages will become specially useful, and indeed necessary, and they should always be at hand.

A German Dictionary may at this stage be put with advantage into the hands of the student.

The *First Three Terms* treat of the Simple Principal Sentence, and the rules as to the sequence of words in it will be found to go hand in hand with the treatment of the Parts of Speech *per se*.

The *Fourth Term* treats of the Accessory Sentences, and finally the Compound Sentence, with some hints on the Complex Sentence.

The *Fifth Term* introduces the student, now practically acquainted with all rules in Accidence and Syntax, to the idiomatic peculiarities of the various parts of speech, and many differences between the English and German idioms.

The *Sixth Term* contains hints on the Formation of Words, the meaning of Prefixes and Affixes, and the Etymology of many German words; for the more advanced examinations now-a-days require some little knowledge of all these.

This little work does not claim to be a complete guide to all the intricacies of the German language; indeed, any one attempting to write a Grammar of a rich living language must soon become convinced that he has undertaken a task practically interminable, and necessarily incomplete; for though he pile

rule upon rule, and *Nota bene* upon *Nota bene*, until the fear arises that the very multiplicity of instructions and hints may hopelessly confuse and discourage the average student, yet there will loom behind, in the recesses of a living, and therefore progressing, language, whole hosts of idiomatic uses of words or phrases which nothing but a long life in the country itself can teach. The following pages are, then, only compiled with the modest aim of introducing the pupil, in a rational manner, to the broad facts of the German idiom, and thus to lay a safe foundation, upon which an ultimate sound knowledge may be built up by means of diligent study of the German authors, and, if possible, actual intercourse with the people itself.

I shall be thankful for any friendly suggestions as to shortcomings in this work, and I hope that, combining, as it does, the synthetical with the analytical methods of teaching living languages, it may be found to supply a want which I, in company with many of my colleagues, have long felt, namely, that of a handy, yet tolerably complete, companion to the study of German literature and the composition of German themes or letters.

OTTO C. NÄF.

LONDON, *December* 1886.





# CONTENTS

REFERENCE-PAGE <b>A.</b> The German Alphabet—German Handwriting, . . . . .	PAGE xiii
--	--------------

## FIRST TERM.

REFERENCE-PAGE <b>B.</b> On Pronunciation, . . . . .	2
LESSONS 1 and 2. Introductory Rules (1-7); Present Indicative; Imperfect Indicative of Regular Verbs, . . . . .	3
REFERENCE-PAGE <b>C.</b> “Definite” and “Indefinite Article groups” (with Exercises), . . . . .	5
LESSONS 3, 4, 5, and 6. Introductory Rules continued (8-20); Tenses of Verbs and Auxiliaries continued, . . . . .	7
Additional Exercises on the First Term’s Grammar, . . . . .	11
Dictionary of Words, to be used for the Exercises in the First and Second Terms, . . . . .	12
Conversational Sentences, to be learnt during the First Term, . . . . .	13
Poem (“Lurline”), to be learnt by heart during the First Term, . . . . .	14

## SECOND TERM.

Lesson 7. General Rules continued (21, 22); Imperative, . . . . .	16
General Scheme of the Declensions, and Formation of Plural, of the Noun, . . . . .	17
REFERENCE-PAGE <b>D.</b> Detailed Formation of Plural of Nouns (with Exercises), . . . . .	18
Lesson 8. General Rules continued (23-26); Present Subjunctive, . . . . .	21
REFERENCE-PAGE <b>E.</b> Detailed Declension of Nouns (with Exercises), . . . . .	22
Lesson 9. General Rules continued (27-29); Imperfect Subjunctive, . . . . .	24
REFERENCE-PAGE <b>F.</b> Rules for recognising the Gender of Nouns (with Exercises), <sup>1</sup> . . . . .	25
Lesson 10. General Rules continued (30-32); Compound Tenses; Conditional, . . . . .	27
REFERENCE-PAGE <b>G.</b> On the Declension of the Adjective (with Exercises), . . . . .	28
Lesson 11. General Rules continued (33-36); Compound Tenses, . . . . .	31
Lesson 12. General Rules continued (37-40); Compound Tenses (continued), . . . . .	32
Additional Exercises on the Second Term’s Grammar, . . . . .	33
REFERENCE-PAGE <b>H.</b> Scheme of Conjugation of Regular Verbs ( <i>to say</i> ), . . . . .	34
REFERENCE-PAGE <b>I.</b> Scheme of Conjugation of: <i>to have, to be, to become</i> , . . . . .	35
Conversational Sentences to be learnt during the Second Term, . . . . .	36
Poems (Two), to be learnt by heart during the Second Term, . . . . .	37
REFERENCE-PAGE <b>J.</b> Scheme of Sequence of Words in a Primary Sentence, . . . . .	38

## THIRD TERM.

Example of Parsing, . . . . .	40
REFERENCE-PAGE <b>K.</b> The Auxiliaries of Mood (with Exercises), . . . . .	41
“ ” <b>L.</b> Hints on recognising Regular Verbs; Notes on Auxiliary, . . . . .	44
“ ” <b>M.</b> General hints on the Irregular Verb (Exercises), . . . . .	46
“ ” <b>N.</b> Alphabetical List of Irregular Verbs, . . . . .	49
“ ” <b>O.</b> On the Prepositions (with Exercises), . . . . .	52
“ ” <b>P.</b> Separable and Inseparable Verbs (with Exercises), . . . . .	54
“ ” <b>Q.</b> Personal Pronouns; Reflexive Pronouns, . . . . .	56

	PAGE
Dictionary of Words for the Exercises in the Third Term, . . . . .	58
Additional Exercises on the Third Term's Grammar, . . . . .	60
Conversational Sentences, to be learnt during the Third Term, . . . . .	61
Poem ("The Thunderstorm"), to be learnt by heart during the Third Term, . . . . .	62

## FOURTH TERM.

REFERENCE-PAGE	<b>R.</b>	The Numerals (with Exercises), . . . . .	64
"	"	<b>S.</b> Possessive, Demonstrative, Interrogative Pronouns (Exercises), . . . . .	66
"	"	<b>T.</b> Comparison of Adjectives (with Exercises), . . . . .	68
"	"	<b>U.</b> Indefinite Pronouns ; Adverbs (with Exercises), . . . . .	70
"	"	<b>V.</b> Relative, Correlative Pronouns (with Exercises), . . . . .	72
"	"	<b>W.</b> Conjunctions ; Alphabetical List, . . . . .	74
		Exercises on the above, . . . . .	76
"	"	<b>X.</b> Oratio Obliqua (Indirect statements, questions, commands), . . . . .	78
"	"	<b>Y.</b> Interjections ; Impersonal Verbs (Exercises), . . . . .	80
		On the Assertion and Predicate, . . . . .	82
"	"	<b>Z.</b> Complete Rules on the Sequence of Words (Exercises), . . . . .	83
		General Sentences (Recapitulatory), . . . . .	85
		Dictionary of Words for the Exercises in the Fourth Term, . . . . .	86
		Conversational Sentences, to be learnt during the Fourth Term, . . . . .	88
		Poems (Two), to be learnt by heart during the Fourth Term, . . . . .	89

## FIFTH TERM.

## NOTES ON IDIOMATIC USES OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

REFERENCE-PAGE	<b>AA.</b>	Noun and Article (Exercises), . . . . .	92
"	"	<b>BB.</b> Gender of Nouns, . . . . .	94
"	"	<b>CC.</b> Number of Nouns, . . . . .	95
"	"	<b>DD.</b> Adjective (Exercises), . . . . .	96
"	"	<b>EE.</b> Prepositions (with Exercises), . . . . .	98
"	"	<b>FF.</b> Pronouns (Personal, Possessive, Relative), . . . . .	106
		Indefinite Pronouns, . . . . .	108
"	"	<b>GG.</b> On the Government of Verbs, . . . . .	110
"	"	<b>HH.</b> On the Translation of the English Infinitive, . . . . .	114
"	"	<b>KK.</b> On the Translation of the English Verbal in <i>-ing</i> , . . . . .	116
"	"	<b>LL.</b> On the Past Participle and some Tenses, . . . . .	118
		Idioms and Proverbs, to be learnt during the Fifth Term, . . . . .	120
		Poems, to be learnt by heart during the Fifth Term, . . . . .	121
		Example of German Composition, . . . . .	124

## SIXTH TERM.

## HISTORICAL OUTLINE, ETYMOLOGY, AND WORD-FORMATION.

HISTORICAL OUTLINE, . . . . .	128
ETYMOLOGY. Vowel and Consonant Changes—	
I. Vowels:	
<b>A.</b> Ablaut, . . . . .	133
<b>B.</b> Umlaut, . . . . .	134
<b>C.</b> Brechung [with Schwächung and Dehnung], . . . . .	134

II. Consonants :	PAGE
A. Spirantes, . . . . .	135
B. Liquidæ, . . . . .	135
C. Mutæ, . . . . .	136
Word-Formation. General Remarks, . . . . .	137
I. Inner or Root-vowel changes (List), . . . . .	137
II. Derivation of Words—	
A. By <i>Suffixes</i> :	
(a) <i>Verbs</i> [=en, =eln, =iren, =ern, =zen], . . . . .	139
(b) <i>Substantives</i> [=er, =ner, =in, =el, =al, =ling, =lein, =hen, =ung, =ei, =miß, =heit, =tum, =schaft], . . . . .	139
(c) <i>Adjectives</i> [=en, =ern, =ig, =icht, =isch, =lich, =sam, =bar, =haft], . . . . .	140
B. By <i>Prefixes</i> :	
(a) <i>Verbs</i> [ge-, be-, er-, ver-, zer-, ent-, miß-], . . . . .	140
(b) <i>Substantives</i> [Ge-, Un-, Miß-], . . . . .	141
(c) <i>Adjectives</i> [un-], . . . . .	141
III. Composition of Words—	
(a) <i>Verbs</i> (with Prepositions and Adverbs), . . . . .	141
(b) <i>Substantives</i> :	
(i.) with Prepositions or Adverbs, . . . . .	142
(ii.) with Verbs, . . . . .	142
(iii.) with Substantives, . . . . .	142
(iv.) with Adjectives, . . . . .	142
(c) <i>Adjectives</i> :	
(i.) with Prepositions or Adverbs, . . . . .	142
(ii.) with Verbs, . . . . .	142
(iii.) with Substantives, . . . . .	142
(iv.) with Adjectives, . . . . .	142

## APPENDIX.

A. SHORT ETYMOLOGICAL DICTIONARY (about 300 words), . . . . .	143
B. LISTS OF WORDS QUITE OR NEARLY ALIKE IN ENGLISH AND GERMAN, . . . . .	150

## E R R A T A

Page 19. Feminine Nouns. *After* GENERAL RULE: *Plural*: — en (or =n);

*Insert* (=n *after* c *or* l *or* r); as: . . .

„ 25. In **B.** Feminine, No. 3, *for* **echt** *read* **ucht**.

„ 26. Under heading: *Using Reference-Pages* **D.** and **E.** with **F.**, alter the 3d column as follows:

der Frau, E. II.

des Bruders, E. I. B.

der Straße, E. II.

des Tages, E. I. B.

des Fräuleins, E. III.

„ 54. II. **Separable Verbs** (1)—

*for*: (See Rules 10 and 11 on page 38)

*read*: (See 5, pages 38 and 83, and also page 82, **B.** (c.)).

GERMAN HANDWRITING

# The German Alphabet.

ALTHOUGH there is a tendency in Germany now both to print books and write letters, etc., in English characters, yet it is still absolutely necessary to be acquainted with the peculiar characters used in printing and writing German, and it is very desirable that students should use such in translating the Exercises given here, in writing.

Capitals.	Small letters.		Examples.
A A A	a a a	Alexander	Alexander
B B B	b b b	Belfast	Belfast
C C C	c c c	Columbus	Columbus
D D D	d d d	Dublin	Dublin
E E E	e e e	England	England
F F F	f f f	Fingal	Fingal
G G G	g g g	Gladstone	Gladstone
H H H	h h h	Himalaya	Himalaya
I I I	i i i	Ignatius	Ignatius
J J J	j j j	Juno	Juno
K K K	k k k	Kingston	Kingston
L L L	l l l	London	London
M M M	m m m	Mexico	Mexico
N N N	n n n	November	November
O O O	o o o	Odessa	Odessa
P P P	p p p	Pesth	Pesth
Q Q Q	q q q	Queensland	Queensland
R R R	r r r	Russland (Russia)	Russland
S S S	s s s	St. James	St. James
T T T	t t t	Tiber	Tiber
U U U	u u u	Uhlán	Uhlán
V V V	v v v	Venus	Venus
W W W	w w w	Warwick	Warwick
X X X	x x x	Xerxes	Xerxes
Y Y Y	y y y	Yacht	Yacht
Z Z Z	z z z	Zululand	Zululand

Notes.—s at the beginning or in the middle of a word or syllable is *ſ*; but s at the end of a word or syllable is *s*. Distinguish *ſſ* = s from *ſſ* = f.

ss at the end of a word or syllable is always *ſſ*. Distinguish *ſſ* = ss from *ſſ* = ts.

St is sometimes written *ſt* instead of *ſt*. Distinguish *ſt* = St from *ſt* = N.

c = c loses the little mark when in combination with *ſ*, as: *ſc* = ch; *ſſ* = sch.



## Examples in German Writing.

Albert	hat	einen	Bruder	in	Calais	oder	Dover	
<i>Albert hat einen Bruder in Calais oder Dover</i>								
Albert	has	a	brother	in	Calais	or	Dover	
England	und	Frankreich	sind	zwei	Großmächte			
<i>England und Frankreich sind zwei Großmächte.</i>								
England	and	France	are	two	great-powers			
Heinrich	war	in	Irland;	Johann	in	Kalifornien		
<i>Heinrich war in Irland; Johann in Kalifornien.</i>								
Henry	was	in	Ireland;	John	in	California		
London	ist	die	Metropole	Europas;	New-York,	Amerikas		
<i>London ist die Metropole Europas; New-York, Amerikas</i>								
London	is	the	metropolis	of Europe;	New-York,	of America		
Ofen	und	Pest	sind	Zwillings-Städte	in	Ungarn		
<i>Ofen und Pest sind Zwillings-Städte in Ungarn.</i>								
Ofen (Buda)	and	Pest	are	twin-towns	in	Hungary		
Das	Quecksilber	ist	wie	flüssiges	Silber	anzusehen		
<i>Das Quecksilber ist wie flüssiges Silber anzusehen.</i>								
Quicksilver	is	like	liquid	silver	to look at			
Rom	war	das	Zentrum	der	alten	Welt		
<i>Rom war das Zentrum der alten Welt.</i>								
Rome	was	the	centre	of the	old	world		
Der	Titicaca	See	liegt	in	Süd-Amerika			
<i>Der Titicaca See liegt in Süd-Amerika.</i>								
The	Titicaca	lake	lies	in	South-America			
Die	Uhlanen	sind	die	Leichte-Infanterie	der	Preußen		
<i>Die Uhlanen sind die Leichte-Infanterie der Preußen.</i>								
The	Uhlans	are	the	Light Infantry	of the	Prussians		
Von	den	Knaben	ist	Wilhelm	nach	Yokohama	gegangen	
<i>Von den Knaben ist Wilhelm nach Yokohama gegangen.</i>								
Of	the	boys	is	William	to	Yokohama	gone	
Der	Xylograph	ist	eine	neue	Schreibmaschine			
<i>Der Xylograph ist eine neue Schreibmaschine.</i>								
The	Xylograph	is	a	new	writing-machine			

Notice.—Capital initials must be used in German for all nouns and words used as nouns, and also for the Pronouns of the 3d person plural, if used instead of the 2d person, in addressing persons.—*ich, I*, has no capital initial, except, like all other words, when at the beginning of a sentence.

## NOTICE

THE student will find that in this Grammar the useless **h** after a **t** is regularly omitted ; thus: *tun*, *to do* ; *Türe* (f.), *door*. As this return to the more correct old spelling may however be too thorough for many, attention is here drawn to the fact that the etymologically doubtful or incorrect **th** is still retained in most modern books, etc., in the following words, and of course all their derivatives or compounds :

<i>Thal</i> (n.), <i>valley, dale</i>	<i>Thor</i> (n.), <i>gate</i>	<i>[That</i> (f.), <i>deed]</i>
<i>Thon</i> (m.), <i>clay</i>	<i>Thräne</i> (f.), <i>tear</i>	<i>[Unterthan</i> (m.), <i>subject]</i>
but : <i>Ton</i> (m.), <i>sound</i>	<i>Thron</i> (m.), <i>throne</i>	<i>Thüre</i> (f.), <i>door</i>
<i>Ther</i> (m.), <i>fool</i>	<i>thun</i> (irreg.), <i>to do</i>	

as also in the foreign words which have an original **th**, as :

<i>Theater</i> (n.), <i>theatre</i>	<i>Thema</i> (n.), <i>theme</i>	<i>Katheeder</i> (n.), <i>professor's chair</i>
<i>Thée</i> (m.), <i>tea</i>	<i>These</i> (f.), <i>thesis</i>	<i>Kathedrale</i> (f.), <i>cathedral</i>

and also in Proper Names of persons, towns, or countries, as : *Agathe*, *Bertha*, *Mathilde*, *Theodor*, *Athen*, etc.

In the following words and their derivatives, on the other hand, the **h** after the **t** is universally omitted in modern spelling :

<i>Abenteuer</i> (n.), <i>adventure</i>	<i>Teil</i> (m.), <i>part</i>	<i>Turm</i> (m.), <i>tower</i>
<i>Tau</i> (m.), <i>dew</i>	<i>[teils, partly]</i>	<i>verteidigen</i> , <i>to defend</i>
<i>Tau</i> (n.), <i>rope, hawser</i>	<i>teuer</i> , <i>dear</i>	

thus also in the suffix *-tum*, as : *Reichertum* (n.), *empire* ; and in final **th** the **h** is regularly omitted now :

<i>Armuth</i> (f.), <i>poverty</i>	<i>Gluth</i> (f.), <i>glow</i>	<i>Muth</i> (m.), <i>courage</i>	<i>roth</i> , <i>red</i>
<i>At=em</i> (m.), <i>breath</i>	<i>Heirat</i> (f.), <i>marriage</i>	<i>Not</i> (f.), <i>need</i>	<i>Rute</i> (f.), <i>rod</i>
<i>Blüt=e</i> (f.), <i>blossom</i>	<i>Lot</i> (n.), <i>ounce</i>	<i>Pat=e</i> (m.), <i>godfather</i>	<i>Wert</i> (m.), <i>worth</i>
<i>Flut</i> (f.), <i>flood</i>	<i>Miet=e</i> (f.), <i>rent</i>	<i>rat=en</i> , <i>to advise</i>	<i>Wut</i> (f.), <i>fury</i> .

## FIRST TERM

As soon as the pupil can read and write German a little, the Lessons should be begun ; and also a very short portion of the Conversational Sentences on page 13, of the Dictionary on page 12, and of the Poem on page 14, should be set for each lesson, after being two or three times read over (and explained) by the teacher.

## REFERENCE-PAGE B.

## On Pronunciation.

The most important rules only are given here. Pronunciation in its nicer shades must be learnt orally from a well-educated German.

## Vowels.

<i>a</i>	<i>a</i>	always like <i>a</i> in <i>art</i> .		<i>u</i>	<i>u</i>	always like <i>u</i> in <i>rule</i> .
<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	always like <i>o</i> in <i>tone</i> .		<i>au</i>	<i>au</i>	always like <i>ou</i> in <i>thou</i> .
<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (1) \text{ open } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} (i.) \text{ long, as in } \textit{there} ; \textit{der, er, wer, etc.} \\ (ii.) \text{ short, almost like } \textit{a} \text{ in } \textit{hat} ; \textit{Herr, Werf, etc.} \end{array} \right. \\ (2) \text{ close } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} (i.) \text{ long, like } \textit{a} \text{ in } \textit{sane} ; \textit{geht, Weg, etc.} \\ (ii.) \text{ short, as in } \textit{then} ; \textit{wenn, Feld, etc.} \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right.$				$\left. \right\} \text{[NEVER like } \textit{e} \text{ in } \textit{he}.]$

*N.B.*—*ee, ee* is always close and long, as *a* in *sane* ; except only in *feer* and *Seerre*, where it is open and long, as *e* in *there*.

<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (1) \text{ short, as in } \textit{this} ; \textit{wild, Hirt, etc.} \\ (2) \text{ long, like } \textit{e} \text{ in } \textit{these} ; \textit{wir, ihn, etc.} \end{array} \right.$	[NEVER like <i>i</i> in <i>high</i> .]
<i>ü</i>	<i>ü</i>	always like <i>u</i> in <i>sâr</i> ( <i>safe</i> ) in French ; <i>für, müde</i> .	
<i>ö</i>	<i>ö</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (1) \text{ open, short, almost like } \textit{e} \text{ in } \textit{her} ; \textit{Hölle, können.} \\ (2) \text{ close, long, like } \textit{eu} \text{ in } \textit{deux} \text{ in French ; } \textit{Söhne, schön.} \end{array} \right.$	
<i>ä</i>	<i>ä</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (1) \text{ open, long, like } \textit{e} \text{ in } \textit{there} ; \textit{Vär, gähren.} \\ (2) \text{ close, long, like } \textit{a} \text{ in } \textit{sane} ; \textit{Träne, gähnen.} \end{array} \right.$	

*N.B.*—Vowels followed by a doubled consonant are, as a rule, pronounced short.

*eu, äü* } have a short sound made up of that of *e* in *her* and that of the *u* in the French *une* ;  
*(eu), (äu)* } *Freund, Häufer*. This sound somewhat approaches that of *oy* in *boy*.

*N.B.*—*ie* sounds like *e* in *he* ; *ei* sounds like *i* in *high*.

## Consonants.

The consonants in German have the same sound as in English, except :

*c* before *ä, e, i* sounds like *-ts* in *gets*.

*ch* is guttural after *a, o, u, au*, as *ch* in *loch* (Scotch) ; it is soft in all other cases at the end of a syllable ; (but like *k* in *king* when at the beginning of a word.)

*c* before *a, o, u*, or any consonant (except *h*), is like *k* in *king*.

*g* at the beginning of a syllable is hard, like *g* in *gone*.

*g* after *e, i, ä, ö, ü, äu*, or a consonant, is sounded like a soft *g*.

*h* always aspirated at the beginning of a syllable, as *h* in *horse* ; when not initial, it is scarcely sounded at all.

*j* always like *y* in *young*.

*w* always like *v* in *veal*.

*v* always like *f* in *feel*.

*z* always like *-ts* in *gets*.

*qu* always like *kv* as in *buck-venison*.

*ph* like *ph* in *Philip*.

*sch* always like *sh* in *shoot*.

Most German words have one strongly accented syllable, which must be carefully noted by the pupil. In words alike in English and German, the accented syllable often differs, and in most cases the German accent is nearer the end of the word than in English, as : *Konzert, Paris, Berlin, Musik*, etc.

## LESSON I.

1. The Noun or Pronoun expressing the doer of the action indicated by the verb is in the Nominative, that expressing the object of the action, generally in the Accusative Case.

2. The Accusative and Nominative of all Feminine and Neuter words in the Singular, as well as of all Plural words, are the same in form.

3. The Verb expressing the action of a Substantive must always be in the Third Person and agree with it as to Number.

4. All Infinitives end in —en (or —n); if this ending is cut off, the *root* of the Verb remains; this root never changes in the Regular Verbs.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE OF REGULAR VERBS.

SUBJECT.	ASSERTION.	OBJECT.	SUBJECT.	ASSERTION.	OBJECT.
ich	hol-e	die Birne	I	fetch	the pear
du	lob-st	das Dorf	thou	praisest	the village
er (ſie, es)	kauf-t	das Huhn	he (ſhe, it)	buys	the fowl
wir	ſuch-en	das Ei	we	seek	the egg
ihr	verkauf-et	die Frucht	ye	sell	the fruit
ſie (Sie)	hör-en	das Lied	they (you)	hear	the ſong

## WORDS.

die (f. s.), das (n. s.), the	und, and	eine (f. s.), ein (n. s.), a, an
die Mutter, the mother	lob-en, to praise	das Kind, the child
die Blume, the flower	ſag-en, to ſay	das Dorf, the village
die Feder, the pen	kauf-en, to buy	das Buch, the book
die Roſe, the roſe	ſuch-en, to ſeek	das Glas, the glaſſ
die Stadt, the town	hol-en, to fetch	das Mädchen, the girl
die Schule, the ſchool	verkauf-en, to ſell	das Ei, the egg

## Exercise for Translation into German.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. We ſeek the child.<br>3. The mother praiſes the ſchool. [3.]<br>5. The child ſeeks the book.<br>7. They praiſe the town.<br>9. You ſell the flower and a glaſſ. | 2. The girl buys a pen and a roſe.<br>4. Ye ſell the flower.<br>6. The mother ſeeks the child.<br>8. You praiſe the roſe.<br>10. A child fetches an egg. |
|--|--|

## LESSON 2.

5. Almost all verbs with *v*, *u*, *eu* or *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, *äu* in the Root are regular, *i.e.* the Root never changes throughout the Conjugation.

6. In Simple Statements the order of words in German is the same as in English, *i.e.* Subject, Assertion (Verb), Object.

7. In Questions the order is: Assertion (Verb), Subject, Object; hence the English *do*, *does*, *did*, etc., are never translated.

AFFIRMATIVE: Der Vater lobt das Kind. *The father praises the child.*

INTERROGATIVE: Lobt der Vater das Kind? *Does the father praise the child?*

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF REGULAR VERBS.

SUBJECT.	ASSERTION.	OBJECT.	SUBJECT.	ASSERTION.	OBJECT.
ich	hol-te	die Dame	<i>I</i>	<i>fetched</i>	<i>the lady</i>
du	hör-test	das Horn	<i>thou</i>	<i>didst hear</i>	<i>the horn</i>
er (sie, es)	lieb-te	das Thier	<i>he (she, it)</i>	<i>loved</i>	<i>the animal</i>
wir	such-ten	die Pfeife	<i>we</i>	<i>sought</i>	<i>the pipe</i>
ihr	sag-tet	das Wort	<i>ye</i>	<i>said</i>	<i>the word</i>
sie (Sie)	kauf-ten	das Gemälde	<i>they (you)</i>	<i>bought</i>	<i>the picture</i>

## WORDS.

der (m. s.), <i>the</i>	ein (m. s.), <i>a, an</i>	einige, <i>some</i>
der König, <i>the king</i>	hör-en, <i>to hear</i>	das Pferd, <i>the horse</i>
der Vater, <i>the father</i>	lieb-en, <i>to love</i>	das Bild, <i>the picture</i>
die Tochter, <i>the daughter</i>	glaub-en, <i>to believe</i>	ja, <i>yes (in answers)</i>
die Straße, <i>the street</i>	nein, <i>no (in answers)</i>	sehr, <i>very, much (intensity)</i>
die Frau, <i>the woman</i>	kein, <i>no (before a noun)</i>	viel, <i>much (quantity)</i>
das Wort, <i>the word</i>	aber, <i>but (conjunction)</i>	sehr viel, <i>very much (quantity)</i>

## Exercise.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. The daughter loved the picture much.     | 2. Did the father buy (7) the horse? Yes. |
| 3. Did you seek (7) the street? Yes.        | 4. The king heard the lady.               |
| 5. Do they fetch (7) the child? No.         | 6. We bought no horse, but a picture.     |
| 7. Does the father praise (7) the daughter? | 8. Did the king praise (7) the woman?     |
| 9. The mother praises the child.            | 10. She loved the picture and bought it.  |



## REFERENCE-PAGE C.

(a) The 'DEFINITE ARTICLE GROUP' of Determinative Adjectives. *bestimmende* *definitive*

	M. S.	F. S.	N. S.	PLURAL.	ENGLISH.
Nom.	der	die	das	die	the
Acc.	den				
Gen.	des	der	des	der	of the
Dat.	dem	der	dem	den	to the

1. All the members of this group are declined like *der* and are pure adjectives, i.e. they belong to some noun, with which they must strictly agree in Gender, Number, and Case.

*The Only Members of this group are :*

	M. S.	F. S.	N. S.	PLURAL.	ENGLISH.
Nom.	der	die	das	die	the
	dieser	diese	dieses	diese	this, these
	jener	jene	jenes	jene	that, those

	M. S.	F. S.	N. S.	PLURAL.	ENGLISH.
Nom.	welcher	welche	welches	welche	which?
	jeder	jede	jedes		every, each
	mancher	manche	manches	(manche)	many-a

NOTICE: =as (n. s.) of *das* becomes =es in the other members of the group.

2. Sometimes *this*, *that*, *which*? are separated from their nouns by a 3d person of some tense of the verb *to be*, as, *This is my father*; when used thus, the neuter singular *das* or *dieses*, *jenes*, *welches*? are employed, and no agreement with the noun takes place, as, *das ist mein Vater*.

## (b) The 'INDEFINITE ARTICLE GROUP' of Determinative Adjectives.

	M. S.	F. S.	N. S.	PLURAL.	ENGLISH.
Nom.	kein	keine	kein	keine	no
Acc.	keinen				
Gen.	keines	keiner	keines	keiner	of no
Dat.	keinem	keiner	keinem	keinen	to no

1. All the members of this group are declined like *kein*, and are pure adjectives, and must be followed by a noun, with which they agree strictly in Gender, Number, and Case.

*The Only Members of this group are :*

	M. S.	F. S.	N. S.	PLURAL.	ENGLISH.
Nom.	ein	eine	ein	(einige)	a, an (some)
	kein	keine	kein	keine	no (before a substantive)
	was für ein...?	was für eine...?	was für ein...?	was für...?	What sort of ..?

*and all the Possessive Adjectives :*

	M. S.	F. S.	N. S.	PLURAL.	ENGLISH.
Nom.	mein	meine	mein	meine	my
	dein	deine	dein	deine	thy
	sein	seine	sein	seine	his
	ihr	ihre	ihr	ihre	her
	sein	seine	sein	seine	its

	M. S.	F. S.	N. S.	PLURAL.	ENGLISH.
Nom.	unser	unsere	unser	unsere	our
	euer	eure	euer	eure	your
	ihr	ihre	ihr	ihre	their
	[Ihr	Ihre	Ihr	Ihre	your]

(The latter used in polite address.)

2. When the noun to which these adjectives belong is not expressed after them, they change like the members of the "Definite Article" group (see *a* above), as: *meiner*, *meine*, *meines*, *meine*, *mine*. *Was für eines?* *What sort?* (neuter).



## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE C.

## WORDS.

er (ſie, eſ), iſt, *he (ſhe, it) is*  
 der Bleiſtift, *the pencil*  
 der Brief, *the letter*  
 der Hund, *the dog*  
 der Hut, *the hat*

belohnen *to reward*  
 ſagen (with Dative) *to ſay (to)*  
 der Lehrer, *the teacher*  
 der Schüler, *the pupil*  
 der Mann, *the man*

ſtrafen, *to puniſh*  
 fragen, *to aſk*  
 der Ring, *the ring*  
 der Rock, *the coat*  
 der Wein, *the wine*

## (a.)

1. *This teacher puniſhed this pupil.*
2. *This child ſaid it to the father.*
3. *Which man praiſes that ſchool?*
4. *That man ſeeks this letter.*
5. *This is the ring of that woman.*

Dieſer Lehrer ſtrafte dieſen Schüler.  
 Dieſes Kind ſagte eſ dem Vater.  
 Welcher Mann lobt jene Schule?  
 Jener Mann ſucht dieſen Brief.  
 Dieſes iſt der Ring jener Frau.

## Exercise on (a.)

1. That pupil aſks this teacher.
3. Which [C. a. 2.] is the pen of the daughter?
5. Which book did you buy, this or that?
7. No, he ſought that letter.
9. Many-a man praiſes that child.

2. This teacher ſeeks this pencil.
4. He rewarded many-a pupil.
6. Did the king (Nom.) ſeek this letter?
8. This [C. a. 2.] is the hat of that woman.
10. Which coat did he buy? This.

## (b.)

1. *My father ſold his wine.*
2. *Her mother ſaid it to her daughter.*
3. *Their teacher ſeeks his pupil.*
4. *This is my ring, it is mine.*
5. *What ſort of dog did he buy?*

Mein Vater verkaufte ſeinen Wein.  
 Ihre Mutter ſagte eſ ihrer Tochter.  
 Ihr Lehrer ſucht ſeinen Schüler.  
 Dieſes iſt mein Ring, eſ iſt meiner.  
 Waſ für einen Hund kaufte er?

## Exercise on (b.)

1. We reward his pupil.
3. Thy dog loves its teacher.
5. Do they hear our dog? Yes or no?
7. He bought his coat and mine. [C. b. 2.]
9. I heard your father and your mother.

2. I ſaid it to my teacher.
4. This man bought our wine.
6. Our mother loves her ring.
8. He puniſhed my dog and my child.
10. What ſort of pencil did he ſeek

## LESSON 3.

8. In German one person is familiarly addressed by *du*, *thou*, several persons by *ihr*, *you*, *ye*. In addressing any one politely, strangers especially, the third person Plural must be used, both in the Singular, and the Plural. In writing, the pronouns of the third person Plural have in this case a capital letter always. Thus :

*du* liebst, *thou* lovest ; *ihr* liebt, *ye* love ; *Sie* lieben, *you* love.

9. Be very careful to make the Possessive Adjectives agree in person with the Personal Pronouns, if they refer to the same person, thus :

*du* liebst *deine* Mutter      *thou* lovest *thy* mother.  
*ihr* liebt *eure* Mutter      *ye* love *your* mother.  
*Sie* lieben *Ihre* Mutter      *you* love *your* mother.  
*sie* lieben *ihre* Mutter      *they* love *their* mother.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT OF INDICATIVE OF *haben*, *to have*.

SUBJECT.	ASSERTION (Verb).	OBJECT.	SUBJECT.	ASSERTION (Verb).	OBJECT.
<i>ich</i>	<i>habe, hatte</i>	<i>den Tisch</i>	<i>I</i>	<i>have, had</i>	<i>the table</i>
<i>du</i>	<i>hast, hattest</i>	<i>diese Uhr</i>	<i>thou</i>	<i>hast, hadst</i>	<i>this watch</i>
<i>er (sie, es)</i>	<i>hat, hatte</i>	<i>dieses Geld</i>	<i>he (she, it)</i>	<i>has, had</i>	<i>this money</i>
<i>wir</i>	<i>haben, hatten</i>	<i>manche Frucht</i>	<i>we</i>	<i>have, had</i>	<i>many-a fruit</i>
<i>ihr</i>	<i>habt, hattet</i>	<i>jenes Messer</i>	<i>ye</i>	<i>have, had</i>	<i>that knife</i>
<i>sie (Sie)</i>	<i>haben, hatten</i>	<i>jede Blume</i>	<i>they (you)</i>	<i>have, had</i>	<i>every flower</i>

## WORDS.

<i>der Kaiser, the emperor</i>	<i>belohn-en, to reward</i>	<i>die Stadt, the town</i>
<i>der Jüngling, the young-man</i>	<i>gehörch-en (with dative), to obey</i>	<i>die Uhr, the watch</i>
<i>der Teppich, the carpet</i>	<i>oder, or</i>	<i>die Frucht, the fruit</i>
<i>der Tisch, the table</i>	<i>auch, also (even)</i>	<i>das Geld, the money</i>
<i>der Stuhl, the chair</i>	<i>wer? who?</i>	<i>das Papier, the paper</i>
<i>der Oheim, the uncle</i>	<i>brav, well-behaved</i>	<i>das Messer, the knife</i>
<i>die Stunde, the hour</i>	<i>unartig, naughty</i>	<i>das Leben, (the) life</i>

## Exercise.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Which paper have you, this or that?              | 2. I have no paper, but I have a pen.    |
| 3. Had I the money? No.                             | 4. Has the emperor a watch? He has this. |
| 5. The girl had a picture, but which?               | 6. We have very much money.              |
| 7. Who had this horse? He had that.                 | 8. Has he this knife or that? That.      |
| 9. They obey (to) the young man. ( <i>Dative</i> .) | 10. She does reward her daughter.        |

## LESSON 4.

10. The verbs *sein* (*to be*) and *werden* (*to become*) are generally accompanied by a noun or adjective as Predicate. This Predicate, if a noun, is always Nominative, and if an adjective, is invariable ; it stands after the assertion.

11. Place of the negation **nicht**, *not* : [*do, did, does* are *not* translated].

(a) After the object or Accusative : *Er liebt das Kind nicht.* *He does not love the child.*

(b) Before the predicate or Nominative : *Es ist nicht das Kind.* *It is not the child.*

*Note.*—**nicht** often precedes the object, if it negatives it emphatically :

*Er liebt nicht den Vater, er liebt den Bruder.*

*Kein, no*, is preferred to *nicht ein, not a* ; as, *er ist kein König, he is not a king.*

Present Indicative of *sein, to be*, and *werden, to become*.

SUBJECT.	ASSERTION (Verb).	PREDICATE.	SUBJECT.	ASSERTION (Verb).	PREDICATE.
ich	bin, werde	ein König	I	<i>am, become</i>	<i>a king</i>
du	bist, wirst	alt	thou	<i>art, becomest</i>	<i>old</i>
er (sie, es)	ist, wird	brav	he (she, it)	<i>is, becomes</i>	<i>well-behaved</i>
wir	sind, werden	jung	we	<i>are, become</i>	<i>young</i>
ihr	seid, werdet	reich	ye	<i>are, become</i>	<i>rich</i>
sie (Sie)	sind, werden	arm	they (you)	<i>are, become</i>	<i>poor</i>

## WORDS.

der Bruder, <i>the brother</i>	ma <del>ch</del> -en, <i>to make</i>	das Haus, <i>the house</i>
der Sohn, <i>the son</i>	lach-en, <i>to laugh</i>	das Silber, <i>(the) silver</i>
der Nefte, <i>the nephew</i>	gut, <i>good</i>	das Gold, <i>(the) gold</i>
die Schwester, <i>the sister</i>	schön, <i>beautiful</i>	das Zimmer, <i>the room</i>
die Nichte, <i>the niece</i>	groß, <i>great, tall</i>	das Thal, <i>the valley</i>
die Tante, <i>the aunt</i>	klein, <i>small</i>	das Blatt, <i>the leaf</i>
die Liebe, <i>(the) love</i>	schmutzig, <i>dirty</i>	rein, <i>clean</i>

## Exercise.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Am I tall? No, thou art not tall.   | 2. Are the rooms beautiful? Yes, they are clean. |
| 3. Do we become very poor? Yes, very.  | 4. The king is not good, but he is rich.         |
| 5. They become rich, but we are poor.  | 6. What sort of [C. b.] man is he? He is good.   |
| 7. You are not well-behaved, my child. | 8. Which is my son? This is he. [C. a. 2.]       |
| 9. This [C. a. 2] is not my pen. No.   | 10. Does she buy his table? She buys this.       |

## LESSON 5.

12. Throughout the verbs, regular and irregular, the third person is the same in form as the first, with the one exception of the third person Singular Present Indicative.

13. The Imperfect Indicative has the following invariable rules: The 2d person Singular adds —st to the first, the third person is the same in form exactly as the first, and the Plurals are always in: 1. —en; 2. —et; 3. —en.

14. The Future Simple of all Verbs, without one exception, is formed by adding the Infinitive of any verb to the Present Indicative of *werden*, (*to become*) [see Lesson 4.] as, *du wirst lachen*, *thou wilt laugh*.

15. In Primary Sentences, whether affirmative, negative, or interrogative, always place the Infinitive last in the sentence.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE of *sein* (*to be*) and *werden* (*to become*).

SUBJECT.	ASSERTION.	PREDICATE.	SUBJECT.	ASSERTION.	PREDICATE.
ich	war, wurde	ein König	I	was, became	a king
du	warst, wurdest	reich	thou	wast, becamest	rich
er (sie, es)	war, wurde	wohl	he (she, it)	was, became	well
wir	waren, wurden	fleißig	we	were, became	diligent
ihr	waret, wurdet	nicht gut	ye	were, became	not good
sie (Sie)	waren, wurden	glücklich	they (you)	were, became	happy

## WORDS.

der Mensch, <i>the human being</i>	wählen, <i>to choose</i>	die Liebe, <i>the love</i>
der Mann, <i>the man, male</i>	zählen, <i>to count</i>	das Kleid, <i>the dress</i>
der Wald, <i>the forest</i>	zeigen, <i>to show</i>	das Hemd, <i>the shirt</i>
der Fürst, <i>the prince</i>	reisen, <i>to travel</i>	das Eisen, <i>the iron</i>
der Knabe, <i>the boy</i>	wie? <i>how?</i>	das Heft, <i>the copy-book</i>
die Sonne, <i>the sun</i>	lange, <i>long</i>	das Kindlein, <i>the little child</i>
die Erde, <i>the earth</i>	wann? <i>when?</i>	das Essen, <i>the dinner</i>

Future: Er wird den Mann nicht holen. *He will not fetch the man.*

## Exercise.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. His father became an emperor. ( <i>Nom.</i> ) | 2. You choose your dress.                       |
| 3. Their mother was very beautiful.              | 4. She will become my daughter.                 |
| 5. Where will you buy this copy-book?            | 6. How long was he well-behaved?                |
| 7. Which [ <i>C. a. 2.</i> ] is her pen?         | 8. Will they not choose a king? ( <i>Acc.</i> ) |
| 9. Was he not your father? ( <i>Nom.</i> )       | 10. How happy he was!                           |

## LESSON 6.

16. The "Compound Tenses" are formed in German, as in English, by means of auxiliaries and the Past Participle of the Verb. This Past Participle is however (unless there be an Infinitive also in the sentence) always placed last in the sentence.

17. Regular verbs form their Past Participle thus: Put *ge* . . before the Verb, and replace the final *—en* by *—t*, as: *loben*, *to praise*; *gelobt*, *praised*.

18. If the Infinitive of a verb begins with an unaccented inseparable prefix (see 19) no *ge* . . is placed before it for the Past Participle.

19. All prefixes are capable of being separated from their root, except only: *be* . . , *ge* . . , *emp* . . , *ent* . . , *er* . . , *ver* . . . , *zer* . . , *hinter* . . , *miß* . . , *voll* . . , *wider* . . . (These ought to be learnt by heart.)

20. In speaking of completed actions of recent date, the Germans, like the French, use the Perfect in preference to the English Imperfect.

## EXAMPLES ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

1. Werden Sie das Geld brauchen?
2. Nein, ich werde es nicht brauchen.
3. Wer hat dieses Land entdeckt?
4. Dieser Mann hat es nicht entdeckt.
5. Hat er Strafe verdient? Nein.
6. Wer ist König? Wo ist der Graf?
7. Der Graf wird nicht hier sein.
8. Wird der Sohn fleißig werden?
9. Nein, er ist sehr unartig.
10. Hatte er Geld? Er hat keines gehabt.

1. Will you want the money?
2. No, I (will) shall not want it.
3. Who discovered this land?
4. This man has not discovered it.
5. Did he deserve punishment? No.
6. Who is king? Where is the count?
7. The count will not be here.
8. Will the son become diligent?
9. No, he is very naughty.
10. Had he money? He had none.

## WORDS.

der Graf, *the count*  
 die Belohnung, *the reward*  
 die Strafe, *the punishment*  
 das Leben, *the life*  
 das Land, *the land*  
 das Schaf, *the sheep*

verdienen, *to deserve*  
 entdecken, *to discover*  
 brauchen, *to use, to want*  
 noch nicht (inseparable) *not yet*  
 wer? *who?*  
 wo? *where?*

oder, *or*  
 hier, *here*  
 dort, *there*  
 das Geld, *the money*  
 das Fräulein, *the young lady*  
 das Feuer, *the fire*

## Exercise.

1. Who has deserved (a) punishment?
3. Where is the count? He is not yet here.
5. No, he had not used it yet.
7. Who is king? He is not yet king.
9. Has the man sought his sheep?

2. This child deserved a reward.
4. Had our father used the money?
6. Have you discovered the land?
8. Where will you use the money?
10. He will seek it here and there.

## ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

*(On revising the work of the First Term.)**On Lesson 1.*

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. He says, they fetch the flower. | 2. We say, she buys the pen.             |
| 3. The mother seeks a rose.        | 4. They fetch a glass and a flower.      |
| 5. The child says, they buy a pen. | 6. The mother and the child say it.      |
| 7. The girl and the mother say it. | 8. We praise the school and the town.    |
| 9. We buy the pen and a flower.    | 10. The mother says, they seek the girl. |

*On Lesson 2.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. We hear, you love the horse.         | 2. Do you hear the child? Yes, father.   |
| 3. Did the child seek the pen? Yes.     | 4. Did he praise the pupil? No.          |
| 5. The king loved the town.             | 6. The teacher bought the paper.         |
| 7. Did the daughter seek the child? No. | 8. We loved the town much.               |
| 9. He said very much.                   | 10. Did you buy the picture? No, mother. |

*On Lesson 3, and Reference-Page C.*

- |                                  |                                   |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Thou hast thy pen there.      | 2. Had you your dog? Yes.         |
| 3. We have our pencil here.      | 4. Many a town has much money.    |
| 5. Have ye your money? No.       | 6. That king had no son.          |
| 7. We had no watch.              | 8. Has this young man no father?  |
| 9. The man loved his child much. | 10. Which emperor has this? This. |

*On Lesson 4.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. My son is not very tall.              | 2. My teacher is very good.                    |
| 3. Our street was not clean.             | 4. Are these rooms beautiful?                  |
| 5. What sort of king is this king?       | 6. He is very small, but is very well-behaved. |
| 7. I have a dress. What sort? (C. b. 2.) | 8. Does she become poor?                       |
| 9. He is becoming a man. (Nom.)          | 10. They are becoming rich and not poor.       |

*On Lesson 5.*

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Will the king buy this horse?   | 2. The daughter was very well-behaved. |
| 3. He became very rich.            | 4. My son was my teacher.              |
| 5. Did you become his scholar?     | 6. It was here or there.               |
| 7. The man will become poor.       | 8. Will the father become a teacher?   |
| 9. When will they fetch this book? | 10. What sort of man was this king?    |

*On Lesson 6.*

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. The pupil has deserved a reward.  | 2. We shall punish this man.            |
| 3. Who has fetched my son? This man. | 4. Here was the count, and not there.   |
| 5. Had they discovered their money.  | 6. Where will the emperor be? Here.     |
| 7. You will believe this or not.     | 8. The king has not yet used his money. |
| 9. Will they use their money, there? | 10. Will he deserve punishment?         |



## DICTIONARY of Words.

(For the Exercises in the First and Second Terms.)

<i>a, an, ein</i> (C. b.)	<i>how? Wie?</i>	<i>the ring, der Ring</i>
<i>and, und</i>	<i>its, sein</i> (C. b. 1, 2)	<i>the room, das Zimmer</i>
<i>to ask, fragen</i>	<i>the king, der König</i>	<i>the rose, die Rose</i>
<i>to be, sein</i>	<i>the knife, das Messer</i>	<i>to say, sagen</i> (Dative)
<i>beautiful, schön</i>	<i>the lady, die Dame</i>	<i>the school, die Schule</i>
<i>to become, werden</i>	<i>the land, das Land</i>	<i>to seek, suchen</i>
<i>the book, das Buch</i>	<i>the letter, der Brief</i>	<i>to sell, verkaufen</i>
<i>but, aber</i>	<i>long, lange</i>	<i>the sheep, das Schaf</i>
<i>to buy, kaufen</i>	<i>to love, lieben</i>	<i>the son, der Sohn</i>
<i>the child, das Kind</i>	<i>the man, der Mann</i>	<i>what sort of? Was für ein...</i> (C. b.)
<i>to choose, wählen</i>	<i>many-a, mancher</i> (C. a.)	<i>the street, die Straße</i>
<i>clean, rein</i>	<i>mine, meiner</i> (C. b. 2)	<i>the table, der Tisch</i>
<i>the coat, der Rock</i>	<i>the money, das Geld</i>	<i>tall, groß</i>
<i>the copy-book, das Heft</i>	<i>the mother, die Mutter</i>	<i>the teacher, der Lehrer</i>
<i>the count, der Graf</i>	<i>much</i> (intensity), <i>sehr</i>	<i>that, jener</i> (C. a.)
<i>the daughter, die Tochter</i>	<i>much</i> (quantity), <i>viel</i>	<i>the, der</i> (C. a.)
<i>to deserve, verdienen</i>	<i>my, mein</i> (C. b. 1)	<i>their, ihr</i> (C. b. 1)
<i>to discover, entdecken</i>	<i>no</i> (before Noun), <i>kein</i> (C. b. 1)	<i>theirs, ihrer</i> (C. b. 2)
<i>do, does, did</i> (not translated)	<i>no</i> (answers), <i>nein</i>	<i>there, dort</i>
<i>the dog, der Hund</i>	<i>not, nicht</i> (Rule 11)	<i>thine, deiner</i> (C. b. 2)
<i>the dress, das Kleid</i>	<i>to obey, gehorchen</i> (Dative)	<i>this, dieser</i> (C. a.)
<i>the egg, das Ei</i>	<i>old, alt</i>	<i>thy, dein</i> (C. b. 1)
<i>the emperor, der Kaiser</i>	<i>or, oder</i>	<i>the town, die Stadt</i>
<i>the father, der Vater</i>	<i>our, unser</i> (C. b. 1)	<i>to use, brauchen</i>
<i>to fetch, holen</i>	<i>ours, unserer</i> (C. b. 2)	<i>very, sehr</i>
<i>the flower, die Blume</i>	<i>the paper, das Papier</i>	<i>the watch, die Uhr</i>
<i>the girl, das Mädchen</i>	<i>the pen, die Feder</i>	<i>well-behaved, brav</i>
<i>the glass, das Glas</i>	<i>the pencil, der Bleistift</i>	<i>where? Wo?</i>
<i>good, gut</i>	<i>the picture, das Bild</i>	<i>which? Welcher?</i>
<i>happy, glücklich</i>	<i>poor, arm</i>	<i>who? Wer?</i>
<i>the hat, der Hut</i>	<i>to praise, loben</i>	<i>the wine, der Wein</i>
<i>to hear, hören</i>	<i>to punish, strafen</i>	<i>the woman, die Frau</i>
<i>her, ihr</i> (C. b. 1)	<i>the punishment, die Strafe</i>	<i>yes, ja</i>
<i>here, hier</i>	<i>the pupil, der Schüler</i>	<i>not yet, noch nicht</i>
<i>hers, ihrer</i> (C. b. 2)	<i>to reward, belohnen</i>	<i>the young man, der Jüngling</i>
<i>his, sein</i> (C. b.)	<i>the reward, die Belohnung</i>	<i>your, euer, Ihr</i> (C. b. 1)
<i>the horse, das Pferd</i>	<i>rich, reich</i>	<i>yours, eurer, Ihrer</i> (C. b. 2)



## CONVERSATIONAL SENTENCES.—First Term.

*(To be learnt in small portions over and over again.)*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Guten Morgen, mein Herr.                    | <i>Good morning, Sir.</i>                        |
| 2. Ich wünsche Ihnen guten Tag.                | <i>I wish you good day.</i>                      |
| 3. Befinden Sie sich recht wohl?               | <i>Are you very well?</i>                        |
| 4. Ja, ich danke, ich bin immer wohl.          | <i>Yes, I thank you, I am always well.</i>       |
| 5. Und wie geht es Ihrer Frau Mutter?          | <i>And how is your mother?</i>                   |
| 6. Danke, sie ist etwas besser heute.          | <i>Thank you, she is a little better to-day.</i> |
| 7. Werden Sie in die Stadt gehen?              | <i>Will you be going to town?</i>                |
| 8. Ja, ich komme heute in die Stadt.           | <i>Yes, I am coming to town to-day.</i>          |
| 9. Wir wollen in das Theater gehen.            | <i>We will go to the theatre.</i>                |
| 10. Diesen Abend gehen wir in das Concert.     | <i>This evening we are going to the concert.</i> |
| 11. Wird Ihre Schwester mit uns kommen?        | <i>Will your sister come with us?</i>            |
| 12. Nein, sie muß zu Hause bleiben.            | <i>No, she must remain at home.</i>              |
| 13. Ich bitte Sie, geben Sie ihr ein Billet.   | <i>I beg you, give her a ticket.</i>             |
| 14. Vielen Dank, ich werde es gern thun.       | <i>Many thanks, I will gladly do so.</i>         |
| 15. Haben Sie meinen Bruder gesehen?           | <i>Have you seen my brother?</i>                 |
| 16. Ja, aber er war sehr unwohl.               | <i>Yes, but he was very unwell.</i>              |
| 17. Ich bitte Sie, geben Sie mir das Buch.     | <i>Pray give me the book.</i>                    |
| 18. Was wird er morgen machen?                 | <i>What will he do to-morrow?</i>                |
| 19. Er geht nach Berlin morgen früh.           | <i>He is going to Berlin early to-morrow.</i>    |
| 20. Wann wird er zurückkommen?                 | <i>When will he return?</i>                      |
| 21. Ich weiß es nicht; vielleicht bald.        | <i>I do not know, perhaps soon.</i>              |
| 22. Haben Sie dieses Geld gebraucht?           | <i>Have you used this money?</i>                 |
| 23. Nein, ich habe es immer noch.              | <i>No, I have it still.</i>                      |
| 24. Werden Sie es nicht brauchen?              | <i>Will you not use it?</i>                      |
| 25. Ich hoffe, ich werde nicht Alles brauchen. | <i>I hope, I shall not use all of it.</i>        |
| 26. Hat er keinen Regenschirm?                 | <i>Has he no umbrella?</i>                       |
| 27. Nein, und es regnet sehr stark.            | <i>No, and it is raining very hard.</i>          |
| 28. Wird dieser Knabe Deutsch lernen?          | <i>Will this boy learn German?</i>               |
| 29. Ja, und auch Französisch.                  | <i>Yes, and French also.</i>                     |
| 30. Ich hoffe, er wird recht fleißig sein.     | <i>I hope he will be very diligent.</i>          |

## POEM.

(To be learnt by heart in small portions.)

## Die Lorelei (von Heine).

1. Ich weiß nicht, was soll es bedeuten,  
Daß ich so traurig bin;  
Ein Märchen aus alten Zeiten  
Das kommt mir nicht aus dem Sinn.
2. Die Luft ist kühl und es dunkelt  
Und ruhig fließt der Rhein;  
Der Gipfel des Berges funkelt  
Im Abendsonnenschein.
3. Die schönste Jungfrau sitzet  
Dort oben wunderbar;  
Ihr goldnes Geschmeide blitzet;  
Sie kämmt ihr goldenes Haar.
4. Sie kämmt es mit goldenem Kamme,  
Und singt ein Lied dabei;  
Das hat eine wundersame  
Gewaltige Melodei.
5. Den Schiffer im kleinen Schiffe  
Ergreift es mit wildem Weh;  
Er schaut nicht die Felsenriffe,  
Er schaut nur hinauf in die Höh'.
6. Ich glaube, die Wellen verschlingen  
Am Ende Schiffer und Kahn;  
Und das hat mit ihrem Singen  
Die Lorelei gethan.

## Lurline (Literal Translation).

1. *I know not, what it can mean,  
That I am so sad;  
A legend of olden times  
Will not leave my mind (keeps haunting).*
2. *The air is cool and it is getting dark,  
And quietly the Rhine is flowing;  
The summit of the mountain sparkles  
In the evening sunshine.*
3. *The most beautiful maiden is sitting  
Up there wonderful (to behold);  
Her golden ornaments glisten;  
She is combing her golden hair.*
4. *She is combing it with (a) golden comb;  
And is singing a song withal,  
Which has a wondrous  
Powerful melody.*
5. *The boatman in the little boat,  
It seizes with a wild woe;  
He looks not at the rocky reefs,  
He looks only up on high.*
6. *I believe the waves will swallow  
In the end the boatman and (his) boat;  
And this has with her singing  
The Lurline (naiad) done.*

*Note.*—The above is one of the best-known German poems, and one of the most favourite popular songs. The *Lurline* rock, near Bingen and Mayence on the Rhine, overlooks some rather dangerous rapids in the stream, and the many accidents there formerly were ascribed popularly to a naiad, sitting on that rock combing her hair, and drawing the attention of boatmen from their boats by her singing.

## S E C O N D   T E R M

A FEW of the Conversational Sentences on pages 13 and 34, as well as a few of the words in the Dictionary on page 12, should form an integral part of the work set for every lesson during this term. The little poems on page 35 should also gradually be learnt by heart. It is only by constant repetition of the same few words or sentences, that they become thoroughly fixed in the memory, and in Modern languages such *vivâ voce* practice is absolutely indispensable.

For the order of words in the Exercises for translation consult Reference-Page J at the end of this term (page 38).

## LESSON 7.

21. Sentences beginning with Interrogative Pronouns, as: *Wer?* *who?* *Was?* *what?* etc., invert the order of Subject and Assertion; so also do sentences beginning with adverbs, as, *Hier ist er*, *Here he is*.

22. The Imperative has no third person, properly speaking; if a third person is commanded (indirectly), we have, as in English, to use auxiliaries, *lassen*, *to let*, with Accusative of the person commanded, or *sollen*, *shall*—Infinitive at end of sentence. In addressing a command to a person or persons politely, use invariably the verb (Infinitive) itself, with *Sie*, *you*, added, as, *Wählen Sie!* *Choose!*

*Imperative.*

- All regular Verbs.
- 2d. *Hole!* *Fetch (thou)!*
- 3d. { *Er soll suchen!* *He shall seek!*  
*Laßt ihn tanzen!* *Let him dance!*
- 1st. *Gehorchen wir!* *Let us obey!*
- 2d. { *Suchet!* *Seek (ye)!*  
*Suchen Sie!* *Seek!*
- 3d. { *Sie sollen lachen!* *They shall laugh!*  
*Laßt sie lachen!* *Let them laugh!*

- sein, to be.*
- 2d. *Sei!* *Be (thou)!*
- 3d. { *Er soll sein!* *He shall be!*  
*Laßt ihn sein!* *Let him be!*
- 1st. *Seien wir!* *Let us be!*
- 2d. { *Seid!* *Be (ye)!*  
*Seien Sie!* *Be!*
- 3d. { *Sie sollen sein!* *They shall be!*  
*Laßt sie sein!* *Let them be!*

*Examples on the Imperative.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Mein Kind, frage den Lehrer!</i>        | 1. <i>My child, ask (thou) the teacher!</i>  |
| 2. <i>Dort ist es; sagen Sie es der Frau!</i> | 2. <i>There it is; tell it to the woman!</i> |
| 3. <i>Der König soll sein Land lieben!</i>    | 3. <i>The king shall love his land!</i>      |
| 4. <i>Laßt den Vater wählen!</i>              | 4. <i>Let the father choose!</i>             |
| 5. <i>Hören Sie den Hund!</i>                 | 5. <i>Hear (listen to) the dog.</i>          |

*Exercise.*

[*Notice.*—For the words to be used in these Exercises see page 12 in the First Term.]

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. Let us obey the teacher. ( <i>Dative.</i> ) | 2. Punish that dog!                |
| 3. Be (ye) well-behaved!                       | 4. Let the woman choose the dress! |
| 5. Seek the child! Here is the book.           | 6. What did he say? Let him say!   |
| 7. Let them be happy! They are good.           | 8. Use your money! Where is it?    |
| 9. Where is my son? Let him be here.           | 10. Do not use this book, my son.  |

[*Notice.*—Put the Infinitive last in the sentence, except in the Imperative with *Sie*.]

## GENERAL RULES

## about the Declension of German Substantives.

German nouns may be said to be either *weak* or *strong* as to their declension: *weak*, if the Genitive Singular ends in *-n* or does not alter from the Nominative; *strong*, if the Genitive Singular ends in *-s*. Grammarians differ as to the number of Declensions; here, the Nouns are treated simply according to *gender*, *number of syllables*, and *termination*.

## CHANGES IN THE SINGULAR. [See Ref.-Page E.]

## I. MASCULINE NOUNS:

- (a) { Nominatives in *-e* (and ten monosyllables) } take *-n* (or *-en*) for Accusative, Genitive, and  
 { Foreign words *not* in *-al*, *-an*, *-aft*, *-r* } Dative.  
 (b) All other masculine Nouns take *-s* for Genitive, and do *not* change for Accusative and Dative.

## II. FEMININE NOUNS never change at all in the Singular.

III. NEUTER NOUNS, all (except *das Geschlecht*) take *-s* for Genitive, and do *not* change for Accusative and Dative.

## CHANGES IN THE PLURAL. [See Ref.-Page D.]

*Notice carefully*: Accusative, Genitive, and Dative Plural are always like the Nominative Plural, but the Dative Plural *must* in every noun end in *-n*. (This *-n* has to be added, if the other cases have not already the termination *-n*.)

## I. MASCULINE NOUNS:

A. *Monosyllables* have *Plural*: modify root-vowel and take *-e*.

B. *Dissyllables and Polysyllables*:

- (a) Nominative Singular ending in *-el*, *-en*, *-er* have *Plural*; modify root-vowel without other change.  
 (b) { Nominative Singular ending in *-ig*, *-if*, *-at*, *-ing* }  
 { Foreign words ending in *-al*, *-an*, *-aft*, *-r* (not *-er*) } *Plural*: modify root-vowel and add *-e*.  
 { Monosyllables with prefix *Be*, *Ge*. }  
 (c) { Nominative Singular ending in *-e* [see Singular (a)] }  
 { Foreign words not ending in *-al*, *-an*, *-aft*, *-r* } *Plural*: do *not* modify root-vowel, but take  
 { Foreign words ending in *-or* } *-(e)n*.

II. FEMININE NOUNS have *Plural*: do *not* modify root-vowel, but take *-(e)n*.

## III. NEUTER NOUNS:

A. *Monosyllables* have *Plural*: modify root-vowel and take *-er*.

B. *Dissyllables and Polysyllables*:

- (a) Nominative Singular ending in *-er*, *-el*, *-en*, *-fen*, *-lein* have *no* change for Plural.  
 (b) Nominative Singular not ending in *-er*, *-el*, *-en*, *-fen*, *-lein* have *Plural*: do not modify root-vowel, but take *-e*.

## Notes.

- Compound nouns change only their last component, according to its own rule.
- All nouns which take *-er* for Plural modify their vowel.
- The only vowels which can modify are: *a* (into *ä*), *o* (into *ö*), *u* (into *ü*), *au* (into *äu*).



## REFERENCE-PAGE D. (a).

**Formation of Nominative PLURAL OF NOUNS from the Nominative Singular.****GENERAL RULES :**

1. When seeking to form the Plural of any Noun, answer these three questions : *a. What gender is the Noun?* *b. How many syllables has it?* *c. What termination has it?* Then, if the noun is not given among the exceptions in its class, to which it belongs in virtue of the answers to the above questions, it will follow the Rule.

2. By — is meant, *a, o, u, au* of the singular become *ä, ö, ü, äu* in the plural.

3. A vowel already modified in the Singular remains so for the Plural; *e, i, ei, ie, eu*, cannot modify.

4. In compound nouns, the last component only changes for the Plural according to its own class.

**MASCULINE NOUNS.**

**A. Monosyllables.** RULE: *Plural: —e*; as: *der Sohn, the son, die Söhne.*

EXCEPTIONS: 1. *Plural: —e*; as: *der Hund, the dog, die Hunde.*

<i>der Aal, the eel</i>	<i>der Grad, the degree</i>	<i>der Pfad, the path</i>	<i>der Stoff, the stuff</i>
<i>der Arm, the arm</i>	<i>der Hund, the dog</i>	<i>der Punkt, the point</i>	<i>der Tag, the day</i>
<i>der Daß, the badger</i>	<i>der Huf, the hoof</i>	<i>der Schuh, the shoe</i>	<i>der Thron, the throne</i>

2. *Plural: —en*; as: *der Dorn, the thorn, die Dornen.*

<i>der Bär, the bear</i>	<i>der Fels, the hero</i>	<i>der Pfau, the peacock</i>	<i>der Staat, the state</i>
<i>der Christ, the Christian</i>	<i>der Herr, the gentleman</i>	<i>der Prinz, the prince</i>	<i>der Strahl, the beam</i>
<i>der Dorn, the thorn</i>	<i>der Mast, the mast</i>	<i>der See, the lake</i>	<i>der Tor, the fool</i>
<i>der Fürst, the prince</i>	<i>der Mensch, the human being</i>	<i>der Sporn, the spur</i>	
<i>der Graf, the count</i>	<i>der Narr, the fool</i>	<i>der Schmerz, the pain</i>	

3. *Plural: —er*; as: *der Mann, the man, die Männer.*

<i>der Geist, the spirit</i>	<i>der Leib, the body</i>	<i>der Ort, the place</i>	<i>der Wald, the forest</i>
<i>der Gott, the god</i>	<i>der Mann, the man</i>	<i>der Rand, the edge</i>	<i>der Wurm, the worm</i>

**B. Dissyllables and Polysyllables.**

(a.) Singular in *=el, =en, =er, =ar.* RULE: *Plural: —* as: *der Vater, the father, die Väter.*

EXCEPTIONS: 1. *Plural: —* [no change]; as: *der Adler, the eagle, die Adler.*

<i>der Adler, the eagle</i>	<i>der Gulden, the florin</i>	<i>der Maler, the painter</i>	<i>der Sommer, the summer</i>
<i>der Amerikaner, the American</i>	<i>der Kanzler, the chancellor</i>	<i>der Morgen, the morning</i>	<i>der Taler, the dollar</i>
<i>der Bewohner, the inhabitant</i>	<i>der Knochen, the bone</i>	<i>der Panzer, the armour</i>	<i>der Tropfen, the drop</i>
<i>der Bogen, the bow, arc</i>	<i>der Kuchen, the cake</i>	<i>der Rahmen, the frame</i>	<i>der Wagen, the carriage</i>

2. *Plural: —n*; as: *der Bauer, the peasant, die Bauern.*

<i>der Baier, the Bavarian</i>	<i>der Gottvater, the godfather</i>	<i>der Nachbar, the neighbour</i>	<i>der Stachel, the sting</i>
<i>der Bauer, the peasant</i>	<i>der Muskel, the muscle</i>	<i>der Pantoffel, the slipper</i>	<i>der Better, the cousin</i>

(b.)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Singulars in } =ig, =ich, =at, =ing. \\ \text{Foreign words in } =al, =an, =af, =on, =er \text{ (not } =or). \\ \text{Monosyllables with prefix } \textit{Ver, Ges.} \end{array} \right. \text{ RULE: } \textit{Plural: —e}$ ; as: *der Palaß, the palace, die Paläste.*

EXCEPTIONS: *Plural: —e*; as: *der Monat, the month, die Monate.*

<i>der Charakter, the character</i>	<i>der Monat, the month</i>	<i>der Postillion, the postilion</i>	<i>der Spion, the spy; also,</i>
<i>der Baron, the baron</i>	<i>der Pokal, the goblet</i>	<i>der Roman, the novel</i>	<i>der Abend, the evening</i>

(c.)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Singulars in } =e; \text{ also} \\ \text{Foreign words not ending in } =al, =an, =af, =r; \text{ and} \\ \text{Foreign words ending in } =or; \text{ except, } \textit{der Major, die Majore} \end{array} \right. \text{ RULE: } \textit{Plural: —(e)n}$ ; as: *der Knabe, the boy, die Knaben;* *der Doktor, the doctor, die Doktoren.*

To class (c.) belong also—

The following *ten* in *=e* (sometimes spelt with *=en* in the Nominative Singular); in the Plural they must end in *=en*, as: *der Gedanke* (or *Gedanken*), *the thought, die Gedanken.*

<i>der Buchstabe, the letter</i>	<i>der Funke, the spark</i>	<i>der Haufe, the heap</i>	<i>der Same, the seed; and</i>
<i>der Fels, the rock</i>	<i>der Gedanke, the thought</i>	<i>der Name, the name</i>	<i>der Wille, the will</i>
<i>der Friede, (the) peace</i>	<i>der Glaube, the faith</i>		

## REFERENCE-PAGE D. (b).

## Formation of Nominative PLURAL OF NOUNS from the Nominative Singular.

## FEMININE NOUNS.

GENERAL RULE: *Plural*: —en (or -n); as: die Schlacht, the battle, die Schlachten.EXCEPTIONS: 1. *Plural*: —e; as: die Braut, the bride, die Bräute.

die Art, the axe	die Gans, the goose	die Laus, the louse	die Not, the need
die Angst, the anxiety	die Gruft, the tomb, vault	die Luft, the air	die Nuss, the nut
die Bank, the bench	die Haut, the skin	die Lust, the pleasure	die Sau, the sow
die Braut, the bride	die Kluft, the cleft, abyss	die Magd, the servant	die Stadt, the town
die Brust, the breast	die Kraft, the force	die Macht, (the) might	die Schnur, the string
die Faust, the fist	die Kuh, the cow	die Maus, the mouse	die Wand, the wall
die Frucht, the fruit	die Kunst, (the) art	die Nacht, the night	die Wurst, the sausage

2. *Plural*: —e; as: die Kenntniß, knowledge, die Kenntnisse (attainments).

die Drangsal, need	die Trübsal, sorrow	die Kenntniß, knowledge	die Besorgniß, apprehension
--------------------	---------------------	-------------------------	-----------------------------

3. *Plural*: —; die Mutter, the mother; die Tochter, the daughter.

## NEUTER NOUNS.

A. Monosyllables. RULE: *Plural*: —er; as: das Haus, the house, die Häuser.EXCEPTIONS: 1. *Plural*: —e; as: das Jahr, the year, die Jahre.

das Bein, the leg	das Heft, the copy-book	das Pfund, the pound	das Seil, the rope
das Beil, the hatchet	das Jahr, the year	das Recht, the right	das Spiel, the game, play
das Brod, the bread	das Knie, the knee	das Reh, the roe	das Stück, the piece
das Boot, the boat	das Loos, the lot, ticket	das Reich, the empire	das Tier, the animal
das Ding, the thing	das Maas, the measure	das Ross, the horse	das Thor, the gate
das Fell, the skin, hide	das Meer, the sea	das Salz, the salt	das Werk, the work
das Gift, the poison	das Netz, the net	das Schaf, the sheep	das Zelt, the tent
das Haar, the hair	das Paar, the couple, pair	das Schiff, the ship	das Zeug, the stuff
das Heer, the army	das Pferd, the horse	das Schwein, the pig	das Ziel, the aim, goal

2. *Plural*: —en; as: das Ohr, the ear, die Ohren.

das Bett, the bed	das Hemd, the shirt	das Herz, the heart	das Ohr, the ear
-------------------	---------------------	---------------------	------------------

## B. Dissyllables and Polysyllables.

(a.) Singulars ending in the derivative suffixes, -er, -el, { RULE: *Plural*: — [no change], as:  
-en, -chen, -lein. { das Ufer, the shore, die Ufer.

Except: das Kloster, the convent, die Klöster.

(b.) Singulars not ending in the derivative suffixes, -er, { RULE: *Plural*: —e; as:  
-el, -en, -chen, -lein. { das Metall, the metal, die Metalle.EXCEPTIONS: 1. *Plural*: —er; as: das Spital, the hospital, die Spitäler.

das Gemach, the apartment	das Gesicht, the face	das Regiment, the regiment
das Gemüt, the temper	das Gespenst, the ghost	das Spital (Hospital), the hospital
das Geschlecht, the race, sex	das Gewand, the garment	

2. *Plural*: —n (or en): as: das Juwel, the jewel, die Juwelen.

das Auge, the eye	das Ende, the end	das Insekt, the insect	das Juwel, the jewel
-------------------	-------------------	------------------------	----------------------

## 3. Altogether irregular.

das Kapital, the capital, die Kapitalien	das Drama, the Drama, die Dramen
das Mineral, the mineral, die Mineralien	das Thema, the theme, die Themata
das Studium, the study (abstract), die Studien	(and a few others, foreign words).

N.B.—Foreign words in -o take -s for Plural, as: das Casino, the Casino, die Casinos, etc.

## DOUBLE PLURALS.

die Bank, the bench, bank; die Bänke, the benches; die Banken, the banks (for money).  
 das Band, the bond, ribbon; die Bände, the bonds; die Bänder, the ribbons.  
 das Wort, the word, expression; die Wörter, separate, disconnected words; die Worte, expressions, sentences.

N.B.—Some words have to manufacture a plural, not having one naturally, as: der Tod, death, die Todesfälle, deaths; der Rat, advice, die Ratsschläge, counsels, and a few others.



## EXAMPLES AND PRACTICE ON REFERENCE-PAGE D.

MASCULINE NOUNS. Form the Nom. Plural of *der Bruder, the brother*.

*Ask yourself:* 1st. What gender is it? *Answer:* Masculine, therefore look among the Masculines.

2d. How many syllables? *Answer:* Two, therefore look among the Dissyllables (B.).

3d. What termination? *Answer:* *-er*, therefore look among B. a.

4th. Is it among the exceptions in B. a.? *Answer:* No, therefore its Plural is according to the RULE, given for B. a.; that is, the Plural is *die Brüder*.

Form the Plural of *der Graf, the count*.

*Ask yourself:* 1st. What gender is it? *Answer:* Masculine, therefore look among the Masculines.

2d. How many syllables? *Answer:* One, therefore look among the Monosyllables (A.).

3d. Is it among the exceptions in A.? *Answer:* Yes, in 2, therefore its Plural is according to the headline of the exceptions in A. 2; that is, the Plural is *die Grafen*.

*Exercise.*

Write out the Nominative Plural, according to the answers in each case, of—

der Tisch, <i>the table</i>	der Altar, <i>the altar</i>	der Abend, <i>the evening</i>	der Herr, <i>the gentleman</i>
der Stuhl, <i>the chair</i>	der Kuchen, <i>the cake</i>	der Haufe, <i>the heap</i>	der Ast, <i>the branch</i>
der Hahn, <i>the cock</i>	der Morgen, <i>the morning</i>	der Bauer, <i>the peasant</i>	der Professor, <i>the professor</i>
der Nachbar, <i>the neighbour</i>	der Tag, <i>the day</i>	der Käfig, <i>the cage</i>	der Prinz, <i>the prince</i>
der Name, <i>the name</i>	der Affe, <i>the monkey</i>	der Hund, <i>the dog</i>	der Wald, <i>the forest</i>

FEMININE NOUNS. Form the Plural of *die Uhr, the watch*.

In answer to the above questions, we find it is among the Feminine Nouns, and *not* among the exceptions, therefore the Plural is according to the General Rule there: *die Uhren*.

*Exercise.*

Write out the Nominative Plural, according to the answers in each case, of—

die Maus, <i>the mouse</i>	die Schwester, <i>the sister</i>	die Tante, <i>the aunt</i>	die Sache, <i>the thing</i>
die Nacht, <i>the night</i>	die Stadt, <i>the town</i>	die Trübsal, <i>the sorrow</i>	die Unruhe, <i>uneasiness</i>
die Burg, <i>the castle</i>	die Erzählung, <i>the relation</i>	die Feder, <i>the pen</i>	die Mutter, <i>the mother</i>

NEUTER NOUNS. Form the Plural of *das Dorf, the village*.

In answer to the above questions, we find it is among the Neuter Nouns, a Monosyllable, and *not* among the exceptions, therefore the Plural is, according to the Rule in A., *die Dörfer*.

*Exercise.*

Write out the Nominative Plural, according to the answers in each case, of—

das Mädchen, <i>the girl</i>	das Juwel, <i>the jewel</i>	das Theater, <i>the theatre</i>	das Buch, <i>the book</i>
das Auge, <i>the eye</i>	das Opfer, <i>the victim</i>	das Haus, <i>the house</i>	das Kloster, <i>the convent</i>
das Band, <i>the ribbon</i>	das Studium, <i>the study</i>	das Pfund, <i>the pound</i>	das Pferd, <i>the horse</i>
das Feuer, <i>the fire</i>	das Gewand, <i>the garment</i>	das Laster, <i>the vice</i>	das Gewehr, <i>the gun</i>
das Knäblein, <i>the little boy</i>	das Ohr, <i>the ear</i>	das Jahr, <i>the year</i>	das Gemach, <i>the apartment</i>

## LESSON 8.

23. Notice carefully, that by "Assertion" in a sentence is meant the conjugated verb, *i.e.* in simple tenses the verb itself, as **liebt** in **der Mann liebt die Frau**; but in compound tenses the conjugated auxiliary and NEVER the Infinitive or Past Participle, as **hat** in **er hat mir dieses geholt**, and **wird** in **er wird es holen**.

24. The order of words is not altered in the Subjunctive, if the latter is not introduced by a conjunction, as : **er sagt, er hoffe es**, *he says, he hopes so*.

25. Verbs like **sagen**, *to say*; **glauben**, *to believe*, require the Subjunctive in German, though they are followed by Indicative in English, as : **ich glaube, er sei hier**, *I believe, he is here*.

26. The Present Subjunctive of all verbs, regular or irregular, is formed in the same way; but **sein**, *to be*, does not add *se* for 1st and 3d person Singular.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

(man sagt,) **ich lob-e** den Schüler, (*they say,*) *I praise the pupil*

(er hofft,) **du hab-est** die Feder, (*he hopes,*) *thou hast the pen*

(wir sagen,) **er lieb-e** den Hund, (*we say,*) *he loves the dog*

(ihr glaubt,) **wir kauf-en** das Haus, (*you believe,*) *we buy the house*

(sie hoffen,) **ihr hol-et** den Mann, (*they hope,*) *ye fetch the man*

(man glaubt,) **sie (Sie) such-en** das Kind, (*they believe,*) *they (you) seek the child*

**ich sei** reich, *I am rich*

**du sei-est** hier, *thou art here*

**er sei** dort, *he is there*

**wir sei-en** gut, *we are good*

**ihr sei-et** arm, *ye are poor*

**sie sei-en** brav, *they are good*

*Examples on the Present Subjunctive.*

1. Sagt man, **ich habe** das Haus gekauft?
2. Nein, man sagt, Sie werden es kaufen.
3. Glauben Sie, der Graf sei dort?
4. Ja, **ich hoffe**, er werde dort sein.
5. Hoffst du, du werdest das Buch haben?
6. Ich glaube, **ich werde** es nicht brauchen.
7. Wirst du sagen, er sei nicht reich?
8. Ja, **ich sage**, er sei arm aber brav.
9. Er sagt, du liebst diesen Mann.
10. Ja, und **ich werde** dem Mann glauben.

1. *Do they say, I have bought the house?*
2. *No, they say, you will buy it.*
3. *Do you believe, the count is there?*
4. *Yes, I hope, he will be there.*
5. *Dost thou hope, thou wilt have the book?*
6. *I believe, I shall not want it.*
7. *Will you say, he is not rich?*
8. *Yes, I say, he is poor but well-behaved.*
9. *He says, you love this man.*
10. *Yes, and I shall believe the man (Dat.).*

*Exercise.*

1. They say, you believe this man.
3. No, he believes, they are not poor.
5. They hope, he will be here or there.
7. They will say, I am not well-behaved.
9. Which wine have they bought?

2. Will he say, they are very poor?
4. Where will the count be?
6. Do you hope, you will be rich? Yes.
8. Do not believe the king will be here.
10. I believe, they have bought no wine.

## REFERENCE-PAGE E.

## The Declension of German Nouns.

## I. SINGULAR.

## I. Masculine Nouns:

(A.) The following take *-en* (or *-n*) for Accusative, Genitive and Dative (see D. B. c.)

1. All Masculine Nominatives in *-e*, as : *der Knabe, the boy* : *den, des, dem Knaben*.

2. The following ten monosyllables, which were once dissyllables, and ended in *-e* :

<i>der Bär, the bear</i>	<i>der Graf, the count</i>	<i>der Narr, the fool</i>	<i>der Tor, the fool</i>
<i>der Christ, the Christian</i>	<i>der Held, the hero</i>	<i>der Mensch, the human being</i>	
<i>der Fürst, the duke, earl</i>	<i>der Herr, the gentleman</i>	<i>der Prinz, the prince</i>	

3. Foreign words, not ending in *-al, -an, -ast, -r* (not *-er*), as : *der Student, the student*.

(B.) All other Masculine Nouns take *-s* for Genitive Singular and may remain unchanged for Accusative and Dative. To these belong the following ten in *-en*, which sometimes are written without the *-n* in the Nominative Singular, as : *der Frieden* or *Friede, peace* (see D. B. c.)

<i>der Buchstaben, the letter, type</i>	<i>der Gedanken, the thought</i>	<i>der Namen, the name</i>	<i>der Felsen or Fels, the rock</i>
<i>der Frieden, peace</i>	<i>der Glauben, the belief, faith</i>	<i>der Samen, the seed</i>	
<i>der Funken, the spark</i>	<i>der Haufen, the heap</i>	<i>der Willen, the will</i>	

*N.B.*—For the sake of euphony, masculine monosyllables sometimes take *-es* for Genitive Singular and *-e* for Dative Singular, as : *der Fisch, the fish* ; *des Fisches, dem Fische*.

## II. Feminine Nouns:

Never change at all in the Singular.

III. Neuter Nouns : (Only exception : *das Herz, the heart*, declined as if it had Nominative *das Herzen*.)

All these take *-s* for Genitive Singular and may remain unchanged for Accusative and Dative.

*N.B.*—For the sake of euphony neuter monosyllables sometimes take *-es* for Genitive Singular and *-e* for Dative Singular, as : *das Dorf, the village* ; *des Dorfes, dem Dorfe*.

## II. PLURAL.

Form the Nominative Plural from the Nominative Singular according to Reference-Page D. Then remember : All cases are the same as the Nominative, but the Dative Plural always must end in *-n* ; this *-n* must therefore be added in every word which has not an *-n* at the end already in the other cases. This rule is without any exceptions.

*Declension of Proper Nouns.*

1. Proper Names, preceded by an article, preposition, adjective or noun with article, do not change at all.

2. If used without these before them, they take *-s* in Genitive Singular, but do not change for the other cases.

3. Personal names, ending in *(s), -ß, -z, -x*, and feminine names in *-e*, take *-(e)n*s for Genitive Singular and *-(e)n* for Dative Singular.

*N.B.*—Of before Names is often translated by *von* with the Name unchanged. Before names of Countries or Towns translate *in* by *in* ; *from* by *von* or *auss* ; *to* by *nach* ; and leave the name of the country or town unchanged.

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE E.

(With the Plural according to Reference-Page D.)

DECLINE in Singular and Plural :

der Vater, <i>the father</i>	der Name, <i>the name</i>	der Graf, <i>the count</i>	der Sohn, <i>the son</i>
die Mutter, <i>the mother</i>	die Stadt, <i>the town</i>	das Ufer, <i>the bank</i>	das Dorf, <i>the village</i>

## SINGULAR.

Nom.	der Vater	der Name(n)	der Graf	der Sohn	<i>the father, the name, etc. (Subject)</i>
Acc.	den Vater	den Namen	den Grafen	den Sohn	<i>the father, the name, etc. (Object)</i>
Gen.	des Vaters	des Namens	des Grafen	des Sohn(e)s	<i>of the father or the father's, etc.</i>
Dat.	dem Vater	dem Namen	dem Grafen	dem Sohn(e)	<i>to the father, to the name, etc.</i>

## PLURAL.

Nom.	die Väter	die Namen	die Grafen	die Söhne	<i>the fathers, the names, etc.</i>
Acc.	die Väter	die Namen	die Grafen	die Söhne	<i>of the fathers, the fathers', etc.</i>
Gen.	der Väter	der Namen	der Grafen	der Söhne	<i>of the fathers, the fathers', etc.</i>
Dat.	den Vätern	den Namen	den Grafen	den Söhnen	<i>to the fathers, to the names, etc.</i>

## SINGULAR.

Nom.	die Stadt	die Mutter	<i>the town, the mother</i>	das Ufer	das Dorf	<i>the shore, the village</i>
Acc.	die Stadt	die Mutter	<i>of the town (the town's)</i>	des Ufers	des Dorfes	<i>of the shore (the shore's)</i>
Gen.	der Stadt	der Mutter	<i>to the town, etc.</i>	dem Ufer	dem Dorfe	<i>to the shore, etc.</i>
Dat.	der Stadt	der Mutter				

## PLURAL.

Nom.	die Städte	die Mütter	<i>the towns, the mothers</i>	die Ufer	die Dörfer	<i>the shores, the villages</i>
Acc.	die Städte	die Mütter	<i>of the towns (the towns')</i>	der Ufer	der Dörfer	<i>of the shores (the shores')</i>
Gen.	der Städte	der Mütter	<i>to the towns, etc.</i>	den Ufern	den Dörfern	<i>to the shores, etc.</i>
Dat.	den Städten	den Müttern				

## Exercise.

Decline in full, Singular and Plural (using Reference Tables E: and for the Plural D (a) and (b)) :

der Hahn, <i>the cock</i>	der Mann, <i>the man</i>	das Gewehr, <i>the gun</i>	der Bauer, <i>the peasant</i>
die Uhr, <i>the watch, clock</i>	die Schlacht, <i>the battle</i>	der Same(n), <i>the seed</i>	das Haus, <i>the house</i>
das Buch, <i>the book</i>	der Palast, <i>the palace</i>	das Mädchen, <i>the girl</i>	der Mensch, <i>the human being</i>
der Bruder, <i>the brother</i>	das Jahr, <i>the year</i>	die Welt, <i>the world</i>	die Tante, <i>the aunt</i>
die Nacht, <i>the night</i>	der Prinz, <i>the prince</i>	das Gesetz, <i>the law</i>	der Wald, <i>the forest</i>

## Examples of Proper Names.

Nom.	Karl, <i>Charles</i>	Fritz, <i>Fred</i>	Maria, Marie, Mary	der } Max	der Herr Schmidt, <i>Mr. Smith</i>
Acc.	Karl	Fritz	Maria, Marie, Mary	den }	den Herrn Schmidt, <i>Mr. Smith</i>
Gen.	Karls, <i>of Charles</i>	Fritzens, <i>Fred's</i>	Marias, Mariens, Mary's	des Max	des Herrn Schmidt, <i>Mr. Smith</i>
Dat.	Karl, <i>to Charles</i>	Fritzen, <i>to Fred</i>	Maria, Marien, <i>to Mary</i>	dem Max	dem Herrn Schmidt, <i>to Mr. Smith</i>

## Exercise.

Decline (Singular only of course) : Luise, *Louise* ; Bertha, *Bertha* ; Ludwig, *Lewis* ; die Frau Gold, *Mrs. Gold* ; Friedrich, *Frederick* ; Otto, *Otto* ; der Doktor Braun, *Dr. Brown* ; Schulz, *Schulz* ; mein Vetter Gottlieb, *my cousin Gottlieb* ; Heinrich, *Henry*.



## LESSON 9.

27. In indirect speech, or indirect questions, we must use the Subjunctive in German, though in English the Indicative be used, unless an absolute fact is stated emphatically as a fact: *He says, he has heard it, er sagt, er habe es gehört* (Subjunctive).

28. It is generally optional, to use either Present Subjunctive or Imperfect Subjunctive in the dependent clause; in the 3d person Singular, however, the Present Subjunctive is generally preferred, as:

*wir hoffen, sie seien (or wären) reich, we hoped they were rich.*  
*ich glaubte, er sei (not wäre) hier, I thought he was here.*

29. But if an action is referred to as distinctly completed and past, the German idiom requires the Perfect Subjunctive in the oblique clause (see Rule 20, lesson 6):

*wir hörten, er habe das Pferd verkauft, we heard, he sold the horse.*

## IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

In all regular verbs, the Imperfect Subjunctive is the same in form as the Imperfect Indicative, but the two tenses differ in all irregular Verbs, and in all auxiliaries.

*Man sagte, they said: (one said:)*

<i>ich kaufte es, I bought it</i>	<i>ich hätte, I had</i>	<i>ich wäre, I was</i>	<i>ich würde, I became</i>
<i>du lobtest sie, thou praisedst her</i>	<i>du hättest, thou hadst</i>	<i>du wärest, thou wast</i>	<i>du würdest, thou becamest</i>
<i>er hörte das, he heard that</i>	<i>er hätte, he had</i>	<i>er wäre, he was</i>	<i>er würde, he became</i>
<i>wir liebten jenes, we loved that</i>	<i>wir hätten, we had</i>	<i>wir wären, we were</i>	<i>wir würden, we became</i>
<i>ihr wähltest dieses, ye chose this</i>	<i>ihr hättet, ye had</i>	<i>ihr wäret, ye were</i>	<i>ihr würdet, ye became</i>
<i>sie (Sie) suchten es, they (you) sought it</i>	<i>sie hätten, they had</i>	<i>sie wären, they were</i>	<i>sie würden, they became</i>

## Examples.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>We said, he did not fetch the book.</i>         | 1. <i>Wir sagten, er habe das Buch nicht geholt.</i> |
| 2. <i>Do you believe, we (were or are) not happy?</i> | 2. <i>Glauben Sie, wir wären nicht glücklich?</i>    |
| 3. <i>The child says, it is not yet chosen.</i>       | 3. <i>Das Kind sagt, es sei noch nicht gewählt.</i>  |
| 4. <i>We hoped, you would become well-behaved.</i>    | 4. <i>Wir hofften, Sie würden brav.</i>              |
| 5. <i>Does the boy believe he is in London?</i>       | 5. <i>Glaubt der Knabe, er sei in London?</i>        |
| 6. <i>They say, we are rich.</i>                      | 6. <i>Man sagt, wir wären reich.</i>                 |
| 7. <i>Do they say, you would become happy?</i>        | 7. <i>Sagt man, du würdest glücklich?</i>            |
| 8. <i>He hoped, you had it (would have had it).</i>   | 8. <i>Er hoffte, Sie hätten es gehabt.</i>           |

## Exercise.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. He hoped, you loved your teacher.       | 2. He said he was a man and no child.            |
| 3. Did you hear, they were rich or poor?   | 4. I heard, they had a horse there.              |
| 5. They said, we bought these books. [29.] | 6. Have you heard, they are not yet here?        |
| 7. The lady said, she wanted [28] money.   | 8. We thought (believed), the king was not rich. |
| 9. We believed, he became rich.            | 10. They heard, you chose this horse.            |

## REFERENCE-PAGE F.

## Some Rules for recognising the Gender of some Nouns.

As we have seen, in order to decline a Noun in the Singular or form its Plural, the first thing we must know, is its Gender, and although German Nouns are proverbially erratic in this respect, yet some rules for recognising Gender may with great advantage be learnt. Remember, however : In all cases learn the Definite Article with every new Noun.

**A. Masculine** are : [subject to the "absolute" rules in the neuter below.]

1. All male beings, and most larger wild animals, as : *der Lehrer, the teacher ; der Löwe, the lion.*
2. All stones, seasons, months, and days, as : *der Rubin, the ruby ; der Juli, July.*
3. Nouns ending in *-en*, as : *der Garten, the garden.*  
Except: *das Kissen, the cushion ; das Becken, the basin ; das Wappen, the coat of arms.*
4. Nouns ending in *-ig, -ich, -ing, and -ee*, as : *der Käfig, the cage ; der Tee, tea.*

**B. Feminine** are : [subject to the "absolute" rules in the neuter below.]

1. Female beings, as : *die Königin, the queen ; die Tochter, the daughter.*  
Except: *das Weib, the woman, wife ; das Frauenzimmer, the female.*
2. Dissyllables denoting inanimate beings, ending in *-e*, as : *die Rose, the rose.*  
Except: *das Auge, the eye ; das Ende, the end ; das Erbe, the inheritance ;* and the ten masculine substantives in *-e* or *-en*, beginning with *der* Buchstabe (see D. B. c.)
3. Nouns ending in *-acht, -echt, -uld, -unft*, as : *die Nacht, the night.*  
Except: *der Bedacht, consideration ; der Schacht, the mine ; der Verdacht, suspicion.*
4. Derivatives in *-ei, -heit, -keit, -schaft, -ung*, as : *die Freiheit, liberty.*  
Except: *das Petschaft, the seal.*
5. Foreign words in *-ie, -ion, -ik, -ität*, as : *die Universität, the university.*

**Neuter** are : [1 and 2 are "absolute" rules.]

1. All parts of speech not nouns or adjectival nouns, when used substantively, as : *das „Wenn“ und das „Aber“, the "if" and the "but" ; das Essen, the eating (meal).*
2. All diminutives ; these all have if possible a modified root-vowel, and end in *-chen*, or *-lein*, as : *das Mädchen, the little girl ; das Knäblein, the little boy.*
3. Metals, as : *das Gold, the gold ;* except only *der Stahl, the steel.*
4. Countries, as : *(das) England, (the) England ; (das) Frankreich, (the) France.*  
Except: *die Schweiz, Switzerland ; die Türkei, Turkey ; die Pfalz, the Palatinate, and a few other provinces.*

*Note.*—Compound Nouns are of the Gender of their last component, which also alone is declined, as : *der Nussbaum, the nut-tree* (though *nut* = *die Nuss*.) But compounds of *der Mut*, *courage*, are mostly feminine, as : *die Anmut, beauty ; die Armut, poverty ; die Demut, humility ; die Großmut, generosity ; die Sanftmut, gentleness ; die Langmut, patience ; die Bismut, melancholy.* [All other compounds of *Mut* are masculine.]

*Other exceptions:* *die Antwort, the answer* (Plural: *die Antworten*) (*das Wort, the word*) ; *das Gegenteil, the contrary* (*der Teil, the part*) ; *der Mittwoch, Wednesday* (*die Woche, the week*) ; *der Abscheu, horror* (*die Schen, shyness*).

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE F.

Give Gender and Reason for Gender, of—

Schneider, <i>tailor</i>	masc. (der)	male being . . . . .	A. 1.
Blume, <i>flower</i>	fem. (die)	Dissyllable, inanimate, in æ . . . . .	B. 2.
Herbst, <i>autumn</i>	masc. (der)	a season . . . . .	A. 2.
Abend, <i>evening</i>	masc. (der)	part of a day . . . . .	A. 2.
Gleichheit, <i>equality</i>	fem. (die)	Derivative in -heit . . . . .	B. 4.
Gold, <i>gold</i>	neut. (das)	a metal . . . . .	C. 3.
Mittwoch, <i>Wednesday</i>	masc. (der)	a day of the week . . . . .	A. 2.
Stahl, <i>steel</i>	masc. (der)	exception to metals . . . . .	C. 3.
Sonne, <i>sun</i>	fem. (die)	Dissyllable, inanimate, in æ . . . . .	B. 2.
Nation, <i>nation</i>	fem. (die)	Foreign word, in -ien . . . . .	B. 5.
Fräulein, <i>young lady</i>	neut. (das)	diminutive . . . . .	C. 2.
Winter, <i>winter</i>	masc. (der)	a season . . . . .	A. 2.

*Exercise.*

Give Gender and Reasons for Gender, of—

Graben, <i>ditch</i>	Schlacht, <i>battle</i>	Schweiz, <i>Switzerland</i>	Spiclerei, <i>plaything</i>
Sonntag, <i>Sunday</i>	Väterchen, <i>little father</i>	Eroberung, <i>conquest</i>	Garten, <i>garden</i>
Schönheit, <i>beauty</i>	Ankunft, <i>arrival</i>	Sperling, <i>sparrow</i>	Rhetorik, <i>rhetoric</i>
Tiger, <i>tiger</i>	Tanzen, <i>dancing</i>	Nacht, <i>night</i>	Diamant, <i>diamond</i>
Hering, <i>herring</i>	Eisen, <i>iron</i>	Philosophie, <i>philosophy</i>	Blau, <i>blue</i>
Benn, <i>if</i>	Klee, <i>clover</i>	Rußland, <i>Russia</i>	Geduld, <i>patience</i>

*Using Reference-Pages D. and E. with F.*

Give Gender, Genitive Singular, and Nominative Plural of—

	Gender.	Genitive Singular.	Nominative Plural.
Frau, <i>woman</i>	die, F. B. 1.	der Frau, E. B.	die Frauen, D. (b) Femin. General Rule.
Bruder, <i>brother</i>	der, F. A. 1.	des Bruders, E. A. b.	die Brüder, D. (a) B. (a) Rule.
Straße, <i>street</i>	die, F. B. 2.	der Straße, E. B.	die Straßen, D. (b) Femin. General Rule.
Tag, <i>day</i>	der, F. A. 2.	des Tages, E. A. b.	die Tage, D. (a) A. exception 1.
Fräulein, <i>young lady</i>	das, F. C. 2.	des Fräuleins, E. c.	die Fräulein, D. (b) Neuter, B. (a) Rule.

*Exercise (using Reference-Pages D., E. and F.).*

Give Gender, Genitive Singular and Nominative Plural, as above, of—

Blume, <i>flower</i>	Diamant ( <i>foreign</i> ) <i>diamond</i>	Mädchen, <i>girl</i>	Monat, <i>month</i>
Käfig, <i>cage</i>	Sonne, <i>sun</i>	Schlacht, <i>battle</i>	Rose, <i>rose</i>
Winter, <i>winter</i>	Garten, <i>garden</i>	Weib, <i>woman</i>	Anabe, <i>boy</i>
Auge, <i>eye</i>	Nacht, <i>night</i>	Vater, <i>father</i>	Dörfchen, <i>little village</i>



## LESSON 10.

30. Many Verbs are conjugated in their Compound Tenses with *sein*, *to be*, instead of *haben*, *to have*. Past Participles, when used as adjectives, take *sein* as their auxiliary, as: *es ist gekauft*, *it is bought*.

31. The Past Participle of *sein*, *to be*, is *gewesen*, *been*, and of *werden*, *to become*, *geworden* [or *worden*, when used in connection with another Verb], as: *er ist gut gewesen*, *he has been good*; *er ist ein Graf geworden*, *he has become a count*; *es ist gekauft worden*, *it has been (become) bought*. Remember to place the Past Participle last.

32. The English "*to be*" must be rendered by *werden*, *to become*, in the Passive voice; i.e. when an agent may be thought of, who did the action suffered by the subject, as: *das Kind ist geholt worden*, *the child has been fetched*; *somebody (the agent) has fetched the child*.

*Examples of Compound Tenses of sein and werden.*

(Notice the English *to have* must here always be rendered by *sein*, *to be*.)

1. *My father has been here.* [is here been].
2. *We had been in London.* [were . . . been].
3. *She had become very rich.* [was . . . become].
4. *This book has been bought.* [is bought become].
5. *The boy had been punished.* [was punished become].
6. *His son has become a father.* (Nominative).
7. *He is praised and not punished.* (Passive).
8. *It is sold; it is (being) sold (by somebody).*

1. *Mein Vater ist hier gewesen.*
2. *Wir waren in London gewesen.*
3. *Sie war sehr reich geworden.*
4. *Dieses Buch ist gekauft worden.*
5. *Der Knabe war gestraft worden.*
6. *Sein Sohn ist ein Vater geworden.*
7. *Er wird gelobt und nicht gestraft.*
8. *Es ist verkauft, es wird verkauft.*

The *Conditional Simple* of all German Verbs is formed by using the Imperfect Subjunctive of *werden* (see Lesson 9), and adding to it the Infinitive of the Verb. As in the *Future Simple*, this Infinitive must stand at the end of the sentence.

*Examples.*

*ich würde es nicht kaufen, wenn, etc.*  
*Würden Sie den Mann loben, wenn, etc.*

*I should not buy it, if, etc.*  
*Should you praise the man, if, etc.*

*Exercise.*

1. That teacher has been our teacher.
3. The child had been (become) praised.
5. Who bought the horse? It is sold (adj.).
7. Do you use this book? or this pen?
9. The king would have bought it, if, etc.

2. You had been very well-behaved.
4. He has become my pupil.
6. The pencil has been used.
8. They have not yet been discovered.
10. Would you hear the pupil, if, etc.

## REFERENCE-PAGE G.

## On the Adjective.

Adjectives after "to be" or "to become" never change at all (see Rule 10, Lesson 4), but all adjectives, as well as Present and Past Participles used adjectively, have changes when they stand as attributes before a noun, or are used as nouns themselves. These changes depend on the article or determinative word before the adjective. We have three forms:

## FIRST FORM.

The adjective preceded by one of the "*Definite Article Group*." (See Reference-Page C.)

der, dieser, jener, jeder, mancher, welcher?

Scheme for First Form.

	<i>masc. Sing.</i>	<i>fem. Sing.</i>	<i>neut. Sing.</i>	<i>All Plurals.</i>
Nom.	der gut-e	} die gut-e	das gut-e	die gut-en
Acc.	den gut-en			
Gen.	des gut-en	der gut-en	des gut-en	der gut-en
Dat.	dem gut-en	der gut-en	dem gut-en	den gut-en

	<i>m. s.</i>	<i>f. s.</i>	<i>n. s.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	=e	} =e		
A.	=en		=e	=en
G.	=en	=en	=en	=en
D.	=en	=en	=en	=en

Notice.—Nom. Sing. in =e; all other forms in =en, except fem. and neut. sing. Accusative by 2, Lesson 1.

## SECOND FORM.

The adjective preceded by one of the "*Indefinite Article Group*." (See Reference-Page C.)

ein, kein, was für ein; mein, dein, sein, (ihr), unser, euer, ihr (Ihr):

Scheme for Second Form.

	<i>masc. Sing.</i>	<i>fem. Sing.</i>	<i>neut. Sing.</i>	<i>All Plurals.</i>
Nom.	dein gut-er	} deine gut-e	dein gut-es	deine gut-en
Acc.	deinen gut-en			
Gen.	deines gut-en	deiner gut-en	deines gut-en	deiner gut-en
Dat.	deinem gut-en	deiner gut-en	deinem gut-en	deinen gut-en

	<i>m. s.</i>	<i>f. s.</i>	<i>n. s.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	=er	} =e		
A.	=en		=es	=en
G.	=en	=en	=en	=en
D.	=en	=en	=en	=en

Notice.—Nom. Sing. in =er, =e, =es; all other forms in =en, except fem. and neut. sing. Acc. by 2, Lesson 1

## THIRD FORM.

The adjective *not* preceded by any determinative of the Definite or Indefinite Article groups, or preceded by a definite or indefinite numeral [without one of the words of the "Definite" or "Indefinite" article groups before them], as: zehn, ten, etc.; einige, several; mehrere, several; viele, many; viel, much; wenige, few; wenig, little; etwas, something. This form is used also in the Vocative (=Nominative).

	<i>masc. Sing.</i>	<i>fem. Sing.</i>	<i>neut. Sing.</i>	<i>All Plurals.</i>
Nom.	gut-er	} gut-e	gut-es	gut-e
Acc.	gut-en			
Gen.	gut-en	gut-er	gut-en	gut-er
Dat.	gut-em	gut-er	gut-em	gut-en

Notice.—These terminations are those of the "*Definite Article group*," see Reference-Page C., except in the Genitive Singular, masculine and neuter, where =en displaces =es for the sake of euphony.

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE G.

*N.B.*—The declension of the adjective does not in any way influence that of the Determinative nor that of the Substantive.

FIRST FORM.—Decline *alt, old*, with *der . . Vater; diese . . Frau; welches . . Buch?*

*Singular (masc.)*

*Singular (fem.)*

*Singular (neuter.)*

N. *der alte Vater,* } *the old father*  
 A. *den alten Vater,* }  
 G. *des alten Vaters, the old father's*  
 D. *dem alten Vater, to the old father*

*diese alte Frau, this old woman*  
*dieser alten Frau, of this old woman*  
*dieser alten Frau, to this old woman*

*welches alte Buch? which old book?*  
*welches alten Buches? of which old book?*  
*welchem alten Buche? to which old book?*

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

N. } *die alten Väter, the old fathers*  
 A. }  
 G. *der alten Väter, of the old fathers*  
 D. *den alten Vätern, to the old fathers*

*diese alten Frauen, these old women*  
*dieser alten Frauen, of these old women*  
*diesen alten Frauen, to these old women*

*welche alten Bücher? which old books?*  
*welcher alten Bücher? of which old books?*  
*welchen alten Büchern? to which old books?*

*Exercise.*—Decline *glücklich, happy*; with *dieser . . Mann; jede . . Mutter* (of course no plural), and *jenes . . Land*; also *brav, well-behaved*; with *welcher . . Knabe?*

SECOND FORM.—Decline *neu, new*, with *sein . . Hut; keine . . Feder; Was für ein . . Land?*

*Singular (masc.)*

*Singular (fem.)*

*Singular (neuter).*

N. *sein neuer Hut,* } *his new hat*  
 A. *seinen neuen Hut,* }  
 G. *seines neuen Hutes, of his new hat*  
 D. *seinem neuen Hute, to his new hat*

*keine neue Feder, no new pen*  
*keiner neuen Feder, of no new pen*  
*keiner neuen Feder, to no new pen*

*Was für ein neues Land? What sort of new land?*  
*Was für eines neuen Landes? Of what sort of new land?*  
*Was für einem neuen Lande? To what sort of new land?*

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

N. } *seine neuen Hüte, his new hats*  
 A. }  
 G. *seiner neuen Hüte, of his new hats*  
 D. *seinen neuen Hüten, to his new hats*

*keine neuen Federn, no new pens*  
*keiner neuen Federn, of no new pens*  
*keinen neuen Federn, to no new pens*

*Was für neue Länder? What sort of new lands?*  
 [Note. *Was für ein . .* drops *ein* in the Plural, therefore the adjective changes according to the Form in Plural.]

*Exercise.*—Decline *arm, poor*, with *Was für ein . . Graf?*; *meine . . Tochter; Ihr . . Kind*: also *groß, tall*, with *ein . . Hund*. (No plural.)

THIRD FORM.—Decline *schlecht, with Wein, Schule, Brod.*

*Singular (masc.).*

*Singular (fem.).*

*Singular (neuter).*

N. *schlechter Wein,* } *bad wine*  
 A. *schlechten Wein,* }  
 G. *schlechten Weines, of bad wine*  
 D. *schlechtem Weine, to bad wine*

*schlechte Schule, bad school*  
*schlechter Schule, of (a) bad school*  
*schlechter Schule, to (a) bad school*

*schlechtes Brod, bad bread*  
*schlechten Brodes, of bad bread*  
*schlechtem Brode, to bad bread*

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

N. } *schlechte Weine, bad wines*  
 A. }  
 G. *schlechter Weine, of bad wines*  
 D. *schlechten Weinen, to bad wines*

*schlechte Schulen, bad schools*  
*schlechter Schulen, of bad schools*  
*schlechten Schulen, to bad schools*

*schlechte Brode, bad loaves*  
*schlechter Brode, of bad loaves*  
*schlechten Broden, to bad loaves*

*Exercise.*—Decline *schön, beautiful*, with *Brief (m.) letter; Milch (f.) milk* (no plural); *Dorf (n.) village*; also *reich, rich*, with *König (m.)*, and with *zehn . . Städte* (no sing.).

# SENTENCES AND EXERCISES ON THE USE OF THE ADJECTIVE AS AN ATTRIBUTIVE (Ref.-Page G.).

(Learn these Model Sentences carefully, and imitate them.)

## FIRST FORM.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>The beautiful daughters of the dear mother.</i> | 1. Die schönen Töchter der lieben Mutter.  |
| 2. <i>Each good child loves its father.</i>           | 2. Jedes gute Kind liebt seinen Vater.     |
| 3. <i>Which beautiful letter will you fetch?</i>      | 3. Welchen schönen Brief werden Sie holen? |
| 4. <i>The rich count has many-a large village.</i>    | 4. Der reiche Graf hat manches große Dorf. |
| 5. <i>He has not heard this poor man.</i>             | 5. Er hat diesen armen Mann nicht gehört.  |

### Exercise on the First Form.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Which happy boys were there? These.    | 2. I have not fetched every large book.   |
| 3. Will you seek those beautiful letters. | 4. Where were these rich counts? There.   |
| 5. Every poor man will be here.           | 6. Do you use this beautiful knife? No.   |
| 7. Who has heard that good young-man?     | 8. They bought these large pictures here. |
| 9. Many-a happy child was there.          | 10. These well-behaved children are poor. |

## SECOND FORM.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>My old dog is sold.</i>                      | 1. Mein alter Hund ist verkauft.               |
| 2. <i>Have you heard our good pupil?</i>           | 2. Haben Sie unseren guten Schüler gehört.     |
| 3. <i>We have not chosen your beautiful knife.</i> | 3. Wir haben Ihr schönes Messer nicht gewählt. |
| 4. <i>What a long letter you have!</i>             | 4. Was für einen langen Brief Sie haben!       |
| 5. <i>Do not (thou) buy any large books!</i>       | 5. Kaufe keine großen Bücher!                  |

### Exercise on the Second Form.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. What a beautiful horse he has!       | 2. We have not heard your good brother. |
| 3. Have you chosen our happy boy?       | 4. No, we have chosen his poor child.   |
| 5. Where is my poor, old dog? Not here. | 6. What sort of an old knife have you?  |
| 7. Did you sell your large lands? No.   | 8. They love their good old house much. |
| 9. He loved a poor but happy girl.      | 10. We have no rich boys here, not one. |

## THIRD FORM.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Do you use much good money? Yes.</i>    | 1. Brauchen Sie viel gutes Geld? Ja.        |
| 2. <i>The men had little clear wine.</i>      | 2. Die Männer hatten wenig reinen Wein.     |
| 3. <i>We fetched ten big, but poor men.</i>   | 3. Wir holten zehn große, aber arme Männer. |
| 4. <i>You have several good, old books.</i>   | 4. Sie haben mehrere gute, alte Bücher.     |
| 5. <i>My father said: Poor child, listen!</i> | 5. Mein Vater sagte: Armes Kind, höre!      |

### Exercise on the Third Form.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. I say it to ten poor, old men.        | 2. Little good wine, but much bad.            |
| 3. Rich man, hear poor children!         | 4. They had something good there.             |
| 5. Well-behaved pupils have clean books. | 6. Several old brothers of our boys are here. |
| 7. Do you love good old wine?            | 8. Poor child, choose this large book!        |
| 9. Much old wine is not very good.       | 10. He deserves something beautiful.          |



## LESSON 11.

33. Instead of the Conditional Simple, we often use in German the Imperfect Subjunctive, as in English. For example :

*I would be rich, if, etc.* Ich würde reich sein, or, Ich wäre reich, wenn, etc.

*He would have the book, if, etc.* Er würde das Buch haben, or, er hätte das Buch, wenn, etc.

34. The Present Participle of all German verbs is formed by adding *=end* to the root, as : *haben, to have* ; *habend, having* ; *kaufen, to buy* ; *kaufend, buying*. It is, however, seldom used as a verb.

35. Both the Present Participle and the Past Participle may be used as adjectives ; when thus standing before a noun, they conform to the rules given in Reference-Page G., as : *das gekaufte Buch, the bought book* ; *ein liebender Freund, a loving friend*.

36. The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are formed as in English, by using the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of the auxiliary with the Past Participle of the Verb. Remember that this Past Participle must come last in the sentence [see 16] ; and also be careful to remember that *sein, to be*, and *werden, to become*, as well as many other verbs, take *sein, to be*, for their auxiliary, though they may have in English the auxiliary *to have*.

*Examples on the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Man sagte, ich hätte das schöne Pferd gekauft.   | 1. They said, I had bought the beautiful horse.      |
| 2. Sie hofften, du wärest reich geworden.           | 2. They hoped, thou hadst become rich.               |
| 3. Ich glaube, er sei ein reicher Graf gewesen.     | 3. I believe, he has been a rich count.              |
| 4. Glauben Sie, er wäre dort gewesen, wenn, etc.    | 4. Do you think he would have been there, if, etc.   |
| 5. Er sagt, er habe das geliebte Kind gesucht.      | 5. He says, he has [25] sought the loved child.      |
| 6. Wir hoffen, Sie werden dieses glauben.           | 6. We hope, you will believe this.                   |
| 7. Sagt man, er sei arm geworden ?                  | 7. Do they say, he has become poor ?                 |
| 8. Man sagte, Sie wären dort gewesen.               | 8. They said, you had been there.                    |
| 9. Hätten Sie das alte Pferd verkauft, wenn, etc.   | 9. Would you have sold the old horse, if, etc.       |
| 10. Wäre das große Buch geholt worden, wenn, etc. ? | 10. Would the large book have been fetched, if, etc. |

*Exercise.*

Read up Rules 25, 31, 33.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. They say, we have been (Subj.) there.     | 2. They said, we had become happy.                              |
| 3. The old king hopes, he will become rich.  | 4. This well-behaved child has been (is . . . become) punished. |
| 5. This loved man has been chosen.           | 6. Will you say, he has deserved it.                            |
| 7. These rich men use their money here.      | 8. Do you hope they had praised the happy men.                  |
| 9. My good father says, you have been there. | 10. They say, the poor count would have been there.             |

## LESSON 12.

37. The Second Future and Second Conditional are formed in German, as in English, by joining to the Past Participle of the Verb, the First Future and First Conditional of the auxiliary, as :

ich werde es gekauft haben	} etc., Second Future,	{ <i>I shall have bought it.</i>
du wirst dort gewesen sein		
ich würde das geglaubt haben	} etc., Second Conditional,	{ <i>I should have believed that.</i>
du würdest reich geworden sein		

38. The really conjugated Verb in these tenses is the auxiliary *werden* ; this auxiliary therefore is the Assertion, and all rules as to the position of the Assertion apply to it, and not to the Infinitives *sein* or *haben*, nor to the Past Participle of the actual verb.

39. Instead of the Second Conditional, we may use the Pluperfect Subjunctive, as :

ich würde das geglaubt haben	=	ich hätte das geglaubt.	<i>I should have believed that.</i>
du würdest reich geworden sein	=	du wärest reich geworden.	<i>Thou wouldst have become rich.</i>

40. In every Primary or independent statement or question, containing a Past Participle and an Infinitive, the Infinitive must stand last of all in the sentence, and the Past Participle last but one.

*Examples.*

1. Man sagt, er werde ein Graf werden.	}	1. <i>They say, he will become a count.</i>
2. { Sie würden den Hund gekauft haben.		2. <i>They (or you) would have bought the dog.</i>
3. { Sie hätten den Hund gekauft.	}	3. <i>Would he have become poor, if, etc.</i>
3. { Würde er arm geworden sein, wenn, etc.		
4. { Wäre er arm geworden, wenn, etc.	}	4. <i>The boy would have been (become) punished.</i>
4. { Der Knabe würde gestraft worden sein,		
4. { Der Knabe wäre gestraft worden.		5. <i>Thou wilt have used the money.</i>
5. Du wirst das Geld gebraucht haben.		6. <i>Will the man not be (become) chosen ?</i>
6. Wird der Mann nicht gewählt werden ?		7. <i>The woman will have praised her child.</i>
7. Die Frau wird ihr Kind gelobt haben.		8. <i>We shall not have sought this.</i>
8. Wir werden das nicht gesucht haben.		9. <i>He will not have believed the letter (dat.).</i>
9. Er wird dem Brief nicht geglaubt haben.		10. <i>The daughter would have been praised.</i>
10. Die Tochter wäre gelobt worden.		

*Exercise.*

1. Will you not have sought your book ?	}	2. I would have sought it, if . . .
3. This good boy will be praised.		4. He would have been punished, if . . .
5. Would he not have been chosen, if . . . ?	}	6. Yes, he would have been chosen, if . . .
7. He fetched my old book, the good boy.		8. He would not have fetched it, if . . .
9. Where was our fine, happy child ?		10. It will not yet have been there.

## ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

(To be written on repeating the work of the Second Term.)

*On Lesson 7.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. My boy, fetch that book there !                   | 2. There is my horse ; let us sell it. |
| 3. Let the teacher ( <i>acc.</i> ) hear this child ! | 4. Do not use your pencil, child !     |
| 5. Seek my letter ( <i>acc.</i> ), do you hear ?     | 6. What did you choose ? Choose that.  |
| 7. Here is your father ; he has the letter.          | 8. Let him be poor or rich, father !   |
| 9. Praise this pupil ; he is well-behaved.           | 10. Let them hear their teacher !      |

*On Lesson 8 and Ref.-Page D.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. We say, these boys are not well-behaved. | 2. They say, they have deserved rewards.      |
| 3. Those ladies hope, you are not poor.     | 4. I believe, he will fetch my horses.        |
| 5. We hope, you will buy those houses.      | 6. My books say, he was very poor.            |
| 7. The men believe, they will choose this.  | 8. Do the counts say, they are not rich ?     |
| 9. These pupils say, they are very happy.   | 10. We believe, we have discovered the lands. |

*On Lesson 9 and Ref.-Page E.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. I believe the boy ( <i>dat.</i> ) ; he said, it is there. | 2. My father's dog is very large ; they say so. |
| 3. We hoped, you had your teacher's book.                    | 4. I believed, this town was very old.          |
| 5. The child of this man said, it was happy.                 | 6. Do they say, we were rich, or poor ?         |
| 7. Did you hear, he sought my pictures ?                     | 8. No, but I heard, they bought those there.    |
| 9. The sons of those brothers were not rich.                 | 10. We thought, the children were happy.        |

*On Lesson 10 and Ref.-Page F.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Have you been there ? Yes, we were there.  | 2. These wines have been bought here.        |
| 3. Would you, my child, have been happy ?     | 4. No, I should not have been very happy.    |
| 5. Will you buy my father's horse ?           | 6. Who will have become a count ?            |
| 7. My child has become a man ( <i>nom.</i> ). | 8. Would you have become my pupils, if . . . |
| 9. Which dog has been (become) bought ?       | 10. Who will have used your money ?          |

*On Lesson 11 and Ref.-Page G.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Would this rich man have become poor, if . . . | 2. I believe he would have become a poor man. |
| 3. Does he think, this good book is very old ?    | 4. My poor son said, he was not happy.        |
| 5. These old horses have been bought here.        | 6. Would he seek my old hat ? No.             |
| 7. Had you been there, my poor men ?              | 8. Rich daughters of poor mothers.            |
| 9. Would you believe these rich counts ?          | 10. We hope, they will sell their old houses. |

*On Lesson 12 and General.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. I think, my good child will have a book. | 2. The happy fathers would have been here. |
| 3. Let these poor children choose books.    | 4. I should not have believed this.        |
| 5. Happy sons of happy, old fathers !       | 6. Much money, but few good dresses.       |
| 7. Should we not have been chosen.          | 8. I believe, you will be chosen there.    |
| 9. Would they have sold these old horses ?  | 10. I sold it to those good, happy men.    |



## REFERENCE-PAGE H.

## The Regular Verb; root unchanged throughout.

1. Verbs with roots ending in *f*, *ſch*, *ſ*, insert a euphonic *e* before *-ſt*, as: *du tanzeſt*.
2. Verbs with roots ending in *d*, *t*, *ſch*, *gn*, *ſhm*, insert a euphonic *e* before the *-t* of all terminations, as: *er redet, he speaks*; *er redete, he spoke*.
3. No *ge-* is prefixed for the Past Participle if the verb begins with *be-*, *ge-*, *emp-*, *ent-*, *er-*, *ver-*, *zer-*, *hinter-*, *miß-*, *voll-*, *wider-*, (see Rule 19, lesson 6), nor is *ge-* prefixed to verbs ending in *-iren*, as: *verdient, probirt*.
4. In verbs conjugated with *ſein*, *to be*, simply substitute this auxiliary for *haben*, *to have*, (below) in all Compound Tenses, without any other change whatever.

Example of Regular Conjugation: *ſagen*, *to say*.(N.B.—*eſ*, *it*, shows the position of the Object or Predicate throughout.)

## PRESENT INDICATIVE.

ich ſag-e eſ, I say it
du ... -ſt eſ, thou sayest it
er ... -t eſ, he says it
wir ... -en eſ, we say it
ihr ... -t eſ, ye say it
ſie ... -en eſ, they say it

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich ſag-e eſ, I say it
du ... -eſt eſ, thou say it
er ... -e eſ, he say it
wir ... -en eſ, we say it
ihr ... -et eſ, ye say it
ſie ... -en eſ, they say it

## PERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich habe I have
du haſt thou haſt
er hat he has
wir haben we have
ihr habt ye have
ſie haben they have

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich habe I have
du habeſt thou have
er habe he have
wir haben we have
ihr habet ye have
ſie haben they have

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich ſag-te eſ, I ſaid it
du ... -teſt eſ, thou ſaidſt it
er ... -te eſ, he ſaid it
wir ... -ten eſ, we ſaid it
ihr ... -tet eſ, ye ſaid it
ſie ... -ten eſ, they ſaid it

## IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich ſag-te eſ, I ſaid it
du ... -teſt eſ, thou ſaidſt it
er ... -te eſ, he ſaid it
wir ... -ten eſ, we ſaid it
ihr ... -tet eſ, ye ſaid it
ſie ... -ten eſ, they ſaid it

## PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich hatte I had
du hatteſt thou hadſt
er hatte he had
wir hatten we had
ihr hättet ye had
ſie hatten they had

## PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich hätte I had (or wouldhave)
du hätteſt thou hadſt
er hätte he had
wir hätten we had
ihr hättet ye had
ſie hätten they had

## FIRST FUTURE INDICATIVE.

ich werde I ſhall
du wirſt thou wilt
er wird he will
wir werden we ſhall
ihr werdet ye will
ſie werden they will

## FIRST FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich werde I ſhall
du werdeſt thou wilt
er werde he will
wir werden we ſhall
ihr werdet ye will
ſie werden they will

## SECOND FUTURE INDICATIVE.

ich werde I ſhall
du wirſt thou wilt
er wird he will
wir werden we ſhall
ihr werdet ye will
ſie werden they will

## SECOND FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich werde I ſhall
du werdeſt thou wilt
er werde he will
wir werden we ſhall
ihr werdet ye will
ſie werden they will

## IMPERATIVE.

(no First Person Singular.)
ſag-e eſ! ſay (thou) it!
laß eſ ihn ſagen! Let him ſay it!
ſag-en wir eſ! Let us ſay it!
ſag-t eſ!
ſag-en Sie eſ! Say (you) it
laß eſ ſie ſagen! Let them ſay it!

## FIRST CONDITIONAL.

ich würde I ſhould
du würdeſt thou wouldſt
er würde he would
wir würden we ſhould
ihr würdet ye would
ſie würden they would

## SECOND CONDITIONAL.

ich würde I ſhould
du würdeſt thou wouldſt
er würde he would
wir würden we ſhould
ihr würdet ye would
ſie würden they would

## INFINITIVE.

eſ ſag-en, to ſay it
eſ ge-ſag-t haben, to have ſaid it
PRESENT PARTICIPLE.
eſ ag-end, ſaying it
PAST PARTICIPLE.
ge-ſag-t, ſaid

## REFERENCE-PAGE I.

**haben**, to have. PRESENT PARTICIPLE : **hab-end**, having. PAST PARTICIPLE : **gehab-t**, had (regular).

Conjugated exactly like the Regular Verbs, root : **hab-**; except in the—

PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	IMPERF. SUBJUNCTIVE	Thus Regular are :
<i>ich hab-e es, I have it</i>	<i>ich hatte es, I had it</i>	<i>ich hätte es, { I had it shd. have it</i>	FUTURE SIMPLE.
<i>du hast es, thou hast it</i>	<i>du hattest es, thou hadst it</i>	<i>du hättest es, thou hadst it</i>	<i>ich werde es haben, I shall have it</i>
<i>er hat es, he has it</i>	<i>er hatte es, he had it</i>	<i>er hätte es, he had it</i>	FIRST CONDITIONAL.
<i>wir hab-en es, we have it</i>	<i>wir hatten es, we had it</i>	<i>wir hätten es, we had it</i>	<i>ich würde es haben, I should have it</i>
<i>ihr hab-t es, ye have it</i>	<i>ihr hättet es, ye had it</i>	<i>ihr hättet es, ye had it</i>	IMPERATIVE.
<i>sie hab-en es, they have it</i>	<i>sie hatten es, they had it</i>	<i>sie hätten es, they had it</i>	<i>habe ! have (thou) !</i>
In the COMPOUND TENSES <b>haben</b> is its own auxiliary, as : <i>ich habe es gehabt, I have had it (etc.).</i>			

**sein**, to be. PRESENT PARTICIPLE : **sei-end**, being (rarely used). PAST PARTICIPLE : **gewesen**, been.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.	PRES. SUBJ.	IMPERF. INDIC.	IMPERF. SUBJUN.	IMPERATIVE.
<i>ich bin es, I am it (it is I)</i>	<i>ich sei es,</i>	<i>ich war es,</i>	<i>ich wäre es,</i>	—
<i>du bist es, thou art it</i>	<i>du seiest es,</i>	<i>du warst es,</i>	<i>du wärest es,</i>	<i>sei es, be (thou) it</i>
<i>er ist es, he is it</i>	<i>er sei es,</i>	<i>er war es,</i>	<i>er wäre es,</i>	(regular)
<i>wir sind es, we are it</i>	<i>wir seien es,</i>	<i>wir waren es,</i>	<i>wir wären es,</i>	<i>seien wir es, let us be it</i>
<i>ihr seid es, ye are it</i>	<i>ihr seiet es,</i>	<i>ihr wäret es,</i>	<i>ihr wäret es,</i>	<i>seid es,</i>
<i>sie sind es, they are it</i>	<i>sie seien es,</i>	<i>sie waren es,</i>	<i>sie wären es,</i>	<i>seien sie es,</i> } <i>be (you) it</i> (regular)

In the Future Simple and First Conditional, **sein** is regular ; in the COMPOUND TENSES it is its own auxiliary.

PERFECT INDICATIVE.	PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.	SECOND FUTURE INDICATIVE.
<i>ich bin es gewesen, I have been it</i>	<i>ich sei es gewesen, I have been it</i>	<i>ich werde es gewesen sein, I shall have been it</i>
PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.	SECOND CONDITIONAL.
<i>ich war es gewesen, I had been it</i>	<i>ich wäre es gewesen, I had been it</i>	<i>ich würde es gewesen sein, I should have been it</i>

**werden**, to become. PRES. PARTIC. : **werd-end**, becoming. PAST PART. : (ge)worden (see Rule 31), become.

Conjugated exactly like the Regular Verbs, root : **werd-**; except in the—

PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERF. INDIC.	IMPERF. SUBJUN.	Thus Regular are :
<i>ich werde es, I become it</i>	<i>ich wurde es,</i>	<i>ich würde es,</i>	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>du wirst es, thou becomest it</i>	<i>du wurdest es,</i>	<i>du würdest es,</i>	<i>ich werde es, I become it</i>
<i>er wird es, he becomes it</i>	<i>er wurde es</i>	<i>er würde es,</i>	<i>du werdest es, thou becomest it</i>
<i>wir werden es, we become it</i>	<i>wir wurden es,</i>	<i>wir würden es,</i>	FUTURE SIMPLE INDICATIVE.
<i>ihr werdet es, ye become it</i>	<i>ihr würdet es,</i>	<i>ihr würdet es,</i>	<i>ich werde es werden, I shall become it</i>
<i>sie werden es, they become it</i>	<i>sie wurden es,</i>	<i>sie würden es,</i>	<i>du wirst es werden, thou wilt become it</i>

In the COMPOUND TENSES, **werden** is conjugated with **sein**, to be.

PERFECT INDICATIVE.	PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.	SECOND FUTURE CONDITIONAL.
<i>ich bin es geworden, I have become it</i>	<i>ich sei es geworden, I have become it</i>	<i>ich werde es geworden sein, I shall have become it</i>
PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.	SECOND CONDITIONAL.
<i>ich war es geworden, I had become it</i>	<i>ich wäre es geworden, I had become it</i>	<i>ich würde es geworden sein, I should have become it</i>

## CONVERSATIONAL SENTENCES.

(To be learnt in small portions again and again during the Term.)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Wie weit ist es von hier nach Berlin?          | <i>How far is it from here to Berlin?</i>             |
| 2. Es ist noch mehr als zwanzig Meilen.           | <i>It is still more than twenty miles.</i>            |
| 3. Ich bin müde; das Reisen ermüdet sehr.         | <i>I am tired; travelling tires one very much.</i>    |
| 4. Sind Sie hungrig? Nein, aber ich bin durstig.  | <i>Are you hungry? No, but I am thirsty.</i>          |
| 5. Es regnete stark, es hat gestern geschneit.    | <i>It rained heavily, it snowed yesterday.</i>        |
| 6. Heute ist es aber recht schönes Wetter.        | <i>To-day, however, it is very beautiful weather.</i> |
| 7. Sie kommen mit uns; nicht wahr?                | <i>You are coming with us, are you not?</i>           |
| 8. Ja, ich werde mit Vergnügen kommen.            | <i>Yes, I shall come with pleasure.</i>               |
| 9. Gehen Sie heute Abend in's Concert?            | <i>Will you go to the concert this evening?</i>       |
| 10. Nein, wir werden in's Theater gehen.          | <i>No, we are going to the theatre.</i>               |
| 11. Sehen Sie das schöne Dorf dort unten?         | <i>Do you see the beautiful village down there?</i>   |
| 12. Hier auf dem Berge ist es sehr schön.         | <i>Here on the mountain it is very nice.</i>          |
| 13. Setzen Sie sich da auf diese Bank.            | <i>Sit down here on this bench.</i>                   |
| 14. Danke, mein Herr, setzen Sie sich auch.       | <i>Thank you, Sir, sit down also.</i>                 |
| 15. Wie hat es Ihnen in Wien gefallen?            | <i>How did you like Vienna?</i>                       |
| 16. Es gefiel mir außerordentlich gut.            | <i>I liked it very much indeed.</i>                   |
| 17. Wie lange blieben Sie in der Stadt?           | <i>How long did you remain in the town?</i>           |
| 18. Ich blieb einen ganzen Monat dort.            | <i>I remained a whole month there.</i>                |
| 19. Sind Sie schon in der Schweiz gewesen?        | <i>Have you already been in Switzerland?</i>          |
| 20. Nein, aber wie gehen nächstes Jahr hin.       | <i>No, but we go there next year.</i>                 |
| 21. Wir werden im Juli abreisen.                  | <i>We shall set out in July.</i>                      |
| 22. Mein Freund ist nach Amerika gegangen.        | <i>My friend is gone to America.</i>                  |
| 23. Er wird wahrscheinlich fünf Jahre fort sein.  | <i>He will probably be away five years.</i>           |
| 24. Es tut mir leid, aber ich kann nicht bleiben. | <i>I am sorry, but I cannot remain.</i>               |
| 25. Ich fürchte, Sie sind nicht ganz wohl.        | <i>I fear you are not quite well.</i>                 |
| 26. Nein, ich habe starkes Kopfschmerz.           | <i>No, I have a violent headache.</i>                 |
| 27. Mein Kopf tut mir sehr weh.                   | <i>My head pains me very much.</i>                    |
| 28. Ich bitte, geben Sie mir etwas Wasser.        | <i>I beg you to give me some water.</i>               |
| 29. Hier ist ganz kaltes, frisches Wasser.        | <i>Here is some quite cold, fresh water.</i>          |
| 30. Ach, das ist gut, ich danke Ihnen bestens.    | <i>Oh, that is good, I thank you sincerely.</i>       |
| 31. Fühlen Sie sich wieder etwas besser?          | <i>Do you feel a little better again?</i>             |
| 32. Oh ja, aber ich will nach Hause gehen.        | <i>O yes, but I will go home.</i>                     |
| 33. Ich glaube, man wird jetzt fortgehen.         | <i>I believe, people are going away now.</i>          |
| 34. Adieu, mein lieber Freund, auf Wiedersehen.   | <i>Good-bye, my friend, au revoir.</i>                |
| 35. Auf baldiges Wiedersehen, lieber Heinrich.    | <i>I hope to see you again soon, dear Henry.</i>      |
| 36. Ich hoffe, dich recht bald wiederzusehen.     | <i>I hope to see you again very soon.</i>             |

## POEMS.

(To be learnt in small portions until thoroughly known.)

## Schäfer's Sonntagslied. (Ulmland.)

Das ist der Tag des Herrn!  
Ich bin allein auf weiter Flur;  
Noch eine Morgenglocke nur  
Run Stille nah' und fern.

Anbetend knie' ich hier.  
O süßes Grau'n! Geheim'es Weh'n!  
Als knieten Viele ungesch'n,  
Und beteten mit mir.

Der Himmel, nah' und fern,  
Er ist so klar und feierlich;  
So ganz, als wollt' er öffnen sich.  
Das ist der Tag des Herrn.

## Der Gute Kamerad. (Ulmland.)

Ich hatt' einen Kameraden,  
Einen bessern find'st du nit. (for nicht)  
Die Trommel schlug zum Streite,  
Er gieng an meiner Seite  
In gleichem Schritt und Tritt.

Eine Kugel kam geflogen,  
Gibt's mir oder gibt es dir?  
Ihn hat sie weggerissen,  
Er liegt mir vor den Füßen,  
Als wär's ein Stück von mir.

Will mir die Hand noch reichen,  
Derweil ich eben lad'!  
Kann dir die Hand nicht geben,  
Bleib' du im ew'gen Leben,  
Mein guter Kamerad!

## The Shepherd's Sunday Song.

(Literal Translation.)

*This is the day of the Lord!  
I am alone on the wide plain;  
Yet one morning-bell only,  
Now silence near and far.*

*Worshipping I kneel here.  
O sweet awe! Mysterious breathings!  
As if many knelt unseen,  
And were praying along with me.*

*Heaven, near and far away,  
Is so clear and solemn-looking;  
So altogether, as if it were going to open.  
That is the Lord's day.*

## The Good Comrade.

(Literal Translation.)

*I had a comrade,  
A better one you could not find.  
The drum beat for the battle,  
He marched at my side  
With equal step (and tread).*

*A (cannon) ball came flying (towards us),  
Is it my turn or is it yours?  
Him it has torn away,  
He lies in front of my feet,  
Just as if it were a piece of myself.*

*He wants to give me his hand once more,  
Just whilst I am loading (my gun);  
I cannot give you my hand.  
Remain in eternal life (hereafter),  
My good comrade.*



## REFERENCE-PAGE J.

## SEQUENCE OF WORDS in the PRIMARY or PRINCIPAL Sentence.

(Recapitulation of Syntax Rules given hitherto.)

The student must, of course, be able without hesitation to recognise a member of a sentence as the Subject, or the Object, or the Predicate, etc. He must also carefully remember that the *Assertion* is **never** an Infinitive or Past Participle, but always a verb or auxiliary conjugated, *i.e.* expressing Person, Number, and Tense.

## A. Natural order in Statements. (Learn this order by heart.)

1 Subject, with all its enlargements.	2 Assertion <i>i.e.</i> Conjugated Verb or Auxiliary.	3 Objects with their enlargements. (Noun with preposition) Noun in oblique Case. See <i>Notice</i> (a) below.	4 Adverbs or Adverbials. See <i>Notice</i> (b) below.	5 Predicate with its enlargements. [Separable prefix] Nom. of nouns. Adj. invariable.	6 Past Partic. If more than one, put that of the Auxili- ary last.	7 Infinitive. If more than one, put that of the Auxili- ary last.
Der gute Knabe	kauft	keine Bücher	heute.	none	none	none
Mein alter Vater	hat	dem Knaben	nicht	none	geglaubt	none
Die Kinder	sind	von dem Lehrer	gestern	none	gelobt worden.	none
Er	war	none	schon	ein alter Mann.	none	none
Diese Männer	würden	none	dort	nicht reich	geworden	sein.
Die Sonne	gieng	none	heute spät	auf.	none	none

**B. Inverted order,** *i.e.* Assertion before Subject, without any other change. This takes place (a) in Questions; (b) when any other member of the sentence, except the Subject, stands at the beginning of the sentence for emphasis.

3, 4, 5, 6, or 7	INVERSION.		3	4	5	6	7
	Assertion	Subject.	Objects.	Adverbs.	Predicate.	Past Partic.	Infinitive.
Geglaubt	Kauft	der gute Knabe	keine Bücher	heute?	none	none	none
Von dem Lehrer	hat	mein alter Vater	dem Knaben	nicht.	none	(at beginning)	none
Ein alter Mann	sind	die Kinder	(at beginning)	gestern	none	gelobt worden.	none
Dort	war	er	none	schon.	(at beginning)	none	none
Heute	würden	diese Männer	none	(at beginning)	nicht reich	geworden	sein.
	gieng	die Sonne	none	spät	auf.	none	none

*Notice.*—(a) If there are more than one *Object*, Person precedes Thing, Pronoun precedes Noun, Dative precedes Accusative. (b) As to *Adverbials*, adverbs of time precede all others, and even stand often before the Objects; the adverb **nicht** generally precedes other adverbs, or it may stand before the word it negatives; [**nach nicht**, *not yet*, is rarely separated]. (c) Principal sentences joined by—**und**, *and*; **oder**, *or*; **denn**, *for*, *because*; **aber**, *allein*, *but*; and **sondern**, *but* (after a negative, and *not* introducing a complete sentence), preserve the same sequence of words in each sentence as given above.

*N.B.*—The above Sequence of words is sometimes slightly interfered with by a desire to make any word specially emphatic by placing it where it ought not to stand according to Rule.

## THIRD TERM

THE pupil ought now to begin with translating very easy pieces of German, using a Dictionary. Every word ought, with the assistance of the teacher (especially in the Irregular Verbs) to be parsed *viva voce*. The Reference-Pages ought to be constantly referred to in this parsing. A few words should be parsed *in writing* for each translation lesson, and a "Vocabulary" should be begun by the pupil, into which he should write down the English of every *new* word he meets with in each lesson set in translation.

A few sentences from page 61, and a few words of the Dictionary on pages 58, 59, should still form an integral part of every Grammar lesson set, also the Poem on page 62.

*N.B.*—Reference-Page J, page 38, ought now to be constantly referred to in doing the Exercises in this Term, the words for which will be found in the Dictionary on pp. 58, 59.

## EXAMPLE OF PARSING.

*Translate*.—Du hast zwei Ohren und nur einen Mund; Vieles sollst du hören, und wenig darauf sagen. Du hast zwei Augen und nur einen Mund: denn Manches sollst du sehen und dabei schweigen. Zwei Hände hast du, und einen Mund: Zur Arbeit sind zwei da, zum Essen nur Einer.

## PARSING.

Of *Nouns* give number and case in the text; and Nominative Singular with definite article and English; also Genitive Singular and Nominative Plural.—Of *Verbs* give Person, number, tense, and mood in the text, and Infinitive with the English, 3d Person Singular Present Indicative; Imperfect Indicative; and Perfect Indicative.

*N.B.*—For some time the Infinitive of Irregular Verbs met with in Translation must be given by the teacher to the pupil, who will then be able to parse the verb by looking them out on Reference-Page N.

[The letters in ( ) refer to the Reference-Pages, which must be consulted in the Parsing.]

**du** (Q.), Personal Pronoun, Nom. Sing. 2d person, *thou (you)*.  
**hast** (I.), Auxiliary, 2d pers. Sing., Pres. Indic. of *haben*, *to have*.  
     er hat, er hatte, er hat gehabt, *hast*.  
**zwei** (R.), Numeral adjective, *two*.  
**Ohren** (D. a.), Noun, accusative Plural of:  
     das Ohr, des —es, die —en, *ears*.  
**und**, co-ordinate Conjunction, *and*.  
**nur**, adverb of limitation, *only*.  
**einen** (C. b.), Indef. Article, masc. Sing. acc., *a, one*.  
**Mund** (D. a.), Noun, accusative Singular of:  
     der Mund, des —es, die —e, *mouth*.  
**Vieles**, Indef. adjective, neut. acc. Sing., *much*.  
**sollst** (K.), Auxiliary, 2d pers. Sing., Pres. Ind., of:  
     sollen, er soll, er sollte, er hat gesollt, *shall*.  
**hören** (H.), Infinitive regular Verb:  
     er hört, hörte, hat gehört, (to) *hear*.  
**wenig**, Indefinite Pronoun, *little*.  
**darauf** (Q. 5.), contraction for auf es, Preposition with acc. neut. Pers. Pron., *about it*.  
**sagen** (H.), Infinitive, regular Verb.  
     er sagt, sagte, hat gesagt, (to) *say*.  
**Augen** (D. b.), Noun, accusative Plural of:  
     das Auge, des —s, die —n, *eyes*.

**denn**, co-ordinate Conjunction, *for (because)*.  
**Manches** (C. a.), Indef. adj. neut. Acc. Sing., *many a (thing)*.  
**sehen** (N.), Infinitive irregular Verb.  
     er sieht, sah, hat gesehen, (to) *see*.  
**dabei** (Q. 5.), contraction for bei dem, Preposition with dat. Sing. of relative, “by it,” *withal*.  
**schweigen** (N.), Infinitive irregular Verb, *be silent*.  
     er schweigt, schwieg, hat geschwiegen.  
**Hände** (D. b.), Noun, accusative Plural of:  
     die Hand, der —, die' —e, *hands*.  
**zur** (O. N.B.—2.), contraction of zu der, Preposition with dative singular feminine article, *for (the)*.  
**Arbeit** (D. b.), Noun, dative singular of:  
     die Arbeit, der —, die —en, *work*.  
**sind** (I.), Auxiliary, 3d plural Present Indicative of:  
     sein, er ist, war, ist gewesen, *are*.  
**da**, Adverb of place, *there, here*.  
**zum** (O. N.B.—2.), contraction of zu dem, Preposition with dative singular masculine Article, *for (the)*.  
**Essen**, Infinitive used as a noun, dative singular of:  
     das Essen, des —s, [die —], *eating*.  
**Einer** (C. b. 2.), Indefinite article used as a noun masculine Singular Nominative *one*.

*Literal Translation.*

You have two ears, and only one mouth; much you should hear, and say little about it. You have two eyes, and only one mouth; for many a thing you should see and be silent withal. Two hands you have, and one mouth; for work there are two, for eating only one.



## REFERENCE-PAGE K.

## The Auxiliaries of Mood.

Besides *haben, to have*, *sein, to be*, and *werden, to become*, the German language has, like the English, *auxiliary verbs*, to express the **mode** of an action. Unlike the English auxiliaries of mood, the German auxiliaries have a complete conjugation, and require the actual verb in the *Infinitive without zu (to...)*. There are seven such auxiliaries: **dürfen**, *to be allowed*; **können**, *to be able*; **mögen**, *to like*; **müssen**, *to be obliged*; **sollen**, *(to) ought*; **wollen**, *to be willing*; and **lassen**, *to let*.

Of these **lassen** is altogether irregular, and will be given among the irregular verbs; the other six are **regular** verbs throughout, except in the *Singular Present Indicative*; the first four however drop the modification of their root vowel for the Imperfect Indicative, but resume it for the Imperfect Subjunctive; **sollen** and **wollen** cannot modify at all; **mögen** changes *g* into *ch* in the Imperfects and Past Participle.

In all other respects they are conjugated like **sagen**. (See Reference-Page H.)

**dürfen, to be allowed, may**

## PRESENT INDICATIVE.

ich darf,	es dürfen	I am allowed to	buy it
du darfst,		thou mayest	
er darf,		he may	
wir dürfen,		we are allowed to	
ihr dürft,		ye may	

sie dürfen, they are allowed to

IMP. IND. ich durfte, I was allowed

IMP. SUB. ich dürfte, I {might  
should} be allowed

PAST PARTIC. gedurft, allowed

**können, to be able, can**

## PRESENT INDICATIVE.

ich kann,	es können	I am able to	hear it
du kannst,		thou canst	
er kann,		he is able to	
wir können,		we can	
ihr könnt,		ye are able to	

sie können, they can

IMP. IND. ich konnte, I could

IMP. SUB. ich könnte, I would be able to

PAST PARTIC. gekonnt, been able

**mögen, to like, may**

## PRESENT INDICATIVE.

ich mag,	es mögen	I like to	believe it
du magst,		thou mayest	
er mag,		he may	
wir mögen,		we like to	
ihr mögt,		ye like to	

sie mögen, they may

IMP. IND. ich mochte, I liked to

IMP. SUB. ich möchte, I should like to

PAST PARTIC. gemocht, liked

**müssen, to be obliged, must**

## PRESENT INDICATIVE.

ich muß,	es müssen	I am obliged to	not say it
du mußt,		thou must	
er muß,		he is obliged to	
wir müssen,		we must	
ihr müßt,		ye must	

sie müssen, they are obliged to

IMP. IND. ich mußte, I was obliged to

IMP. SUB. ich müßte, I should be obliged to

PAST PARTIC. gemußt, obliged

**sollen, ought, should**

## PRESENT INDICATIVE.

ich soll,	es sollen	I should -	fetch it
du sollst,		thou shouldst	
er soll,		he is to	
wir sollen,		we are to	
ihr sollt,		ye should	

sie sollen, they are to

IMP. IND. ich sollte, I ought to

IMP. SUB. ich sollte, I ought to

PAST PARTIC. gesollt, ought

**wollen, to wish, be willing**

## PRESENT INDICATIVE.

ich will,	es wollen	I wish to	sell it
du willst,		thou wilt	
er will,		he wishes to	
wir wollen,		we will	
ihr wollt,		ye will	

sie wollen, they wish to

IMP. IND. ich wollte, I wished to

IMP. SUB. ich wollte, I wanted to

PAST PARTIC. gewollt, wished

Though easy of conjugation, these auxiliaries present great difficulties as to their employment.

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE K.

*Example.*—Write out in full—(1) the Present Subjunctive, (2) the Imperfect Subjunctive, (3) the Future Simple Indicative, (4) the Conditional Simple, of **dürfen**; also (5) the Compound Future Indicative, (6) the Perfect Subjunctive, (7) the Compound Conditional, of **können**.

(1) PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.	(2) IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.	(3) FUT. SIMPLE INDICAT.	(4) CONDITIONAL SIMPLE.
ich dürf-e, <i>I am (be) allowed</i>	ich dürft-e, <i>I might, would</i>	ich werde <i>I shall</i>	ich würd-e <i>I should</i>
du ... =est, <i>thou mayest</i>	du ... =est, <i>thou wouldst</i>	du wirst <i>thou wilt</i>	du ... =est <i>thou wouldst</i>
er ... =e, <i>he may</i>	er ... =e, <i>he would</i>	er wird <i>he will</i>	er ... =e <i>he would</i>
wir ... =en, <i>we are allowed</i>	wir ... =en, <i>we should</i>	wir werden <i>we shall</i>	wir ... =en <i>we should</i>
ihr ... =et, <i>ye may</i>	ihr ... =et, <i>ye might</i>	ihr werdet <i>ye will</i>	ihr ... =et <i>ye would</i>
sie ... =en, <i>they may</i>	sie ... =en, <i>they might</i>	sie werden <i>they will</i>	sie ... =en <i>they would</i>

(5) COMPOUND FUTURE INDICAT.	(6) PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.	(7) COMPOUND CONDITIONAL.
ich werde <i>I shall</i>	ich habe <i>I have</i>	ich würde <i>I should</i>
du wirst <i>thou wilt</i>	du habest <i>thou have</i>	du würdest <i>thou wouldst</i>
er wird <i>he will</i>	er habe <i>he have</i>	er würde <i>he would</i>
wir werden <i>we shall</i>	wir haben <i>we have</i>	wir würden <i>we should</i>
ihr werdet <i>ye will</i>	ihr habet <i>ye have</i>	ihr würdet <i>ye would</i>
sie werden <i>they will</i>	sie haben <i>they have</i>	sie würden <i>they would</i>

*Exercise.*—Write out in full—(1) Future Simple Indicative, (2) Future Simple Subjunctive, (3) Present Subjunctive, of **mögen**; also (4) Imperfect Subjunctive, (5) Pluperfect Indicative, (6) Perfect Indicative, of **müssen**.

*Examples.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Darf der Knabe diese Bücher kaufen?       | 1. <i>Is the boy allowed to buy these books?</i> |
| 2. Er hat sie kaufen dürfen * (NOT gedurft). | 2. <i>He has been allowed to buy them.</i>       |
| 3. Wir mögen diese Bilder nicht sehen.       | 3. <i>We do not like to see these pictures.</i>  |
| 4. Er sollte morgen nach London gehen.       | 4. <i>He ought to go to London to-morrow.</i>    |
| 5. Sie haben es so gewollt, mein Herr.       | 5. <i>You have wished it thus, Sir.</i>          |
| 6. Möchten Sie nach Paris reisen?            | 6. <i>Should you like to travel to Paris?</i>    |

\* *Notice carefully:* When these auxiliaries are used in the Compound Tenses, along with the Infinitive of a Verb, the Past Participle of the auxiliary is replaced by its Infinitive.

*Exercise.*

(See Rules on Reference-Page K; also above.)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Was the man allowed to see those dogs?   | 2. Yes, he has been allowed to see them.   |
| 3. We wished to sell our old horse.         | 4. They have not wished to go to London.   |
| 5. My father does not like his new wine.    | 6. You ought not to be idle, my boys.      |
| 7. They say you are obliged to do this.     | 8. Your daughter did not like to sing.     |
| 9. Were they allowed to choose their books? | 10. Yes, they have been allowed to choose. |

## ADDITIONAL NOTES ON REFERENCE-PAGE K.

## Differences in the idiomatic use of the auxiliaries in English and German.

(Learn and digest these sample sentences carefully.)

1. Sie **haben** Recht, mein Herr; ich **hatte** Unrecht.
2. Es **ist** dunkel geworden, und es **wird** kalt.
3. **Darf** ich es sagen? Du **darfst** es nicht sagen.
4. Ich **hätte** mein Pferd verkaufen **können**.
5. **Können** Sie Deutsch? Ich **kann** es noch nicht.
6. Sie **mag** reich sein. **Möchte** sie glücklich sein!
7. Ich **hätte** den Knaben gern sehen **mögen**.
8. Wir **haben** das Haus verkaufen **müssen**.
9. Mein Sohn  **soll** jetzt Französisch **anfangen**.
10. Du  **sollst** deinen Nächsten lieben!
11. Er  **soll** ausgewandert sein.
12. Er  **will** nach Australien gehen.
13. Wir  **werden** es morgen kaufen.

1. *You are right, Sir; I was wrong.*
2. *It has got dark, and it is getting cold.*
3. *May I say it? You must not say it.*
4. *I could have sold my horse.*
5. *Do you know German? I do not know it yet.*
6. *She may be rich. O that she were happy!*
7. *I should have liked to see the boy.*
8. *We were obliged to sell the house.*
9. *My son is now to begin French.*
10. *Thou shalt love thy neighbour!*
11. *He is said to have emigrated.*
12. *He intends to go to Australia.*
13. *We shall buy it to-morrow.*

Conjugate like *dürfen*:

*bedürfen, to need; er bedarf,*  
*er bedurfte, er hat bedurft,*  
 followed by a noun in the Genitive, as:  
*ich bedarf des Buches, I need the book.*

Conjugate like *mögen*:

*vermögen to be able; er vermag,*  
*er vermochte, er hat vermocht,*  
 followed by an Infinitive with *zu*, as:  
*ich vermag es zu thun, I am able to do it.*  
 (This verb admits of *zu* before the Infinitive.)

*Exercise on the above.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. My father will be right, I shall obey.</li> <li>3. It is getting late; it has got night.</li> <li>5. We needed a friend, and you are one.</li> <li>7. My little son knows a little German.</li> <li>9. He is to learn French soon.</li> <li>11. We were obliged to go to Paris.</li> <li>13. Was she able to do this work?</li> <li>15. Have you needed your money, Sir?</li> <li>17. I have not wished to buy it.</li> <li>19. He is said to be in Berlin.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Are you not wrong, my dear friend?</li> <li>4. You may say it to your kind teacher.</li> <li>6. O that these children were diligent!</li> <li>8. Does he also know French? No, not yet.</li> <li>10. The men could have chosen their friends.</li> <li>12. Were they not also obliged to go?</li> <li>14. No, she has not been able to do it (<i>fem.</i>).</li> <li>16. Did you wish to buy my horse?</li> <li>18. It may be cheap, but I need no horse.</li> <li>20. Why was he not allowed to go?</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

*Notice.*—The words for the Exercises in this term will be found in the Dictionary on pages 58, 59; or in that on page 12.

REFERENCE-PAGE **L**.

*Hints* for recognising as regular or irregular any verb [not an auxiliary or one of the half-regular Verbs (Ref.-Page **M**, *N.B.* *b* and *c*)] met with in Translation.

Auxiliaries, and the nine half-regular verbs [see Ref.-Page **M**, *N.B.* *b* and *c*] are not comprised in the following hints, which ought to be very carefully learnt, as they are very useful.

Any verb is **regular**—

- I. If the 1st or 3d person Singular IMPERFECT ends in *te*. (No exceptions.)  
With the exception of *tun*, *to do*, and the Verbs (about 20 altogether) which have a root ending in *b* or *t*; the terminations *teft*, *ten*, *tet* of the Imperfect also betray a regular verb.
- II. If the PAST PARTICIPLE ends in *te*. (No exceptions, as all irreg. Past Part. end in *en*.)
- III. If the INFINITIVE has: (Learn the exceptions by heart.)
  - (a) *Root-Vowel*: *o*; except only *fommen*, *to come*; *ftoßen*, *o push*.  
*u*; except only *rufen*, *to call*; *tun*, *to do*.  
*eu*, *äu*; without any exceptions.  
*ä*; except only *gähren*, *to ferment*; *gebären*, *to bring forth*.  
*ö*; except only *erlöfchen*, *to become extinguished*; *fchwören*, *to swear*.  
*ü*; except only *betrügen*, *to cheat*; *lügen*, *to lie, tell a lie*.  
*au*; except only *hauen*, *to hit*; *laufen*, *to run*; *fchnauben*, *to snort*;  
*faufen*, *to drink (of animals)*; and *faugen*, *to suck*.
  - (b) *Termination*: *...ften*; except only *baden*, *to bake*; *erfchrecken*, *to be frightened*.  
*...chten*; except only *fechten*, *to fight*; *flechten*, *to weave*.  
*...zen*; except only *figen*, *to fit, be seated*.  
*...guen*; *...efn*; *...ern*; *...igen*; *...iren*; these without exceptions.

Notes on the *auxiliary* to be used in the *Compound Tenses*:

The English often differs from the German in the use of *to have* or *to be*, as we have seen already, thus: *I have been*=*ich bin gewesen* (*I am been*).

*Neuter* verbs of motion or of condition mostly take *fein* in the compound tenses.

(a) Of *motion*: [Root verbs only are given here; the derivatives also take *fein*.]

begegnen (reg.), <i>to meet</i>	fliehen, <i>to shun, flee</i>	reifen (reg.), <i>to travel</i>	ftürzen (reg.), <i>to fall headlong</i>
fahren, <i>to take a drive</i>	gehen, <i>to go</i>	reiten, <i>to take a ride</i>	wandern (reg.), <i>to wander</i>
fallen, <i>to fall</i>	fommen, <i>to come</i>	fchwimmen, <i>to swim</i>	and a few more.
fliegen, <i>to fly (with wings)</i>	laufen, <i>to run</i>	fteigen, <i>to mount</i>	

(b) Of *condition* or *state*:

aufwachen (reg.), <i>to wake up</i>	einfchlafen, <i>to fall asleep</i>	genesen, <i>to recover</i>	ftehen, <i>to stand</i>
bleiben, <i>to remain</i>	erfchrecken, <i>to be frightened</i>	fein, <i>to be</i>	werden, <i>to become</i>

*N.B.*—Many of these may, with a slight change, be turned into transitive verbs, when they take *haben* as their auxiliary, as: *einfchlāfern*, *to send to sleep*, etc.



## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE L.

*Example.*—Are the following regular or irregular verbs, and why?

ich glaubte, <i>I believed,</i>	regular,	∴ 1st pers. Singular Imperfect ending in -te.
er erschuf, <i>he created,</i>	irregular,	∴ 3d pers. Sing. Imperfect <i>not</i> ending in -te.
Sie riefen, <i>you called,</i>	irregular,	∴ Plural Imperfect <i>not</i> ending in -ten or -tet.
gelebt, <i>lived,</i>	regular,	∴ Past Participle ending in -t.
er bat, <i>he begged,</i>	irregular,	∴ 3d pers. Sing. Imperfect ending in -te.
gegangen, <i>gone,</i>	irregular,	∴ Past Participle <i>not</i> ending in -t.
er betete, <i>he prayed,</i>	regular,	∴ 3d pers. Sing. Imperfect ending in -te.
kommen, <i>to come,</i>	irregular,	∴ Exception to root vowel o being regular.
toben, <i>to rage,</i>	regular,	∴ Root vowel of Infinitive o.
erlauben, <i>to permit,</i>	regular,	∴ Root vowel of Infinitive au (not an exception).
versuchen, <i>to attempt,</i>	regular,	∴ Root vowel of Infinitive u.
tanzen, <i>to dance,</i>	regular,	∴ Termination of Infinitive -zen.
begegnen, <i>to meet,</i>	regular,	∴ Termination of Infinitive -gnen.
fügen, <i>to join,</i>	regular,	∴ Root vowel of Infinitive ü.
studiren, <i>to study,</i>	regular,	∴ Termination of Infinitive -iren.
schwören, <i>to swear,</i>	irregular,	∴ Exception to root vowel ö being regular.

*Exercise.*—Are the following regular or irregular verbs, and why?

gewähren, <i>to grant</i>	beugen, <i>to bend</i>	geraubt, <i>robbed</i>	laufen, <i>to run</i>
sitzen, <i>to sit</i>	ich kam, <i>I came</i>	rufen, <i>to call</i>	dichten, <i>to compose</i>
er hob, <i>he lifted</i>	er fragte, <i>he asked</i>	fechten, <i>to fight</i>	verlassen, <i>forsaken</i>
er dankte, <i>he thanked</i>	betrügen, <i>to cheat</i>	er schrieb, <i>he wrote</i>	rauschen, <i>to rustle</i>
gelingen, <i>to succeed</i>	tun, <i>to do</i>	führen, <i>to lead</i>	ich gieng, <i>I went.</i>

*to have* in English, in the **Compound Tenses**, **sein** in German.

*I have met my friend, he has come.*

*He had fallen, he was frightened.*

*The child has gone to sleep, it has been tired.*

*We have wandered through the whole of Europe.*

*The enemies have fled ; we have remained.*

Ich bin meinem Freund begegnet ; er ist gekommen.

Er war gefallen, er war erschrocken.

Das Kind ist eingeschlafen, es ist müde gewesen.

Wir sind durch ganz Europa gewandert.

Die Feinde sind geflohen ; wir sind geblieben.

Given : fliehen, *to flee* ; floh, *ist geflohen*. bleiben, *to remain* ; blieb, *ist geblieben*.

*Exercise.*

1. **Have** you remained there? No, Sir.
3. Who **has** fled? The enemy **has** fled.
5. No, I **have** not yet met my brother. (Dat.)
7. We **have** gone to England. (Page 22, foot.)
9. **Have** they travelled far, your friends?

2. Where **have** you been, my little friend?
4. **Have** you met your brother? (Dative.)
6. I should **have** remained if . . .
8. Will you believe, we **have** (subj.) remained?
10. He **has** fallen [headlong] into the river.  
(in with acc.)

## REFERENCE-PAGE M.

## The Irregular Verb.

The Irregular Verbs are irregular only in the Imperfect Indicative, the Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Past Participle. But most of those, which have *a*, *au*, *o* or *e*, for their root vowel modify *a* into *ä*, *au* into *äu*, *o* into *ö*, and *e* into *i* or *ie*, for the 2d and 3d [*never* the 1st] persons Singular of the *Present Indicative*; and the 2d person Singular *Imperative*, if contracted.

*Examples of the Irregularities of Irregular Verbs.*

sehen, to see.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
ich seh-e es, I see it	ich sah es, I saw it	ich sähe es, I saw it	sieh! see (thou)!
du sieh-st es, thou seest it	du sah-st es, thou sawest it	du säh-est es, thou sawest it	(rest regular)
er sieh-t es, he sees it	er sah es, he saw it	er säh-e es, he saw it	
wir seh-en es, we see it	wir sah-en es, we saw it	wir säh-en es, we saw it	PAST PARTICIPLE.
ihr seh-t es, ye see it	ihr sah-t es, ye saw it	ihr säh-et es, ye saw it	gesehen, seen
sie seh-en es, they see it	sie sah-en es, they saw it	sie säh-en es, they saw it	

All other tenses are always regular, *i.e.* as given on Reference-Page H.

It will therefore be sufficient to give of irregular verbs only the

INFINITIVE PRESENT.	3d SING. PRES. INDIC.	3d SING. IMPF. INDIC.	3d SING. PERF. INDIC.	} to show what auxiliary to use.
sehen, to see	er sieht	er sah	er hat gesehen	

*Remembering carefully the following Rules.*

1. Where the 3d person Singular of Present Indicative shows a modification of root vowel, the same modification occurs in the 2d person Singular of the same tense, and the 2d person Singular Imperative if contracted.
2. The Imperfect Subjunctive is throughout formed from the Imperfect Indicative in the same way as shown above, modifying *a* into *ä*, *o* into *ö*, and *u* into *ü*.
3. All other tenses are regular, as shown in Reference-Page H.

*N.B.*—(a) The following verbs do not modify the root vowel in 2d and 3d person Singular *Present Indicative* (of course verbs with *i*, *ie*, *ei*, *eu* cannot do so). *Regular Verbs* never do so, nor do the half-regular Verbs below, nor verbs with *u* for root vowel, of which two only are irregular:

bewegen, to move; genesen, to recover; heben, to lift; schaffen, to create; stehen, to stand; gehen, to go;  
hauen, to hit; pflegen, to nurse; stecken, to stick; weben, to weave.

(b) The following Verbs have a root-vowel change, but are otherwise quite regular:

brennen, to burn; brannte, gebrannt	rennen, to run; rannte, gerannt
kennen, to know; kannte, gekannt	senden, to send; sandte, gesandt
nennen, to call; nannte, genannt	wenden, to turn; wandte, gewandt

(c) To these may be added the following:

denken, to think; dachte, gedacht	{ wissen, to know; wußte, gewußt, with irreg. Pres. Ind., Sing. only, ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß
bringen, to bring; brachte, gebracht	



## NOTES TO REFERENCE-PAGE M.

## The Irregular Verb.

The learner will find that the best way to acquire a knowledge of the irregular verbs is to constantly repeat the "Headline" of each, and enlist the ear in the service of memory. The alphabetical list should be gone over again and again in small portions.

We may distinguish four conjugations, according to the root vowel in the Imperfect Indicative.

1st Conjugation : Imperfect : a (about 60 verbs, i.e. root-verbs) :

(a) e(i) a e as :	lesen, to read ; las, gelesen	(about 15 verbs)
(b) e(i) a o as :	helfen, to help ; half, geholfen	(about 28 verbs)
(c) i a u as :	finden, to find ; fand, gefunden	(about 16 verbs)

2d Conjugation : Imperfect : ie or i (about 50 verbs) :

(a) ei i i as :	leiden, to suffer ; litt, gelitten	(about 20 verbs)
(b) ei ie ie as :	schreiben, to write ; schrieb, geschrieben	(about 15 verbs)
(c) (a) ie a as :	schlafen, to sleep ; schlief, geschlafen	(about 15 verbs)

3d Conjugation : Imperfect : o (about 40 verbs) :

(a) ie o o as :	verlieren, to lose ; verlor, verloren	(about 20 verbs)
(b) (e) o o as :	heben, to lift ; hob, gehoben	(about 20 verbs)

4th Conjugation : Imperfect : u (9 verbs) :

all : a u a as : fahren, to drive ; fuhr, gefahren

The following have irregularities in addition to root-vowel changes :

(a) Lengthening of vowel and consequently omission of double consonant :

bitten, to beg ; bat, gebeten	schaffen, to work ; schuf, (geschaffen)
kommen, to come ; kam, (gekommen)	treffen, to hit, meet ; traf, (getroffen)
sitzen, to sit ; saß, (gesehen)	

(b) The change ei into i is generally accompanied by a doubling of the consonant :

greifen, to grasp ; griff, gegriffen	gleiten, to glide ; glitt, geglitten
kneifen, to pinch ; kniff, gekniffen	pfeifen, to whistle ; pfiff, gepfiffen
reiten, to ride ; ritt, geritten	schleifen, to grind ; schliß, geschliffen
schreiten, to stride ; schritt, geschritten	streiten, to quarrel ; stritt, gestritten
Thus also d into tt :	leiden, to suffer ; litt, gelitten
schneiden, to cut ; schnitt, geschnitten	sieden, to boil ; koch, gekocht

(c) Still further irregularities have—

INFINITIVE.	ENGLISH.	PRESENT INDICATIVE SINGULAR.	3D SINGULAR IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	3D SINGULAR PERFECT INDICATIVE.
gehen	to go	(reg.) er geht	er gieng	er ist gegangen
hauen	to strike	(reg.) er haut	er hieb	er hat gehauen
nehmen	to take	ich nehme, du nimmst, er nimmt	er nahm	er hat genommen
stehen	to stand	(reg.) er steht	er stand	er ist gestanden
tun	to do, make	ich tue, du tust, er tut	er tat	er hat getan
ziehen	to pull	(reg.) er zieht	er zog	er hat gezogen

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE M.

**Example.**—Given : lesen, to read ; er liest, las, hat gelesen

and : gehen, to go ; er geht, gieng, ist gegangen

write out in full—(1) Present Indicative ; (2) Imperfect Subjunctive ; (3) Imperative ; (4) Perfect Indicative ; (5) Perfect Subjunctive ; (6) Compound Future Indicative ; (7) Future Simple Subjunctive of each.

(1) PRES. INDICATIVE.	(2) IMPF. SUBJUNCTIVE.	(3) IMPERATIVE.	(7) FUTURE SIMPLE SUBJ.
ich lese, I read	ich läs-e, I { <i>might</i> } read { <i>should</i> }	none	ich werd-e } I shall read
du liestest, thou readest	du ...-est, thou wouldst ...	lies (or lese), read (thou)	du ... -est } thou wilt ...
er liest, he reads	er ...-e, he would ...	laßt ihn } lesen, let him read	er ... -e } lesen he will ...
wir lesen, we read	wir ...-en, we should ...	er soll } lesen wir, let us read	wir ... -en } we shall ...
ihr leset, ye read	ihr ...-et, ye would ...	leset (lesen Sie) read (you)	ihr ... -et } ye will ...
sie lesen, they read	sie ...-en, they would ...	laßt sie } lesen, let them read	sie ... -en } they will ...
		sie sollen }	

Same of : gehen, to go.

(1) PRES. INDICATIVE.	(2) IMPF. SUBJUNCTIVE.	(3) IMPERATIVE.	(7) FUTURE SIMPLE SUBJ.
ich geh-e, I go	ich gieng-e, I { <i>might</i> } go { <i>should</i> }	none	ich werd-e } I shall go
du ... -st, thou goest	du ... -est, thou wouldst ...	geh' (or gehe) go (thou)	du ... -est } thou wilt go
er ... -t he goes	er ... -e, he would go	laßt ihn } gehen, let him go	er ... -e } gehen he will go
wir ... -en, we go	wir ... -en, we should go	er soll } gehen wir, let us go	wir ... -en } we shall go
ihr ... -t, ye go	ihr .. -et, ye would go	gehet (gehen Sie), go (you)	ihr ... -et } ye will go
sie ... -en, they go	sie ... -en, they would go	laßt sie } gehen, let them go	sie ... -en } they will go
		sie sollen }	

(4) PERFECT INDICATIVE.	(5) PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.	(6) COMPD. FUTURE INDICATIVE.
ich habe } I have read	ich hab-e } I have read	ich werde } I shall
du hast } thou hast read	du ... -est } thou have ...	du wirst } thou wilt
er hat } he has read	er ... -e } he have ...	er wird } he will
wir haben } we have read	wir ... -en } we have ...	wir werden } we shall
ihr habt } ye have read	ihr ... -et } ye have ...	ihr werdet } ye will
sie haben } they have read	sie ... -en } they have ...	sie werden } they will

Same of : gehen, to go.

(4) PERFECT INDICATIVE.	(5) PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.	(6) COMPD. FUTURE INDICATIVE.
ich bin } I have gone	ich sei } I have gone	ich werde } I shall
du bist } thou hast ...	du seiest } thou have ...	du wirst } thou wilt
er ist } he has ...	er sei } he have ...	er wird } he will
wir sind } we have ...	wir seien } we have ...	wir werden } we shall
ihr seid } ye have ...	ihr seiet } ye have ...	ihr werdet } ye will
sie sind } they have ...	sie seien } they have ...	sie werden } they will

**Exercise.**—Given : stehen, to stand ; er steht, stand, ist gestanden

and : verlieren, to lose ; er verliert, verlor, hat verloren

write out in full—(1) Present Indicative ; (2) Perfect Subjunctive ; (3) Conditional Compound ; (4) Imperfect Subjunctive of each.

## REFERENCE-PAGE N.

## Alphabetical List of the Irregular Verbs.

*Notes.* 1. Root-verbs only are given here, not their derivatives; thus the pupil will find: finden, to find; but not empfinden, to feel.

2. Auxiliaries are not given (except lassen, to let), nor are the half-regular verbs, as kennen, to know, etc. [These nine will be found on Ref.-Page M. N.B. b.c.]

3. Of each verb the Infinitive, and the 3d pers. Sing. of—Pres. Indic.; Imperfect Indic.; and Perfect Indic.; are given: these parts suffice to conjugate the verb fully, if we remember the following Rules, which have been already given or hinted at:—

(a.) **The Present Indicative:** 1st pers. Sing. adds *ε* to the root of the Infinitive; 2d pers. Sing. substitutes *st* for the *t* of the given 3d person; *Plurals* add *en*, *(e)t*, *en* to Infinitive Root.

(b.) **The Imperfect Indicative:** 1st pers. Sing. always like the given 3d person; 2d pers. Sing. adds *st* to the given 3d person; *Plurals* add *en*, *et*, *en* to the given 3d person.

(c.) **The Imperfect Subjunctive:** adds (without any exception) *ε*, *est*, *ε*; *en*, *et*, *en*, to the given 3d person of the Imperfect Indicative, modifying *a*, *e*, *u* into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*.

(d.) **The Imperative** is generally regular, as: *gebe*, give thou. But sometimes a contracted form is used for the 2d pers. Singular only, as: \**gieb*, give thou; whenever this is the case, the vowel is modified as in the given 3d pers. Sing. of the Present Indicative; in fact it is then the 3d pers. Sing. of the Pres. Indic. with the *t* cut off. see \* in the List.

[All the other tenses are formed regularly, as given in Reference-Page H.]

**The Perfect Indicative** shows both the *Past Participle* and the **auxiliary** used for all the Compound tenses—(as *adjectives*, the Past Participles are used always with *sein*, to be)—and in the *passive voice* with *werden*, to become.

*This List ought to be learnt over and over again in small portions.*

INFINITIVE.	3d pers. Sing. Pres. Indic.	3d pers. Sing. Impf. Ind.	3d person Sing. Perfect Indicative.	INFINITIVE.	3d pers. Sing. Pres. Indic.	3d pers. Sing. Impf. Ind.	3d person Sing. Perfect Indicative.
backen, to bake	er bäckt	back	hat gebacken	binden, to bind	er bindet	band	hat gebunden
befehlen, to command	*er befiehlt	befahl	hat befohlen	bitten, to beg	er bittet	bat	hat gebeten
bestimmen (sich) to ap- ply (oneself)	er bestimmt (sich)	b e s t i m m t (sich)	hat (sich) bestimmt	blasen, to blow	er bläst	blies	hat geblasen
beginnen, to begin	er beginnt	begann	hat begonnen	bleiben, to remain	er bleibt	blieb	ist geblieben
beißen, to bite	er beißt	biß	hat gebissen	braten, to roast	er brät	briet	hat gebraten
bergen, to hide	*er birgt	barg	hat geborgen	brechen, to break	*er bricht	brach	hat gebrochen
bersten, to burst	eß birst	barst	ist geborsten	dingen, to hire	er dingt	(dingte)	hat gedungen
bewegen, to induce	er bewegt	bewog	hat bewogen	dreschen, to thrash	*er drischt	drasch	hat gedroschen
biegen, to bend	er biegt	bog	hat gebogen	dringen, to urge	er dringt	drang	ist gedrungen
bieten, to offer	er bietet	bot	hat geboten	empfehlen, to recom- mend	*er empfiehlt	empfohl	hat empfohlen

## REFERENCE-PAGE N.—List of Irregular Verbs—Continued.

INFINITIVE.	3d pers. Sing. Pres. Indic.	3d pers. Sing. Impf. Ind.	3d person Sing. Perfect Indicative.	INFINITIVE.	3d pers. Sing. Pres. Indic.	3d pers. Sing. Impf. Ind.	3d person Sing. Perfect Indicative.
erblicken, to turn <i>pale</i>	er erblickt	erblick	ist erblickt	hauen, to hit, hew	er haut	hieb	hat gehauen
erlösch, to become <i>extinguished</i>	es erlösch	erlösch	ist erloschen	heben, to lift	er hebt	hob	hat gehoben
erschallen, to resound	es erschallt	erscholl	ist erschollen	heißen, to be called	er heißt	hieß	hat geheißt
erschrecken, to become <i>frightened</i>	*er erschrickt	erschrak	ist erschrocken	helfen, to help	*er hilft	half	hat geholfen
essen, to eat	*er isst	aß	hat gegessen	klemmen, to pinch	er klemmt	(klomm)	(hat geklemmt)
fahren, to take a drive	er fährt	fuhr	ist gefahren	klimmen, to climb	er klimmt	klomm	ist geklimmen
fallen, to fall	er fällt	fiel	ist gefallen	klingen, to sound	es klingt	klang	hat geklungen
fangen, to catch	er fängt	fieng	hat gefangen	kniesen, to pinch	er kneist	kniff	hat gekniffen
fechten, to fight	er fight	focht	hat gefochten	kreischen, to scream	er kreischt	(krisch)	hat gekreischen (also regular)
finden, to find	er findet	fand	hat gefunden	kommen, to come	er kommt	kam	ist gekommen
flechten, to weave, <i>plait</i>	er flecht	flocht	hat geflochten	kriechen, to creep	er kriecht	kroch	ist gekrochen
fliegen, to fly (wings)	er fliegt	flog	ist geflogen	führen, to elect	er führt	for	hat geforen
fliehen, to shun, flee	er flieht	floh	ist geflohen	laden, to load	er ladet	lud	hat geladen
fließen, to flow	(er) fließt	floß	ist geflossen	lassen, to let, allow	er läßt	ließ	hat (ge)lassen
fressen, to eat (of <i>animals</i> )	* (er) frisst	fraß	hat gefressen	laufen, to run	er läuft	lief	ist gelaufen
frieren, to freeze	es friert	fror	hat gefroren	leiden, to suffer	er leidet	litt	hat gelitten
gähren, to ferment	es gährt	gohr	hat gegohren	leihen, to lend	er leiht	lieh	hat geliehen
gebären, to bring <i>forth</i>	sie gebiert	gebar	hat geboren	lesen, to read	*er liest	las	hat gelesen
geben, to give	*er giebt	gab	hat gegeben	liegen, to lie, be laid	er liegt	lag	ist gelegen
gebieten, to command	er gebietet	gebot	hat geboten	lügen, to tell a lie	er lügt	log	hat gelogen
gelingen, to thrive	er gedeiht	gedieh	ist gediehen	meiden, to shun	er meidet	mied	hat gemieden
gefallen, to please	er gefällt	giel	hat gefallen	melken, to milk	er milkt	molk	hat gemolken
gehen, to go	er geht	gieng	ist gegangen	messen, to measure	*er mißt	maß	hat gemessen
gelingen, to succeed	es gelingt	gelang	ist gelungen	nehmen, to take	*er nimmt	nahm	hat genommen
gelten, to be worth	es gilt	galt	hat gegolten	pfeifen, to whistle	er pfeift	pfiff	hat gepfiffen
genesen, to recover ( <i>health</i> )	er geneßt	genas	ist genesen	pflügen, to nurse	er pflegt	pflog	hat gepflogen
genießen, to enjoy	er genießt	genoss	hat genossen	preisen, to praise	er preist	pries	hat gepriesen
geschehen, to happen	es geschieht	geschah	ist geschehen	quellen, to gush forth	es quillt	quoll	ist gequollen
gewinnen, to gain, <i>win</i>	er gewinnt	gewann	hat gewonnen	raten, to advise	er rät	riet	hat geraten
gießen, to pour	er gießt	goß	hat gegossen	reiben, to rub	er reibt	rieb	hat gerieben
gleichen, to resemble	er gleicht	glich	hat geglichen	reißen, to tear	er reißt	riß	hat gerissen
gleiten, to glide	er gleitet	glitt	ist geglitten	reiten, to take a ride	er reitet	ritt	ist geritten
glimmen, to glow	es glimmt	glomm	hat geglimmen	riechen, to smell	es riecht	roch	hat gerochen
graben, to dig	er gräbt	grub	hat gegraben	ringen, to struggle ( <i>wring</i> )	er ringt	rang	hat gerungen
greifen, to seize	er greift	griff	hat gegriffen	rinnen, to run	es rinnt	rann	ist gerronnen
halten, to hold	er hält	hielt	hat gehalten	rufen, to call	er ruft	rief	hat gerufen
hängen, to be hanging	er hängt	hieng	ist gehangen	saufen, to drink (of <i>animals</i> )	er säuft	(soff)	hat gesoffen
				saugen, to suck	er saugt	fog	hat gesogen
				schaffen, to work ( <i>create</i> )	er schafft	schuf	hat geschaffen
				scheiden, to separate ( <i>depart</i> )	er scheidet	schied	(ist) geschieden



## REFERENCE-PAGE N.—List of Irregular Verbs—Concluded.

INFINITIVE.	3d pers. Sing. Pres. Indic.	3d pers. Sing. Imperf. Indic.	3d person Sing. Perfect Indicative.	INFINITIVE.	3d pers. Sing. Pres. Indic.	3d pers. Sing. Imperf. Ind.	3d person Sing. Perfect Indicative.
scheinen, to seem	er scheint	schien	hat geschienen	springen, to spring	er springt	sprang	ist gesprungen
schelten, to scold	*er schilt	schalt	hat gescholten	stechen, to sting, prick	*er sticht	stach	hat gestochen
scheren, to shear	er schert	schor	hat geschoren	stecken, to stick	er steckt	stach	(hat gesteckt)
(concern)				stehen, to stand	er steht	stand	ist gestanden
schieben, to push	er schiebt	schob	hat geschoben	stehlen, to steal	*er stiehlt	stahl	hat gestohlen
schießen, to shoot	er schießt	schoss	hat geschossen	steigen, to mount	er steigt	stieg	ist gestiegen
schlafen, to sleep	er schläft	schlief	hat geschlafen	sterben, to die	*er stirbt	starb	ist gestorben
schlagen, to hit	er schlägt	schlug	hat geschlagen	stieben, to fly off	er stiebt	stob	(hat) gestoben
schleichen, to sneak	er schleicht	schlich	ist geschlichen	stinken, to stink	es stinkt	stank	hat gestunken
schleifen, to grind	er schleift	schliff	hat geschliffen	stoßen, to push	er stößt	stieß	hat gestoßen
(knives)				streichen, to stroke	er streicht	strich	hat gestrichen
schließen, to con- clude, shut	er schließt	schloß	hat geschlossen	streiten, to quarrel	er streitet	stritt	hat gestritten
schlingen, to surround	er schlingt	schlang	hat geschlungen	tun, to do, make	er tut	tat	hat getan
schmeißen, to throw	er schmeißt	schmiß	hat geschmissen	tragen, to carry	er trägt	trug	hat getragen
schmelzen, to melt	*er schmilzt	schmolz	hat geschmolzen	treffen, to hit	*er trifft	traf	hat getroffen
schneuben, to snort	er schnaubt	schnob	hat geschnoben	treiben, to drive	er treibt	trieb	hat getrieben
schneiden, to cut	er schneidet	schnitt	hat geschnitten	treten, to step	*er tritt	trat	ist getreten
schreiben, to write	er schreibt	schrieb	hat geschrieben	triefen, to drip	er trieft	troff	hat getroffen
schreien, to cry, shout	er schreit	schrie	hat geschrien	trinken, to drink	er trinkt	trank	hat getrunken
schreiten, to stride, proceed	er schreitet	schritt	ist geschritten	trügen, to cheat	er trügt	trog	hat getrogen
schweigen, to be silent	er schweigt	schwieg	hat geschwiegen	verderben, to spoil	*er verderbt	verdarb	hat verdorben
schwellen, to swell	es schwillt	schwoll	ist geschwollen	verdrießen, to annoy	es verdrießt	verdroß	hat verdrossen
schwimmen, to swim	er schwimmt	schwamm	ist geschwommen	vergessen, to forget	*er vergißt	vergaß	hat vergessen
schwinden, to vanish	er schwindet	schwand	ist geschwunden	verlieren, to lose	er verliert	verlor	hat verloren
schwingen, brandish, swing	er schwingt	schwang	hat geschwungen	wachsen, to grow	er wächst	wuchs	ist gewachsen
schwören, to swear	er schwört	schwor	hat geschworen	wägen, to weigh	er wägt	wog	hat gewogen
sehen, to see	*er sieht	sah	hat gesehen	waschen, to wash	er wäscht	wusch	hat gewaschen
sieden, to boil	er siedet	sott	hat gefotten	weben, to weave	er webt	wob	hat gewoben
singen, to sing	er singt	sang	hat gesungen	weichen, to yield	er weicht	wich	ist gewichen
sinken, to sink	er sinkt	sank	ist gesunken	weisen, to show, point out	er weist	wies	hat gewiesen
sinnen, to meditate	er sinnt	fann	hat gesonnen	werben, to recruit	*er wirbt	warb	hat geworben
sitzen, to sit	er sitzt	saß	ist gesessen	werfen, to throw	*er wirft	warf	hat geworfen
speien, to spit	er speit	spie	hat gespieen	wiegen, to weigh	er wiegt	wog	hat gewogen
spinnen, to spin	er spinnt	spann	hat gesponnen	winden, to wind	er windet	wand	hat gewunden
sprechen, to speak	*er spricht	sprach	hat gesprochen	ziehen, to accuse	er zieht	zieh	hat gezogen
sprießen, to shoot up	er sprießt	sproß	ist gesprossen	ziehen, to pull	er zieht	zog	hat gezogen
				zwingen, to force	er zwingt	zwang	hat gezwungen

## REFERENCE-PAGE O.

## On the Prepositions.

All prepositions govern either Accusative, or Genitive, or Dative in the nouns with which they are connected. [The most commonly used are here given first in each list.]

I. Prepositions requiring their noun (with its enlargements) in the **Accusative Case** :

durch..., through...	<i>Notice</i> : The following, used with Verbs of motion only, stand <i>after</i> their noun, which must be in the <i>accusative</i> : ...hinauf, herauf, up... ; hinunter, herunter, down ...hinab, herab, down... ; hindurch, through (rare) ...entlang, alongside, along... <i>N.B.</i> <i>hin...</i> means <i>away from</i> , <i>her...</i> means <i>towards</i> , the speaker.
für..., for...	
gegen..., against...towards	
ohne..., without...	
um..., about, around...	
wider..., against	

II. Prepositions requiring their noun (with its enlargements) in the **Genitive Case** :

anstatt (or statt)..., instead of...	dießseits..., this side of...	vermittels..., by means of...	zufolge..., in consequence of...
längs..., alongside of...	jenseits..., that side of...	außerhalb..., outside of...	unweit..., not far from...
troß..., in spite of...	um...wissen, for the sake of...	innerhalb..., inside of...	unfern..., not far from...
während..., during	ungeachtet..., notwithstanding...	oberhalb..., above...	inmitten..., in the middle of...
wegen..., on account of...	vermöge, by the power of...	unterhalb..., below...	hinsichtlich..., with regard to...

III. Prepositions requiring their noun (with its enlargements) in the **Dative Case** :

aus..., out of, from...	zu..., to, at	The following stand after their noun, which must be in the <i>Dative</i> : ...gegenüber, opposite to... or gegenüber..., vis-à-vis ...entgegen, against... ...zufolge, in consequence of...	
bei..., at, near...	außer..., beside, except		
mit..., with...	nebst..., beside	...gemäß, in accordance with... ...zuwider, against...	
nach..., after, to...	sammt..., together with		
seit..., since (of time)	nächst..., nearest to, next		
von..., of, from, by...	binnen..., within (of time)		

IV. The following *nine* prepositions of locality or position require their noun, etc., in the **Accusative**, if the verb in the sentence implies a change or motion with regard to the substantive (or pronoun) which stands after the preposition ; but they require it in the **Dative**, if the verb in the sentence does not imply such change or motion. [Remember the change or motion must be in regard to the noun after the preposition.]

an..., towards, to ; at	neben..., to the side of ; by, near	hinter..., behind ; after
auf..., upon, on to ; on	über..., over, across... ; over, above	vor..., to the front of ; in front of, before
in..., into ; in	unter..., below, beneath	zwischen..., between

*N.B.* (1.) In speaking of *Time*, *vor* (*ago, before*), and *in* (*in*), always take dative, as : *vor zehn Tagen* (dative Plural), *ten days ago* ; *in einer Minute*, *in a minute*.

(2.) Preposition and Definite Article are often contracted, as : *am* = *an dem* ; *am's* = *an das* ; *auf's* = *auf das* ; *beim* = *bei dem* ; *durch's* = *durch das* ; *im* = *in dem* ; *in's* = *in das* ; *vom* = *von dem* ; *zum* = *zu dem* ; *zur* = *zu der*. (Other contractions are very rare indeed.)



## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE O.

- I. 1. Er führte den alten Mann durch den Wald.  
 2. Sie gieng den Berg hinauf, den Bach entlang.  
 3. Es geht gegen meinen Willen.

1. *He led the old man through the forest.*  
 2. *She went up the mountain, along the brook.*  
 3. *It goes against my will.*

*Exercise on the Accusative.*

1. This is for your good, kind teacher.  
 3. He bought this without my permission.  
 5. The child fell down the hill yesterday.

2. Go through the town towards the church.  
 4. He has (is) gone along this rapid river.  
 6. We shall travel round the world.

- II. 1. Sie sind trotz des Verbotes gegangen.  
 2. Tue es, um deines Vaters willen.  
 3. Er kam während meiner Stunde.

1. *You have gone in spite of the prohibition.*  
 2. *Do it, for your father's sake.*  
 3. *He came during my lesson.*

*Exercise on the Genitive.*

1. He lives this side of the mountain.  
 3. The boy came on account of his brother.  
 5. He died in the midst of the enemies.

2. We went, in consequence of the command.  
 4. The house lies above the village.  
 6. We were walking alongside of the river.

- III. 1. Er gieng aus dem Hause zu dem Mann.  
 2. Wir werden nach einer Stunde kommen.  
 3. Sie wohnen Ihrem Hause gegenüber.

1. *He went out of the house to the man.*  
 2. *We shall come after an hour.*  
 3. *They live opposite your house.*

*Exercise on the Dative.*

1. Come out of the room after the lesson.  
 3. We shall do it within three days.  
 5. Charles was (became) loved by his teacher.

2. Will you go with your father?  
 4. The soldiers went against the enemy.  
 6. I spoke to those idle boys yesterday.

- IV. 1. Der Vogel fliegt über das Dach dort.  
 2. Stehen Sie nicht an dem Fenster.  
 3. Kommen Sie an das Fenster, Karl.

1. *The bird flies over the roof there.*  
 2. *Do not stand at the window.*  
 3. *Come to the window, Charles.*

*Exercise.*

1. Those books lie on the chair in my room.  
 3. We go to (into the) school; they are in (the) church.  
 5. They went (have...gone) across the sea, a week ago.

2. Bring them into this room, my good boy.  
 4. We were between two fires.  
 6. I shall come to London in a few days.

*General Exercise on the Prepositions.*

1. Were these boys in the room with the man?  
 3. Where do you live? Opposite that church.  
 5. We remained here against our will.  
 7. You have not been in (the) town. Why not?  
 9. He has been on the mountain.

2. Yes, but they went soon out of the house.  
 4. Why did you not go to London?  
 6. Let us go along this beautiful brook!  
 8. It was on account of our poor friend.  
 10. Are you also going on the mountain?

## REFERENCE-PAGE P.

## On Inseparable and Separable Verbs.

## I. Inseparable Verbs.

(a.) We have already seen that verbs beginning with the *unaccented* prefixes: *be . . , ge . . , emp . . , ent . . , er . . , ver . . , zer . . , hinter . . , miß . . , voll . . , wider*, (Ref.-Page H.) are inseparable, *i.e.* these prefixes never leave the root-verb throughout the conjugation, *nor* is *ge . .* prefixed for the Past Participle, as :

(zu) verlieren (irreg.) *to loose* ; er verliert, verlor, hat verloren.

(zu) zerstören (reg.) *to destroy* ; er zerstört, zerstörte, hat zerstört.

(b.) There are, besides, some ten inseparable verbs with *accented* prefixes, as : *antworten*, *to answer*. These are *all regular* verbs and **admit of *ge . .*** for the Past Participle :

(zu) antworten, *to answer* ; er antwortet, antwortete, hat geantwortet.

(zu) frühstücken, *to breakfast* ; er frühstückt, frühstückte, hat gefrühstückt.

(zu) handhaben, *to handle* ; er handhabt, handhabte, hat gehandhabt.

*N.B.*—*wider . .*, *against*, is *always* inseparable ; *wieder . .*, *again*, is *always* separable, except only in *wiederholen*, *to repeat*.

## II. Separable Verbs.

Many root-verbs combine with prepositions or adverbs, the latter generally retaining their meaning and being accented, as : *aufstehen*, *to stand up, rise*. Such verbs are **separable**, *i.e.*

(1.) In *Primary sentences*, if the tense have **no** auxiliary in it, they throw their prefix off, and it stands where a Predicate would stand (see Rules 10 and 11, on page 38) ; as : er **steht** heute nicht **auf**, *he does not get up to-day*.

(2.) In the *Past Participle* they take **. . ge . .** between the prefix and the root ; as : er **ist** **aufgestanden**, *he has got up*.

(3.) In the *Infinitive*, if **zu** (*to, in order to*) be used, **zu** is placed between the prefix and the root ; as : ich **hoffe** morgen **aufzu**stehen, *I hope to get up to-morrow*.

*N.B.*—This insertion of **ge . .** or **zu** is not called separation.

*Separation never takes place in Past Participle and in Infinitive.*

*Note*—There are *four* prefixes which, in some verbs, are separable and in others inseparable, they are : **durch, über, um, and unter**.

(a.) They are **inseparable** when belonging to *active* or *transitive* verbs conjugated in the Compound tenses with **haben**, as :

ich habe die Schweiz **durch**reist, *I have travelled through (all over) Switzerland*.

er **überg**ing den Fehler, *he overlooked the mistake (missed it)*.

(b.) They are **separable** when belonging to *neuter* or *intransitive* verbs, conjugated in the Compound tenses with **sein**, as :

ich bin **durch** die Schweiz **ge**reist, *I have travelled through Switzerland*.

er **gi**eng zum Feind **über**, *he went over to the enemy*.

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE P.

I. *Inseparable Verbs.* (For Irregular Verbs, see Alphabetical List, Reference-Page N.)

erhalten (see halten), to receive	gelingen, (irreg.), to succeed	hinterlassen (see lassen), to bequeath	zerreißen (see reißen), to tear
empfinden (see finden), to feel	verdienen (reg.), to deserve	zerstören (reg.), to destroy	empfangen (see fangen), to receive
belohnen (reg.), to reward	mißbrauchen (reg.), to misuse	widerstehen (see stehen), to withstand	entführen (reg.), to carry off
entgehen (see gehen), to escape	vollbringen (see p. 46), to accomplish	widersprechen (see sprechen), to contradict	geloben (reg.), to promise

*Examples.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Erhält der Knabe eine Strafe? Sie ist verdient.        | 1. Does the boy get (a) punishment; it is deserved.    |
| 2. Wann frühstückten Sie? Er hat noch nicht gefrühstückt. | 2. When did you breakfast? He has not yet breakfasted. |
| 3. Was hat er geantwortet? Er antwortete Nichts.          | 3. What has he answered? He answered nothing.          |
| 4. Sie haben das Geld empfangen und mißbraucht.           | 4. You have received and misused the money.            |

*Exercise.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Will the boy be (become) rewarded?                 | 2. No, I believe he has deserved punishment. |
| 3. Do not withstand (to) your faithful friend (Dat.). | 4. He has contradicted his brother (Dative). |
| 5. That town has been (become) destroyed.             | 6. We have accomplished the deed.            |
| 7. What has he bequeathed to his daughter (Dative)?   | 8. He bequeathed her (ihr) a large fortune.  |
| 9. Did she receive her fortune?                       | 10. Yes, and she misused it.                 |

II. *Separable Verbs.* (Conjugated like their root verbs, which look out on Reference-Page N, if irregular.)

ab'schlagen, to refuse	bei'tragen, to contribute	los'lassen, to let free, go	weg'tragen, to carry away
an'kleiden (reg.), to dress	ein'nehmen, to take in, earn	mit'gehen, to go with (one)	weg'bleiben, to remain away
auf'stehen, to rise, get up	fort'setzen (reg.), to continue	nach'sehen, to look after	wieder'kommen, to come again
auf'gehen, to rise (of stars)	her'bringen, to bring hither	nieder'lassen (sich), to settle	zu'bringen, to spend (time)
aus'geben, to spend (money)	hin'legen (reg.), to lay there	vor'stellen (reg.), to introduce	zu'machen (reg.), to close

*Examples.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Kleiden Sie das Kind an! Es ist angekleidet. | 1. Dress the child! It is dressed.             |
| 2. Wann stehen Sie auf? Er wird mitgehen.       | 2. When do you get up? He will go with (us).   |
| 3. Geben Sie viel Geld aus? Ich habe kein Geld. | 3. Do you spend much money? I have no money.   |
| 4. Wo bringen Sie Ihre Zeit zu? Im Hause.       | 4. Where do you spend your time? In the house. |

*Exercise.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Do not refuse his request! Let the bird loose (go). | 2. Bring my book into my room hither (hierher). |
| 3. I have introduced him (ihn) to the count (Dative).  | 4. Get up; the sun has (is) risen.              |
| 5. We have spent this money.                           | 6. I contributed to the work (zu with Dative).  |
| 7. They have come again. (Use sein.)                   | 8. Will you introduce the man to the king?      |
| 9. I have already introduced him (ihn).                | 10. We do not earn much money?                  |

*Exercise on durch . . ., über . . ., um . . ., unter . . .*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. We have translated (über'setzen, insep.) the exercise. | 2. They have crossed (über'setzen sep.) (over) the river. |
| 3. The milk has run over (über'laufen, sep.).             | 4. I returned (um'kehren, sep.) and went away.            |
| 5. The man was (became) run over (überfahren, insep.)     | 6. Those ships have sunk (unter'gehen, sep.).             |

## REFERENCE-PAGE Q.

## Personal Pronouns.

FIRST PERSON.		SECOND PERSON.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>ich, I</i>	<i>wir, we</i>	<i>du, thou</i>	<i>ihr, ye</i>
Acc. <i>mid, me, myself</i>	<i>uns, us, ourselves</i>	<i>dich, thee, thyself</i>	<i>euch, ye</i>
Gen. <i>meiner, of me</i>	<i>unser(er), of us</i>	<i>deiner, of thee</i>	<i>euer(er), of ye (you)</i>
Dat. <i>mir, to me</i>	<i>uns, to us, ourselves</i>	<i>dir, to thee</i>	<i>euch, to ye (you)</i>

THIRD PERSON.			
SINGULAR MASCULINE.	SINGULAR FEMININE.	SINGULAR NEUTER.	PLURAL M. F. and N.
Nom. <i>er, he</i>	} <i>sie, she (Acc. her)</i>	<i>es, it</i>	<i>sie (they); Sie, you</i>
Acc. <i>ihn, him</i>			
Gen. <i>seiner, of him</i>	<i>ihrer, of her</i>	<i>[seiner, of it]</i>	<i>ihrer, of them; Ihrer, of you</i>
Dat. <i>ihm, to him</i>	<i>ihr, to her</i>	<i>[ihm, to it]</i>	<i>ihnen, to them; Ihnen, to you</i>

## Notes on the Personal Pronouns.

- (1) Remember that the 3d person Plural is used in addressing a stranger politely, as :  
*Werden Sie gehen? Will you go? Ich bringe Ihnen das Buch, I bring (to) you the book.*
- (2) Be careful to make the possessive adjective agree with the Personal pronoun in person, as :  
*Du hast deinen Rock, thou hast thy coat. Sie sehen Ihre Söhne, you see your sons.*  
[Of course this rule only applies to a case where the same person (or persons) is referred to.]
- (3) Personal pronouns must strictly agree in *Gender* with the nouns they refer to ; thus the English *it* may be *er*, or *sie*, or *es*, according as it refers to a masculine, feminine, or neuter Noun, as :  
*Wo ist der Hut? Where is the hat? Er ist hier, It is here (etc.)*
- (4) The oblique cases (Accusative, Genitive, Dative) may be governed by prepositions, as : *von ihm, from him.*  
*Notice however, that when the Personal Pronoun refers to a thing, it is preferable to use Genitive and Dative of derselbe, or dieselbe, or dasselbe, in which the definite article is declined, and selbst is merely an adjective in the First form (see Ref.-Page G), as :*  
*Where is my stick? I am in need of it. Wo ist mein Stok? Ich bedarf desselben.*
- (5) Moreover, if the thing referred to be an abstract, or of the *neuter gender*, the Dative and Accusative pronouns are replaced by *da...* (*dar...* before a vowel) or *hier...* as prefixes to the preposition, as :  
*Haben Sie davon gehört? Have you heard of it (there-of).*

## Reflexive Pronouns.

*myself, thyself, ourselves, and yourselves* are borrowed from the Personal Pronouns above ; BUT *himself, herself, itself, themselves*, have only one *invariable* form : *sich* (Dative and Accusative) *ich freue mich, I rejoice (myself)*, but : *er freut sich (not ihn)* ; *Sie freuen sich.*

*N.B.*—(a) All *reflexive verbs* take “**haben**” in their Compound tenses, and all, except ten, govern the Accusative of the reflexive pronoun.

(b) *selbst* is often added to strengthen the reflexive pronoun, as : *er liebt sich selbst.*

(c) If *myself*, etc., are not reflexive, they are rendered by *selbst* without any pronoun, as :

*The king himself, der König selbst; I shall go myself, ich werde selbst gehen.*



## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE Q.

I. *On the Personal Pronouns.*

Some verbs govern the *Genitive* in German, which do not in English, as : *bedürfen*, *to want* ; *gedenken*, *to remember* ; *spotten*, *to make fun of, laugh at*.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Wir haben seiner und Ihrer bedurft.                 | <i>We have wanted him and you.</i>               |
| 2. Werden Sie seiner spotten? Nein, ich bedarf seiner. | <i>Will you laugh at him? No, I need him.</i>    |
| 3. Die Frau hat unserer gedacht (or an uns . . .).     | <i>The woman has remembered (thought of) us.</i> |
| 4. Geben Sie mir das Buch und nicht ihm.               | <i>Give the book to me and not to him.</i>       |
| 5. Sahen Sie ihn? Nein, aber ich habe Sie gesehen.     | <i>Did you see him? No, but I saw you.</i>       |

*Exercise.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. I beg you, give me (Dat.) your pen. Here it is.        | 2. Where did you hear him? In the town.         |
| 3. He will bring you (Dat.) our exercises.                | 4. Do not laugh at him (Gen.) ; he is very ill. |
| 5. I hope, you will believe us (Dat.) and not him (Dat.). | 6. Are you going to (zu) him? No, to her.       |
| 7. Here is your ring. Take it (masc.).                    | 8. Here is her book. Do you need it?            |
| 9. I have not heard of it (there-of = davon).             | 10. Are you satisfied with it? (there-with.)    |

II. *On the Reflexive Verbs.*

Some reflexive verbs govern a genitive (besides the Acc. of the reflexive Pronoun), as : *sich* erinnern, *to remember* ; *sich* erbarmen, *to pity* ; *sich* erfreuen, *to enjoy*, etc.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Wir erinnerten uns seiner und ihrer.          | <i>We remembered him and her.</i>                  |
| 2. Bitte, erbarmen Sie sich unser(er).           | <i>Pray, take pity on us (pity us).</i>            |
| 3. Kleide dich an! Ich habe mich angekleidet.    | <i>Dress yourself! I have dressed myself.</i>      |
| 4. Haben Sie sich schon gewaschen? Ja mein Herr. | <i>Have you already washed yourself? Yes, Sir.</i> |
| 5. Wir erfreuen uns sehr guter Gesundheit.       | <i>We enjoy very good health.</i>                  |

*Exercise.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Do you remember me, my dear friend?          | 2. O yes! I remember you very well (gut).    |
| 3. Does he enjoy good health?                   | 4. No, he has caught cold (sich erkälten).   |
| 5. We have refused to (zu) go there (dahin).    | 6. We have resolved not to go there.         |
| 7. You must not praise yourself.                | 8. Take pity on (Pity) her, Sir.             |
| 9. Have they resolved, to do this? (Inf. last.) | 10. No, they refuse to do that (that to do). |

Difference between *myself*, *thyself*, etc., as *reflexive* and as *not-reflexive* Pronouns. *Sie selbst* haben mich gerufen (not reflexive), *You yourself* have called me.

*Exercise. See Q. (N.B. b and c).*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. We saw you ourselves (not reflexive). | 2. We dressed ourselves (reflexive).        |
| 3. You yourself came to (zu) us.         | 4. I have washed myself, myself (emphatic). |
| 5. Thou hast seen it thyself.            | 6. She remembered you and him.              |
| 7. The men sold the horses themselves.   | 8. They cheated themselves (emphatic).      |

Dictionary of Words (*not on page 12*) for the Exercises.

(*To be learnt in small portions, set for each lesson, through the Term.*)

<i>to be able, können</i> (K.), <i>vermögen</i> (K.)	<i>to command, befehlen</i> (irreg.) (N.)	<i>the friend, der Freund</i> , —es, —e
<i>above, über</i> (Dat. and Acc.) (O.)	<i>in consequence of, zufolge</i> (O.)	<i>the garden, der Garten</i> , —s, —
<i>to accomplish, vollbringen</i> (sep.)	<i>to contradict, widersprechen</i> (Dat.)	<i>the gentleman, der Herr</i> , —n, —en
<i>on account of, wegen</i> (Gen.) (O.)	<i>to contribute, beitragen</i> (sep.)	<i>German, Deutsche</i> (adj.)
<i>after, nach</i> (Dat.) (O.)	<i>to copy, ab'schreiben</i> (sep. irreg.)	<i>to get (= become), werden</i>
<i>again, wieder</i>	<i>to create, erschaffen</i> (irreg.)	—— (=receive), <i>erhalten</i> (irreg.)
<i>against, wider...</i> (insep.) (P.)	<i>the day, der Tag</i> , —es, —e	<i>to get up, auf'stehen</i> (irreg.)
—— <i>gegen</i> (Acc.) (O.)	<i>dear, lieb</i> (adj.)	<i>to give, geben</i> (irreg.)
<i>ago, seit...</i> (Dat.) (O.)	<i>the deed, die That</i> , —, —en	<i>to go, gehen</i> (irreg. with sein)
<i>to allow, erlauben</i> (reg.)	<i>to destroy, zerstören</i> (reg.)	<i>to go to sleep, ein'schlafen</i> (irreg.)
<i>to be allowed, dürfen</i> (K.)	<i>to die, sterben</i> (irreg.) (auxil.: sein)	<i>God, Gott</i> [der—, des—es, die—er]
<i>along(side of), längs</i> (O.), <i>entlang</i>	<i>diligent, fleißig</i>	<i>health, die Gesundheit</i> , —, —en
<i>also, auch</i> (conjunction)	<i>to do, make, tun</i> (irreg.)	<i>heaven, der Himmel</i> , —s, —
<i>bad, schlecht</i> (adj. and adverb)	<i>to dress, ankleiden</i> (reg.)	<i>heavy (of rain), stark</i> (adj.)
<i>to beg, bitten</i> (irreg.) (N.)	—— <i>sich ankleiden</i> (refl.)	<i>here (=hither), hierher</i> (motion)
<i>to bequeath, hinterlassen</i> (insep.)	<i>to drink, trinken</i> (irreg.)	<i>the hill, der Hügel</i> , —s, —
<i>Berlin, Berlin</i>	<i>to earn, verdienen</i> (reg.)	<i>to hope, hoffen</i> (reg.)
<i>between, zwischen</i> (O.) (Dat and Acc.)	<i>the earth, die Erde</i> , —, —n	<i>the house, das Haus</i> , —es, —er
<i>the Bible, die Bibel</i> , —, —n	<i>to eat, essen</i> (irreg.)	<i>idle (lazy), träge</i> (adj.)
<i>the bird, der Vogel</i> , —s, —u	<i>the enemy, der Feind</i> , —es, —e	<i>ill, krank</i> (adj.)
<i>the boy, der Knabe</i> , —n, —n	<i>England, England</i>	<i>into (in), in</i> (with acc.) (O.)
<i>brightly, hell</i> (adj. and adverb)	<i>to enjoy, sich</i> (Gen.) <i>erfreuen</i>	<i>to introduce, vor'stellen</i> (sep. reg.)
<i>to bring, bringen</i> (p. 46)	<i>the exercise, die Aufgabe</i> , —, —en	<i>kind, gut, gütig</i> (adj.)
<i>the brook, der Bach</i> , —es, —e	<i>faithful, treu</i> (adj.)	<i>to know, kennen</i> (p. 46)
<i>the brother, der Bruder</i> , —s, —u	<i>to fall, fallen</i> (irreg.)	—— <i>wissen</i> (p. 46)
<i>to burn, brennen</i> (p. 46)	<i>to fall-headlong, stürzen</i> (reg.)	<i>large, groß</i> (adj.)
<i>by</i> (agent), <i>von</i> (O.) (Dat.)	<i>far, weit, fern</i> (adv.)	<i>late, spät</i> (adv. or adj.)
<i>to call, rufen</i> (irreg.) (N.)	<i>a few, einige, wenige</i>	<i>to laugh (at), lachen</i> (reg.) (über)
<i>can, können</i> (K.)	<i>the fire, das Feuer</i> , —s, —	<i>lazy, träge</i> (adj.)
<i>to catch cold, sich erkälten</i> (Q.) (reg.)	<i>to flee, fliehen</i> (irreg.)	<i>to learn, lernen</i> (reg.)
<i>the chair, der Stuhl</i> , —s, —e	<i>to fly (with wings), fliegen</i> (irreg.)	<i>the lesson, die Aufgabe</i> , —, —n
<i>Charles, Karl</i>	<i>for, für</i> (preposition) (O.)	<i>to let, lassen</i> (irreg.) (auxiliary)
<i>cheap, billig</i> (adj. and adverb)	<i>for, denn</i> (conjunction)	<i>to lie (tell a lie), lügen</i> (irreg.)
<i>to cheat, betrügen</i> (irreg.) (N.)	<i>to forsake, verlassen</i> (irreg.)	—— ( <i>be situated</i> ), <i>liegen</i> (irreg.)
<i>the church, die Kirche</i> , —, —n	<i>the fortune (luck), das Glück</i> , —es	<i>the light, das Licht</i> , —es, —er
<i>to come, kommen</i> (irreg.) (N.)	( <i>property, money</i> ), <i>das Vermögen</i>	<i>to like, lieben, gern haben</i>
	<i>French, französisch</i> (adj.)	<i>little</i> (adj.) <i>klein</i> (adv. =wenig)



## Dictionary—continued.

*a little*, ein wenig (adverb)  
*to live*, leben, wohnen (reg.)  
*London*, London  
*loose*, frei (frei'lassen)  
*may*, können, dürfen (K.)  
*meet*, begegnen (reg. with Dat.)  
*in the midst of*, inmitten (Gen.) (O.)  
*Miss*, (mein) Fräulein  
*the mountain*, der Berg, —es, —e  
*to need*, brauchen (with acc.) (reg.)  
 — brauchen (with gen.) (p. 43)  
*new*, neu (adj.)  
*the night*, die Nacht, —, —e  
*now*, jetzt, nun  
*to be obliged*, müssen (K.)  
*on*, auf (Dat. and Acc.) (O.)  
*opposite*, gegenüber (Dat.) (O.)  
*ought*, sollen (K.)  
*out (of)*, aus (Dat.) (O.)  
*over (across)*, über (Dat. Acc.) (O.)  
*Paris*, Paris  
*the permission*, die Erlaubniß  
*to pity*, sich erbarmen (Gen.)  
*the pond*, der Teich, —es, —e  
*the prohibition*, das Verbot, —es  
*the rain*, der Regen, —s  
*rapid*, schnell, reisend  
*to receive*, erhalten (irreg.)  
*to recommend*, empfehlen (irreg.)  
*to refuse*, verweigern (reg.)  
*to remain*, bleiben (irreg.)  
*to remember*, sich erinnern (reg.)  
*to request*, bitten (irreg.)  
*to resolve*, sich entschließen (irreg.)  
*to return*, zurückkehren (reg.)  
*to be right*, Recht haben  
*to rise (of men)*, aufstehen (sep.) (of  
 stars, sun), aufgehen (sep.)

*the river*, der Fluß, —fließ, —fließ  
*round*, rund (adj.)  
*turn-round*, umkehren (reg.)  
*satisfied*, zufrieden (adj.)  
*the school*, die Schule, —, —n  
*the sea*, das Meer, —es, —e  
*to see*, sehen (irreg.)  
*self (selves)*, selbst  
*to send*, schicken (reg.) senden (46)  
*several*, mehrere (adj.)  
*this side of*, diesseits (Gen.) (O.)  
*that side of*, jenseits (Gen.) (O.)  
*to sing*, singen (irreg.)  
*Sir!* mein Herr!  
*to sit*, sitzen (irreg.)  
*to go to sleep*, einschlafen (irreg.)  
*the soldier*, der Soldat, —en, —en  
*soon*, bald (adv.)  
*to speak*, sprechen (irreg.)  
*to spend (time)*, zu'bringen  
*to spend (money)*, aus'geben  
*in spite of*, trotz (Gen.) (O.)  
*to steal*, stehlen (irreg.)  
*still*, noch (adv.)  
*the sun*, die Sonne, —, —n  
*to take*, nehmen (very irreg.)  
*to thank*, danken (Dat.) (reg.)  
*there* = (thither), dorthin  
*three* = drei  
*through*, durch (Acc.) (O.)  
*to, zu*; nach; in (into)  
*too*, zu (emphatic)  
*towards*, nach, gegen (O.)  
*to translate*, übersetzen (insep.)  
*to travel*, reisen (reg.)  
*the village*, das Dorf, —es, —er  
*to walk*, gehen (irreg.)  
*to want*, brauchen (Acc.) (reg.)

*to want*, bedürfen (Gen.) K. (43)  
*to wash*, waschen (irreg.)  
*the week*, die Woche, —, —n  
*well*, wohl, gut (adverbs)  
*why?* warum?  
*the will*, der Willen, —s, —  
*to wish*, wünschen (with zu)  
 — wollen (without zu)  
*with*, mit (Dat.) (O.)  
*within (of time)*, binnen (Dat.)  
 — (of place), in (O.) [hinein]  
*without*, ohne (O.) (Acc.)  
*to withstand*, widerstehen (insep.)  
*the work*, die Arbeit, —, —en  
*to work*, arbeiten (reg.)  
*the world*, die Welt, —, —en  
*wrong*, unrecht  
*I am wrong*, ich habe Unrecht  
*yesterday*, gestern

## NOTICE.

In using the Dictionary, refer to the Reference-Pages indicated; in the Irregular Verbs the alphabetical list (N) will give all that is necessary. As to separable or inseparable Verbs, refer to Reference-Page P and study it again.

Of the Nouns, the Nominative Singular is given, and the Genitive Singular and Nominative Plural are indicated.

As to changes of Adjectives refer to Reference-Page G, pp. 28 and 29.

## Additional Exercises.

(To be written, on reviewing the Reference-Pages **K** to **Q** [see page 38 in all for the sequence of words].)

To Reference-Page **K** (and page 43).

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Was your father wrong? No, he was right. | 2. Did you need (bedürfen, Gen.) my knife?         |
| 3. The Bible says, Thou shalt not steal.    | 4. They are said (sollen) to have lived very long. |
| 5. Were you obliged to punish the boys?     | 6. You must (dürfen) not go without us.            |
| 7. Was he able (vermögen) to (zu) go there? | 8. He could not go; he was poor.                   |

To Reference-Page **L**.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. They met their friends (Dat.) in Paris.    | 2. Have the enemies fled? No, we fled.            |
| 3. He has forsaken his father and his mother. | 4. When did the child go-to-sleep? (Use Perfect.) |
| 5. Where did you remain, (my) Miss?           | 6. We remained several days in Paris.             |
| 7. Did the little girl fall into the river?   | 8. No, she (it) fell into the pond.               |

To Reference-Page **M**.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Did the light burn brightly?             | 2. It has not burnt very well, Sir.        |
| 3. Did you know (wissen) this, dear friend? | 4. No, but I know (wissen) it now.         |
| 5. He knows (wissen) too much.              | 6. I did not know (kennen) this gentleman. |
| 7. But he has known (kennen) you long.      | 8. Who has sent me this beautiful ring?    |

To Reference-Page **N**.

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Who recommended you to this man?        | 2. He, my friend, has recommended me. |
| 3. What have you eaten this (Acc.) day?    | 4. Do not give this to your son.      |
| 5. Who has called? I did not call.         | 6. God created heaven and earth.      |
| 7. Let us drink to (auf, Acc.) his health! | 8. Have (Are) you sat on that chair?  |

To Reference-Page **O**.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Will you go with your friend, Charles?     | 2. No, I shall go without my friend.          |
| 3. See the birds fly over that house.         | 4. The knife was lying (lay) on this table.   |
| 5. They did this in spite of the prohibition. | 6. Go into the house; I remain in the garden. |
| 7. Why did you not come to (zu) me?           | 8. It was on account of the heavy rain.       |

To Reference-Page **P**.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Had the enemy destroyed that town?        | 2. See, the sun rises over (Dat.) the hills. |
| 3. Come, rise, ye lazy boys! (2d pers. Pl.). | 4. Have you come again?                      |
| 5. I have returned to you (zu, Dat.).        | 6. How have you spent your time?             |
| 7. I have copied this letter here.           | 8. I have also translated this exercise.     |

To Reference-Page **Q**.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Do you want (bedürfen) my friend or me?        | 2. I thank you (Dat.); I want your friend.    |
| 3. Will he come with me or with you?              | 4. He has resolved to go with them.           |
| 5. Did you remember (Reflexive) me? (Gen.).       | 6. No, I have not remembered you.             |
| 7. Has he enjoyed (Reflexive) good health? (Gen.) | 8. No, he is still in very bad health. (Dat.) |

## CONVERSATIONAL SENTENCES.

(To be learnt in small portions, set for every Lesson, through the Term.)

1. Es klopft. Jemand klopft an die Türe.
2. Herein! Kommen Sie herein.
3. Wer ist da? Ich bin es, mein Lieber.
4. Ah! Mein lieber Karl. Komm' herein.
5. Es freut mich, dich wieder einmal zu sehen.
6. Wo bist du denn gewesen, seit ich dich sah?
7. Ich bin viel herumgereist seit Weihnachten.
8. Ich war auch einige Tage in München.
9. Und wie hat es dir dort gefallen, Karl?
10. Oh! Sehr gut, danke; ich traf viele Freunde.
11. Sahst du auch unseren alten Müller?
12. Ja, und er läßt dich freundlichst grüßen.
13. Wie geht es ihm in seiner neuen Heimath?
14. Ziemlich gut, er hat ein gutes Geschäft.
15. Hast du den Sohn des reichen B. getroffen?
16. Nein, er hatte die Universität verlassen.
17. Er war auf Reisen, in Italien, glaub' ich.
18. Man sagt, es gehe ihm wieder etwas besser.
19. Was hatte er denn? War er krank?
20. Er litt an täglichem Kopfschmerz.
21. Er soll zu viel studirt haben, sagt man.
22. Nun, das war nie der Fall mit uns.
23. Drum haben wir auch nicht so viel Kopfschmerz.
24. Und wird der junge B. lange fortbleiben?
25. Nein, ich glaube, er wird bald zurückkehren.
26. Dann wird er in's Geschäft eintreten.
27. So hat er seine Studien ganz aufgegeben?
28. Ja, er soll Geschäftsmann werden.
29. Darf ich dir eine Cigarre anbieten?
30. Nein, ich habe mir das Rauchen abgewöhnt.
31. Wirfst du heute Abend in's Casino kommen?
32. Ja, mit Vergnügen. Adieu einstweilen.
33. Auf Wiedersehen diesen Abend um sieben.
34. Empfehl' mich deiner Fräulein Schwester.
35. Ja gerne, und du mich deiner Frau Mutter.
36. Danke. Adieu. Also auf diesen Abend.

- There is a knock. Some one is knocking at the door.*
- Come in! Come in! (Enter!)*
- Who is there? It is I, my dear.*
- Ah! My dear Charles, come in.*
- I am pleased to see you once again.*
- Where have you been since I saw you?*
- I have travelled about much since Christmas.*
- I was also a few days in Munich.*
- And how did you like it, Charles?*
- Oh! very well, thanks; I met many friends.*
- Did you see our old Müller also?*
- Yes, and he sends his kindest regards.*
- How is he getting on in his new home?*
- Tolerably well; he has a good business.*
- Did you meet the son of the rich B.?*
- No, he had left the University.*
- He was travelling, in Italy, I believe.*
- They say, he is a little better again.*
- What was the matter? Was he ill?*
- He suffered from daily headaches.*
- He is said to have studied too much.*
- Well, that was never the case with us.*
- That is why we have not so much headache.*
- And will young B. remain away long?*
- No, I believe he will return soon.*
- Then he will enter the business.*
- So he has given up his studies entirely?*
- Yes, he is to become a business man.*
- May I offer you a cigar?*
- No, I have given up smoking.*
- Will you come to the casino (club) this evening?*
- Yes, with pleasure. Good-bye meanwhile.*
- To the pleasure of seeing you this evening at seven.*
- Give my kind regards to your sister.*
- Yes, willingly, and you mine to your mother.*
- Thanks. Good-bye. Then this evening.*

## POEM.

(To be learnt by heart during this Term.)

## Das Gewitter. Von Gustav Schwab.

1. Urahn, Großmutter, Mutter und Kind ;  
In dumpfer Stube beisammen sind ;  
Es spielt das Kind ; die Mutter sich schmückt ;  
Großmutter spinnet ; Urahn, gebückt,  
Sitzt hinter dem Ofen im Pfühl :  
Wie wehen die Lüfte so schwül !
2. Das Kind spricht : „Morgen ist Feiertag !  
„Wie will ich spielen im grünen Hag !  
„Wie will ich springen durch Thal und Höhn !  
„Wie will ich pflücken viel Blumen schön !  
„Dem Ager, dem bin ich hold !“  
Hört ihr's, wie der Donner growlt ? !
3. Die Mutter spricht : „Morgen ist Feiertag !  
„Da halten wir Alle fröhlich' Gelag ;  
„Ich selber, ich rüste mein Feierkleid ;  
„Das Leben, es hat auch Lust nach Leid,  
„Dann scheint die Sonne wie Gold !“  
Hört ihr's, wie der Donner growlt ? !
4. Großmutter spricht : „Morgen ist Feiertag !  
„Großmutter hat keinen Feiertag !  
„Sie kocht das Mahl ; sie spinnet das Kleid ;  
„Das Leben ist Sorg' und viel Arbeit !  
„Wohl dem, der tat, was er sollt !“  
Hört ihr's, wie der Donner growlt ? !
5. Urahn spricht : „Morgen ist Feiertag !  
„Am liebsten morgen ich sterben mag ;  
„Ich kann nicht singen und scherzen mehr ;  
„Ich kann nicht sorgen und schaffen schwer ;  
„Was tu' ich noch auf der Welt ? !“  
Seht ihr, wie der Blitz dort fällt ? !
6. Sie hören's nicht, sie sehen's nicht ;  
Es flammet die Stube wie lauter Licht.  
Urahn, Großmutter, Mutter und Kind  
Vom Strahl mit einander getroffen sind.  
Hier Leben endet ein Schlag :—  
Und Morgen ist's Feiertag !

## The Thunderstorm. (Literal translation.)

1. Great-grandmother, grandmother, mother and child  
Are together in the close room ;  
The child is playing ; the mother is decking herself out ;  
Grandmother is spinning ; great-grandmother, bent,  
Is sitting behind the oven in the cushions :  
How oppressive the air (is blowing) feels !
2. The child says : “To-morrow is (a) holiday !  
“How I will play in the green meadow !  
“How ! will skip through vale and hill !  
“How I will gather many beautiful flowers !  
“The green fields, of them I am fond !”  
Do you hear, how the thunder growls (angrily) ? !
3. The mother says : “To-morrow is holiday !  
“Then we all will keep up the merry feast ;  
“I myself, I am preparing my holiday-dress ;  
“Life, it has still joy after sorrow,  
“Then the sun shines, even as gold !”  
Do you hear, how the thunder roars ! ?
4. Grandmother says : “To-morrow is holiday !  
“Grandmother has no holiday !  
“She must cook the dinner, and spin (for) the dress ;  
“Life is (but) cares and much work !  
“Happy is he, who did what he ought to have done” !  
Do you hear, how the thunder roars ! ?
5. Great-grandmother says : “To-morrow is holiday !  
“Most of all I should like to die to-morrow :  
“I can no longer sing nor joke ;  
“I cannot be busy nor work hard ;  
“What good am I any longer in the world ? !”  
Do you see, how the lightning strikes there ? !
6. They hear it not, they see it not ;  
The room is aflame, is nothing but light.  
Great-grandmother, grandmother, mother and child  
All together are struck by the flash of lightning.  
One stroke terminates four lives :—  
And to-morrow is holiday !

## FOURTH TERM

THE student should test his knowledge of Grammar continually in the Translation lesson by parsing and analysing.

Some few words from pages 86 and 87, a few sentences from page 88, and a few lines of the poems on pages 89 and 90, should still form an integral part of every lesson in Grammar.

The Dictionaries, Sentences, and Poems given in Terms 1, 2, and 3 might also with advantage be repeated.



## REFERENCE-PAGE R.

## The Numerals.

A. All Numerals are based upon the *Cardinal Numbers*, used for counting :

1=eins	6=sechs	11=eilf (or elf)	21=ein und zwanzig	100=ein hundert
2=zwei	7=sieben	12=zwölf	22=zwei und zwanzig	200=zwei hundert
3=drei	8=acht	13=dreizehn	30=dreißig	1000=ein tausend
4=vier	9=neun	14=vierzehn, etc.	40=vierzig	2000=zwei tausend
5=fünf	10=zehn	20=zwanzig	50=fünfzig, etc.	1,000,000=eine Million

The above will enable the intelligent pupil to form all numbers up to a million.

All cardinal numbers are invariable, but **zwei** and **drei**, if used without any determinative before a noun (expressed or understood) become: *Genitive* —er, *Dative* —en. **One** in counting dates, etc., is **eins**; if used before a noun, it is **ein, eine, ein**; if used without a noun, it is **einer, eine, eines**; *one after an adjective is never translated.*

B. From the above Cardinal Numbers are formed :

1. The **Ordinal Numbers**; add —**te** up to nineteen, and —**fte** from twenty upwards, as : **der** (die, das), **zweite**, *the second*; **der ein und zwanzigste**, *the twenty-first*, except only **der erste**, *the first*, and **der dritte**, *the third*.

*Notice.*—All these are adjectives, and may be declined as such [see 3 forms, Ref.-Page G].

2. The **Multiplicatives**: (These may be used as adjectives, —**mal** then becomes —**malig**.)

(a) add —**mal** without exception [**eins** drops =s, *first*] as : **zehnmal**, *ten times*.

(b) add —**fach** or **fältig** [**eins** drops =s, *first*] as : **einfach**, *one-fold*, simple; **sechsfach**, *six-fold*; **vierfältig**, *four-fold* [=fach and =fältig are synonymous].

3. The **Variatives**: (always invariable) add : —**erlei** [**eins** drops =s, *first*] otherwise no exceptions : **einerlei**, *one kind (all the same)*; **zwölferlei**, *twelve kinds*.

4. The **Distinctives**: (always invariable) add : —**tenſ** to the Cardinals up to nineteen, and —**ſtenſ** from twenty upwards (seldom used), as : **zweitenſ**, *secondly*; **zwanzigſ**, *twentiethly*. Only exceptions : **erstenſ**, *firstly*; and **drittenſ**, *thirdly*.

5. The **Fractionals**: (always invariable) (really compounds of **der Teil**, *the part*, abbreviated into —**tel**); add —**tel** to the Cardinals up to nineteen, and —**ſtel** from twenty upwards, as : **ein ſechſtel**, *a sixth*; **ein dreißigſtel**, *one-thirtieth*. Only exception, **ein drittel**, *a third*.

*Note.*—**half** as an adjective is **halb**; as : **das halbe**, *the half*; **ein halbes**, *a half*. Notice : **half a...**, **half the...**, must be translated *a half...*, *the half...*. The **half** (a noun) is **die Hälfte**.

$1\frac{1}{2}$  is either **ein und ein halb** [with **halb** declined] or **anderthalb**, [invariable] (*half of the second*).

$2\frac{1}{2}$  is either **zwei und ein halb** or **dritthalb** (*half of the third*).

$3\frac{1}{2}$  is either **drei und ein halb** or **vierthalb** (*half of the fourth*).

(These are the only peculiarities of this kind.)



## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE R.

A. *Examples :*

1. Write out German for : 56, 27. Sechß und fünfzig. Sieben und zwanzig.
2. *In the year 1886.* Im Jahre achtzehnhundert sechß und achtzig.
3. *At what o'clock did he go?* At 9 o'clock. Um wie viel Uhr gieng er? Um neun Uhr.
4. *How old was the boy? Which one? This one.* Wie alt war der Knabe? Welcher? Dieser.
5. *We have one good knife and one bad one.* Wir haben ein gutes Messer und ein schlechtes.
6. *32 and 76 are 108.* Zwei und dreißig und sechß und siebenzig sind ein hundert und acht.
7. *The books of two or three boys.* Die Bücher zweier oder dreier Knaben.
8. *The books of these two boys and this one.* Die Bücher dieser zwei Knaben und dieses.
9. *At 9.15 or 9.30.* Um ein Viertel nach neun Uhr, oder um halb zehn Uhr.
10. *No, at a quarter to ten.* Nein, um ein Viertel vor (or bis) zehn Uhr.

*Exercise.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. 36 and 142 are 178.                           | 2. How old are you? I am 16 years old.               |
| 3. At what o'clock will they come?               | 4. I believe they will come at 5.15 or 5.30.         |
| 5. You have two diligent boys and an idle [one]. | 6. Yes, and you have only two idle [ones].           |
| 7. We went there at a quarter to seven.          | 8. You were late, you should have come at 6.30.      |
| 9. When did he die? In the year 1715.            | 10. Three boys' caps are here. (The caps of 3 boys.) |
| 11. Do you see the dog of these two children?    | 12. Give me a new pen, and not an old [one].         |

B. *Examples :*

1. *Henry III. or IV.* Heinrich der Dritte oder der Vierte.
2. *What day of the month is to-day?* Der wievielte des Monats ist heute?
3. *What day of the month had we yesterday?* Den wievielten des Monats hatten wir gestern?
4. *It is the 23d of March to-day.* Es ist der drei und zwanzigste März heute.
5. *7 times 5 is 35.* Siebenmal fünf sind fünf und dreißig.
6. *Will you have two or three kinds of paper?* Wollen Sie zweierlei oder dreierlei Papier?
7. *I paid this threefold or fourfold.* Ich habe dies dreifach oder vierfach bezahlt.
8. *Fourthly : he is a fool.* Viertens : er ist ein Narr.
9. *On the 16th of July he died.* Am sechßzehnten Juli starb er (Inversion, see p. 38).
10. *We waited half an hour or more.* Wir warteten eine halbe Stunde oder mehr.
11. *This is only the half of your book.* Dieses (C. a. 2) ist nur die Hälfte Ihres Buches.
12.  $\frac{2}{3}$  and  $\frac{3}{10}$  are  $\frac{20}{30}$  Zwei drittel und drei Zehntel sind neun und zwanzig dreißigstel.

*Exercise.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Henry the Eighth of (von) England.                            | 2. What day of the month have we to-day?        |
| 3. We have the 31st [of] March.                                  | 4. What are (Was sind) 9 times 12? 108.         |
| 5. You have six kinds [of] knives there.                         | 6. He is firstly poor and secondly ill.         |
| 7. They (are) died on the 27th of July.                          | 8. Give me one-half (subst.) of your apple.     |
| 9. He gave me half an (a half) apple.                            | 10. It is 5 minutes past (after) seven o'clock. |
| 11. What are $\frac{1}{3}$ and $\frac{2}{5}$ ? $\frac{11}{15}$ . | 12. I will not pay him ten times [over].        |

*N.B.*—Omit the words in [brackets], and write the numbers, etc., fully out in words.

## REFERENCE-PAGE S.

## I. Possessive Pronouns.

Distinguish *Adjectives* (before a noun) from *Pronouns* (not before a noun). The Possessive Adjectives, *mein, dein, my, thy*, etc., are given and declined in Reference-Page C. b. The Possessive Pronouns are, if preceded by definite article, formed by adding *ig* to the adjectives, as: *der meinige, der deinige, mine, thine*, etc. These are declined like adjectives in the 1st Form (see Reference-Page G). They are often abbreviated into *der meine, der deine*, etc.; or if not preceded by the definite article, into *meiner, meine, meines*, etc., declined like *dieser*. Thus we have: *mine*=*der (die, das) meinige*, or: *der (die, das) meine*, or: *meiner =e =es*; *thine*=*der (die, das) deinige*, or: *der (die, das) deine*, or: *deiner (deine, deines)*, etc.

*Remember*: The Possessive Pronoun must agree in *gender*, as well as in *number*, with the thing possessed, but its *case* depends on its own verb, as:

**dies ist mein Hund; hier ist der seinige; haben Sie den Ihrigen verloren?**

*Note*.—The English Possessive is sometimes rendered by the definite article, with the verb reflexive, as: *wir haben uns die Hände gewaschen*, *We have (to ourselves) washed our (the) hands*.

## II. Demonstrative Pronouns.

*dieser* and *jener* may be used as adjectives, *i.e.* before nouns, and also as Pronouns, *i.e.* not before a noun. The Declension is the same, given in Reference-Page C. a. [Remember to use it neuter singular invariable when separated by *sein* from its noun.] To the above two we may add the following, used either as adjectives or pronouns, but always agreeing with their noun in *gender* and *number*, and with their verb in *case*: *derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige, diejenigen, this, these, those*; and varied in the same way: *derselbe, the same*; *der nämliche, the same*. In these decline the definite article *der, die, das* as if it stood alone, and decline: *jenige, selbe, nämliche*, as adjectives in the 1st Form (see Reference-Page G.).

*N.B.* *derjenige* has an abbreviated form: *der, die, das; die*; declined thus:

	M. S.	F. S.	N. S.	PLURAL.	M. S.	F. S.	N. S.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>der</i>	} <i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>derjenige</i>	} <i>diejenige</i>	<i>dasjenige</i>	<i>diejenigen</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>den</i>				<i>denjenigen</i>			
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>dessen</i>	<i>deren</i>	<i>dessen</i>	<i>derer</i>	<i>desjenigen</i>	<i>derjenigen</i>	<i>desjenigen</i>	<i>derjenigen</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dem</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>dem</i>	<i>denen</i>	<i>demjenigen</i>	<i>derjenigen</i>	<i>demjenigen</i>	<i>denjenigen</i>

Where not differing in form from the definite article, the pronoun *der*, etc., is pronounced emphatically.

## III. Interrogative Pronouns.

The adjectives, *welcher? which*, etc., can also be used without nouns after them [see C. a. b.], but: *Was für ein...? what sort of...?* becomes: *Was für einer? eine? eines?* as pronoun.

There is besides these only one real Interrogative Pronoun, *wer? who? was? what?* of which the Genitive only, *wessen? whose?* can be used before a substantive.

Declension of *Wer? who?*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Wer? who?</i>	<i>Was? what?</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Wen? whom?</i>	<i>Was? what?</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Wessen? whose?</i>	<i>Wessen? of what?</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Wem? to whom?</i>	<i>[Was? to what?]</i>

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE S.

## I.

1. *This is my ring, where is hers?*
2. *He was not in your house, but in mine.*
3. *Your houses and theirs are old.*
4. *She has wounded her hand.*
5. *Have you lost your pencil or mine?*

1. Dieses ist mein Ring. Wo ist der ihrige.
2. Er war nicht in Ihrem Hause, sondern in dem meinigen.
3. Ihre Häuser und die ihrigen sind alt.
4. Sie hat sich die Hand verwundet.
5. Haben Sie Ihren Bleistift verloren oder den meinigen.

*Exercise.*

1. Is this (C. a. 2) your dog or his?
3. He will bring his brother, and I mine.
5. Have you your books? Yes, we have ours.
7. They have washed their hands (see 4 above).
9. Who has a friend? I have lost mine.
11. These (dies) are your pens, not ours.

2. It is his. I have lost mine.
4. Was he in my house? No, in (the) his.
6. I have brought my boots and yours.
8. Why do you ask my brother and not his?
10. Ours died a year ago (vor with dat.).
12. This is my pencil; where is yours?

## II.

1. *These are our friends, not Charles' (those of Charles).*
2. *The man, whom we remember (with gen.).*
3. *Was it this boy, or (that of) that gentleman's?*
4. *Have you my letter or (that of) my brother's?*
5. *I have (that of) your brother's.*

1. Dieses \* sind unsere Freunde, nicht diejenigen von Karl.
2. Der Mann, dessen wir uns erinnern.
3. War es dieser Knabe oder derjenige jenes Herrn?
4. Haben Sie meinen Brief oder den meines Bruders?
5. Ich habe denjenigen Ihres Bruders.

\* or Dies, or Das.

*Exercise.*

1. This is my book, not (that of) Charles'.
3. We saw your son and (that of) this gentleman's.
5. These are your pictures or (those of) your friend's.
7. Have you your own gloves?
9. Is this the same town? Yes, it is the same.
11. Why have you not brought your dog?

2. Give me (dat.) your knife and (that of) Henry's.
4. This house is not (that of) my brother's.
6. Where is that boy, whom (gen.) you remembered?
8. Yes, but she has (those of) (von) Mary's.
10. Will they have the same punishment?
12. I have brought (that of) my neighbour's.

## III.

1. *What sort of pencil have you?*
2. *She has a dress. What sort (of dress)?*
3. *To whom has he given the apple?*
4. *Whose books are these? Mine.*
5. *He lost his friend. Which?*

1. Was für einen Bleistift haben Sie?
2. Sie hat ein Kleid; was für eines?
3. Wem hat er den Apfel gegeben?
4. Wessen Bücher sind das? Meine?
5. Er verlor seinen Freund. Welchen?

*Exercise.*

1. She had a new dress. What sort (of dress)?
3. Whom do you call? My friend (acc.).
5. To whom does he give these gloves?
7. (Of) whom do you remember (yourself)?

2. Whose exercises are these? They are his.
4. What are you doing? Nothing.
6. What sort of dog have you lost?
8. Who is there? Whose house is this?

*General Exercise.*

1. Whose dog have you there? (da)
3. It is not my garden, it is his.
5. I have mine, yours are in your room.

2. I have my dog, not my son's (that of my son).
4. Have you my roses or yours?
6. Why do you lose my knife and not yours?

## REFERENCE-PAGE T.

## The Comparison of Adjectives.

As in English, Adjectives may be in the Positive, Comparative, or Superlative.

**A.** The Adjective used as a PREDICATE, *i.e.* invariable (after “to be,” or “to become”).

1. POSITIVE.	2. COMPARATIVE.			3. SUPERLATIVE.	
(—)	(a) of Superiority.	(b) of Equality.	(c) of Inferiority.	(a) of Superiority.	(b) of Inferiority.
(—)	(—) <i>er als</i>	<i>ebenso (—) als</i>	<i>weniger (—) als</i>	<i>am (—) ſten</i>	<i>am wenigſten (—)</i>
as: { <i>lang</i>	<i>länger als</i>	<i>ebenso lang als</i>	<i>weniger lang als</i>	<i>am längſten</i>	<i>am wenigſten lang</i>
	<i>longer than</i>	<i>as long as</i>	<i>less long than</i>	<i>the longest</i>	<i>the least long</i>

Of these only 2 (a) and 3 (a) offer any peculiarities, as follows:—

(i) Adjectives of more than one syllable, and those ending in *au* can never modify.

(ii) Most adjectives of one syllable, having *a, o, u* as vowel, modify these vowels; *except*:

<i>blaß, pale</i>	<i>fröh, merry</i>	<i>lahm, lame</i>	<i>roh, raw, coarse</i>	<i>ſchlank, slim</i>	<i>voll, full</i>
<i>bunt, variegated</i>	<i>höß, loveable, kind</i>	<i>matt, languid</i>	<i>rund, round</i>	<i>ſtolz, proud</i>	<i>zähm, tame</i>
<i>fälfch, false</i>	<i>klar, clear</i>	<i>plump, plump</i>	<i>ſanft, soft</i>	<i>toll, mad</i>	and a few rarely used ones besides

(iii) For the sake of euphony, adjectives ending in *el* in the Positive, drop *e* before adding *er* to the *l* for the Comparative 2, (a), as *eitel, vain*: *eitſer, vainer*; also adjectives ending in *s, ß, z*, or in more than two consonants, insert *æ* before adding *ſten* for the Superlative, 3 (a); as: *ſüß, sweet, am ſüßeſten, the sweetest*.

(iv) The following eight adjectives have further irregularities:—

1.	2 a.	3 a.	1.	2 a.	3 a.
<i>balb, soon</i> {	<i>eher, } sooner</i>	<i>am eheſten, the soonest</i>	<i>hoch, high</i>	<i>höher, higher</i>	<i>am höchſten, the highest</i>
<i>gern, willingly</i>	<i>früher, }</i>	<i>am liebſten, (best)</i>	<i>nahe, near</i>	<i>näher, nearer</i>	<i>am nächſten, the nearest</i>
<i>groß, great</i>	<i>lieber, rather</i>	<i>am größteſten, the greatest</i>	<i>viel, much</i>	<i>mehr, more</i>	<i>am meiſten, the most</i>
<i>gut, good</i>	<i>größter, greater</i>	<i>am beſten, the best</i>	<i>wenig, little</i>	<i>weniger, } less</i>	<i>am wenigſten, } the</i>
	<i>better, better</i>			<i>mindeſt, }</i>	<i>am mindeſten, } least</i>

*N.B.*—If two qualities are compared, 2 a is formed with *mehr . . . als* invariably.

**B.** The Adjective used as ATTRIBUTE, *i.e.* before a noun, must, after its Comparative or Superlative is formed according to the above rules, strictly change for gender, case, and number, as the Positive does, in the three forms (see Reference-Page G.); thus—

*Form (i): der größere Mann, the greater man; ich habe den ſchöneren Hund, I have the more beautiful dog.*

*Form (ii): ein älteres Schloß, an older castle; er iſt mein liebſter Bruder, he is my dearest brother.*

*Form (iii): beſſerer Wein, better wine; wir haben längere Aufgaben, we have longer exercises.*

*N.B.*—If used attributively, the “*am*” in the Superlative is dropped.

**C.** The Adjective used as an ADVERB has the same comparison exactly as when a *Predicate* (see A. above); as: *er ſchrieb am längſten, he wrote the longest*. There are, moreover, two adverbial forms of *some* adjectives in the Superlative:

(i) *auf's beſte, auf's höchſte, etc.* And (ii) *beſteſt, höchſteſt.*  
*(in the best way). (in the highest degree). (in the best manner). (at the most).*



## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE T.

## A. Example :

(i) Compare **fully** : schön, *beautiful* ; schlecht, *bad* ; gut, *good* ; edel, *noble*.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE			SUPERLATIVE	
	<i>of Superiority.</i>	<i>of Equality.</i>	<i>of Inferiority.</i>	<i>of Superiority.</i>	<i>of Inferiority.</i>
schön	schöner als	ebenso schön als	weniger schön als	am schönsten	am wenigsten schön
schlecht	schlechter als	ebenso schlecht als	weniger schlecht als	am schlechtesten	am wenigsten schlecht
gut	besser als	ebenso gut als	weniger gut als	am besten	am wenigsten gut
edel	edler als	ebenso edel als	weniger edel als	am edelsten	am wenigsten edel

(ii) Compare **shortly** : stolz, *proud* ; alt, *old* ; hoch, *high* ; finster, *dark*.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.	POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
stolz	stolzer	am stolzesten	hoch	höher	am höchsten
alt	älter	am ältesten	finster	finsterer	am finstesten

## Exercise.

Compare **fully** : falsch, *false* ; groß, *great* ; kurz, *short* ; bald, *soon*.Compare **shortly** : wenig, *little* ; blaß, *pale* ; jung, *young* ; viel, *much*.

## B. Example :

Decline, *Singular* and *Plural* : der edlere Graf, *the nobler count* ; ein jüngeres Mädchen, *a younger girl* ; mein schönstes Messer, *my most beautiful knife* ; and besserer Wein, *better wine*.

<i>Singular</i> (adj. 1st Form).		<i>Singular</i> (2d Form).	<i>Singular</i> (2d Form).	<i>Singular</i> (3d Form).
Nom.	der edlere Graf	} ein jüngeres Mädchen	mein schönstes Messer	} besserer Wein
Acc.	den edleren Grafen		meines schönsten Messers	
Gen.	des edleren Grafen		meinem schönsten Messer	
Dat.	dem edleren Grafen			
<i>Plural</i> (1st Form).		<i>Plural</i> (3d Form).	<i>Plural</i> (2d Form).	<i>Plural</i> (3d Form).
Nom.	} die edleren Grafen	jüngere Mädchen	meine schönsten Messer	bessere Weine
Acc.		jüngerer Mädchen	meiner schönsten Messer	besserer Weine
Gen.	der edleren Grafen	jüngeren Mädchen	meinen schönsten Messern	besseren Weinen
Dat.	den edleren Grafen			

Notice : Decline article and noun according to their own rules ; and the adjective according to Reference Page G.

## Exercise.

Decline, *Singular* and *Plural* : sein größter Freund, *his greatest friend* ; diese sanftere Frau, *this more gentle woman* ; strengstes Verbot, *most severe prohibition*.

## General Exercise.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Have you seen my most beautiful dog ?          | 2. I have never seen a more beautiful dog.            |
| 3. I have lost my dearest brother.                | 4. Have you ever (je) heard a falscher word ?         |
| 5. No, he is the falsest man in the town.         | 6. Has he given (to) you [any] fresher water ?        |
| 7. You ought (sollten) to sell the younger horse. | 8. He is (the) most proud ; she is (the) most gentle. |
| 9. We are at the most (see T., C.) twenty men.    | 10. I am astonished in the highest degree.            |



## REFERENCE-PAGE U.

## Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives.

I. Used with or without a noun after them ; in the latter case often with a Capital initial.

*Those marked with an asterisk (\*) are indeclinable.*

Declined like Adjectives :			
der eine, <i>the one</i>	alles, <i>everything</i>	jeder (-e, -es), <i>each (one)</i>	*nichts, <i>nothing</i>
der andere, <i>the other (one)</i>	alle, <i>all (people)</i>	kein (-er, -e, -es), <i>no (one)</i>	viel, <i>much (singular)</i>
der nämliche, <i>the same (one)</i>	beide, <i>both</i>	mancher, <i>many a (one)</i>	vieler, <i>many (men)</i>
die meisten, <i>most (men)</i>	einige, <i>several</i>	*mehr, <i>more</i>	wenig, <i>little (singular)</i>
	*etwas, <i>something</i>	mehrere, <i>several</i>	wenige, <i>few (men)</i>

Thus : Hier sind beide Knaben ; ich habe beide gesehen. *Here are both [the] boys ; I have seen both.*

*N.B.*—gar before nichts or wenig makes them emphatic, as : gar Nichts, *nothing at all*. irgend increases the indefinite, uncertain meaning of etwas ; also of Einer and Jemand. Er hat irgend Etwas gekauft, *he has bought some thing or other*.

II. Used as nouns, and never followed by a noun :

Jedermann, *every one* ; Jemand, *some one* ; man, *some one* ; Niemand, *no one*.

*N.B.*—man is the French *on* ; it stands for the English *we, they, somebody* ; or the Passive, and must have its verb in 3d pers. Singular, as : man sagt=*they say, one says, it is said, people are saying, etc.* one's, before a noun, is sein=*his*. *One loses one's money.* Man verliert sein Geld.

Notice : (i) Jedermann, Jemand and Niemand take -es for Genitive, and do not change for the other cases ; as : Er ist Jedermannes Freund, *he is everybody's friend*.

(ii) not anything cannot be rendered by nicht etwas ; nor not anybody by nicht Jemand ; they must be rendered by nothing=nichts, and nobody=Niemand.

## Adverbs.

Most English adverbs have exact equivalents in German, which the Dictionary will readily furnish. Here are mentioned a few only of each class :

## A. Pure Adverbs.

PLACE.	TIME.	AFFIRMATION.	NEGATION.	DOUBT.	QUANTITY.	INTERROGATION.
rechts, <i>to the right</i>	sonst, <i>formerly</i>	ja, <i>yes</i>	nein, <i>no</i>	vielleicht, <i>perhaps</i>	wenig, <i>little</i>	wo? <i>where</i>
links, <i>to the left</i>	jetzt, <i>now</i>	gewiß, <i>certainly</i>	keineswegs, <i>by no means</i>	schwerlich, <i>hardly</i>	ganz, <i>wholly</i>	wie viel? <i>how much</i>
da, <i>here</i>	einmal, <i>once</i>	freilich, <i>of course</i>	no means	wahrscheinlich, <i>probably</i>	genug, <i>enough</i>	wohin? <i>whither</i>
vorn, <i>in front</i>	seitdem, <i>since</i>	wahrlich, <i>indeed</i>	nicht, <i>not</i>		kaum, <i>scarcely</i>	woher? <i>whence</i>
außen, <i>outside</i>	noch, <i>still, yet</i>	jedenfalls, <i>certainly</i>	durchaus nicht, <i>by no means</i>	zweifelhaft, <i>doubtful</i>	ungefähr, <i>about</i>	[see p. 78.]

B. Adverbial Expressions. In these German is very rich ; a few only are given here :

PLACE : zu Hause, *at home* ; nach Hause, *home*.

TIME : eines Tages, *one day* ; von Zeit zu Zeit, *from time to time* ; heut zu Tage, *now-a-days*.

AFFIRMATION : auf jeden Fall, *in every case* ; ohne Zweifel, *without doubt*.

NEGATION : auf keinen Fall, *in no case*.

Notice : Most adjectives may be used as Adverbs of manner,—they are then invariable.

*N.B.*—With verbs of motion, where? is wohin? (*whither*) ; there is dahin or dorthin ; here is hierher or daber [*where is wo, only with verbs of rest*]. See also Ref.-Page O. Where is he? Wo ist er? but : Where is he going? Wohin geht er?

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE U.

On I. *Examples :*

1. *Most men love themselves.* Die meisten Menschen lieben sich selbst.
2. *Give him some thing or other, pray.* Geben Sie ihm irgend Etwas, bitte.
3. *Few are satisfied with little.* Wenige sind mit Wenig (or Wenigem) zufrieden.
4. *Many a one wished something impossible.* Mancher wünschte etwas Unmögliches.
5. *He has little, I have nothing at all.* Er hat wenig; ich habe gar Nichts.

*Exercise.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Several boys brought me (Dat.) beautiful presents.</li> <li>3. Something is better than nothing at all.</li> <li>5. No one likes this idle boy here.</li> <li>7. All blamed that vain man.</li> <li>9. The one and the other have seen him.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. The one or the other has done this.</li> <li>4. I have seen the same man several times (mal).</li> <li>6. We punished both boys too (zu) little.</li> <li>8. Many-a-one fears his own shadow.</li> <li>10. Much wishes often [for] more.</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

On II. *Examples :*

1. *He has not found anything there.* Er hat dort Nichts gefunden.
2. *It is every one's duty to do his best.* Es ist Jedermanns Pflicht sein Bestes zu thun.
3. *People say he has died in Africa.* Man sagt, er sei in Afrika gestorben.
4. *I cannot give you anything.* Ich kann Ihnen Nichts geben.
5. *Some one has stolen my little dog.* Jemand hat meinen kleinen Hund gestohlen.

*Exercise.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. I cannot give him anything to-day.</li> <li>3. No, I have not found anybody there.</li> <li>5. They say he has killed somebody.</li> <li>7. Nobody has lost money in this affair.</li> <li>9. Do not blame anybody.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Have you found anybody in the house?</li> <li>4. Everybody's friend is nobody's friend.</li> <li>6. People said, everybody loved that boy.</li> <li>8. I blame nobody.</li> <li>10. Will people say, he was a good man?</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

On Adverbs. *Examples :*

1. *To the right lies the church.* Rechts liegt die Kirche.
2. *He will probably be in school.* Er wird wahrscheinlich in der Schule sein.
3. *Where are you going? Where do you come from?* Wohin gehen Sie? Woher kommen Sie?
4. *We shall visit that town perhaps.* Wir werden jene Stadt vielleicht besuchen.
5. *I do not by any means know it.* Ich weiß (kenne) es keineswegs.

*Exercise.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. It lies in front, before the table.</li> <li>3. Formerly he was (was he) a very good man.</li> <li>5. How much has he bought at (auf, Dat.) the market?</li> <li>7. Now he is (is he) very happy and contented.</li> <li>9. He has never played since.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. He certainly will not do it.</li> <li>4. The boys have wholly forgotten it.</li> <li>6. He has not by any means bought much (see 5 immediately above, in <i>Examples</i>).</li> <li>8. Indeed; I do not know it.</li> <li>10. We shall certainly go about twenty miles to-day.</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

## REFERENCE-PAGE V.

## Relative Pronouns.

As in English so in German, Nouns or Pronouns are often accompanied by relative clauses, introduced by *who* or *which*, *welcher*, etc., *der*, etc.

These relative pronouns *welcher*, *der* must agree with their noun or pronoun (*i.e.* their *antecedent*) in *gender* and *number*; but in *case* (unless followed by a noun themselves) they are governed by the verb in their own clause, or its preposition.

	MASC. SINGULAR.	FEM. SINGULAR.	NEUTER SINGULAR.	PLURAL M. F. N.	ENGLISH.
Nom.	welcher or der	welche or die	welches or das	welche or die	{ <i>who, which</i> <i>whom, which</i>
Acc.	welchen or den				
Gen.	dessen	deren	dessen	deren	<i>of whom, of which</i>
Dat.	welchem or dem	welcher or der	welchem or dem	welchen or denen	<i>to whom, to which</i>

*Remember these three rules most carefully :*

- (i) Relative clauses do not in any way alter the order of words in the Principal Sentence, as :

$$\frac{1}{\text{Der Mann,}} \mid \text{welcher (or der) hier wohnt,} \mid \frac{2}{\text{gab}} \frac{3}{\text{dem Kind einen Apfel.}}$$
*The man, who lodges here, gave the child an apple.*

- (ii) The relative clause itself must *begin* with the relative pronoun (or its preposition, if there be one) and must *END* with its *ASSERTION* (*not* the Infinitive or Past Participle), as :

*Die Stadt, von der ich spreche, liegt in Böhmen.*

*The town, of which I speak, lies in Bohemia.*

*Der Fluß, dessen Ufer Sie so schön gefunden haben, ist der Rhein.*

*The river, the banks of which you have found so beautiful, is the Rhine.*

- (iii) Separable verbs *NEVER* separate in Relative clauses, as :

*Der Knabe, der zu spät aufstand, ist bestraft worden.*

*The boy, who got up too late, has been (become) punished.*

*Notice:* Except the sentence be very short, place the relative clause always immediately after its antecedent, as :

*Ich habe den Mann, welcher meinen Hund stahl, gestern in der Stadt gesehen.*

*I saw the man, who stole my dog, yesterday in the town.*

But we might say, finishing the *short* principal sentence first :

*Ich habe den Mann gesehen, welcher den Hund stahl.*

[*N.B.*—Among the oblique cases of *which* must be included some of the *interrogatives* on page 78 when used as *relatives*.]

## Correlative Pronouns.

The antecedents of Relative Pronouns are sometimes Demonstrative Pronouns, as : *derjenige*, etc., *derselbe*, etc., *der nämliche*, etc. These two kinds of pronouns, as : *derjenige*, *welcher* . . ., are sometimes styled Correlative; each of them is declined according to its own rules (see above, and Reference-Page S.), and dependent on its own verb, as :

*Ich liebe denjenigen, der mein Freund ist. I love that one (him) who is my friend.*

*N.B.*—*derjenige*, *welcher* is often contracted (only Nominative) into *wer*, as : *derjenige*, *welcher* *zufrieden* *ist*, *ist glücklich*, *He who is content, is happy*; better : *Wer zufrieden ist, ist glücklich*. Thus also "*was*" for *dasjenige*, *welches*.

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE V.

Remember to look to page 38 or 83 for the Order of Words, both in the Principal and the Relative Sentence; in the latter the *Assertion* stands last of all in its own clause. The order in the Principal Sentence is *not* in any way altered by the insertion of a Relative Clause. (*N.B.* The relative pronoun *must never* be omitted.)

I. Relatives. *Examples:*

1. Wir haben den Knaben nicht gesehen, **welcher** den Preis erhalten hat.  
*We have not seen the boy, who received the prize.*
2. Haben Sie die Zeitung, **welche** ich Ihnen schickte, noch nicht gelesen?  
*Have you not yet read the newspaper, [which] I sent you.*
3. Das Land, **dessen** Schönheiten Sie bewunderten, ist mein Vaterland.  
*The country, the beauties of which you admired, is my country.*
4. Der Mann in London, **dessen** Sie sich erinnern, ist letzte Woche gestorben.  
*The gentleman in London, whom you remember, died last week.*

*Exercise.*

1. We bought the picture, which (of which) you remembered; it is not dear.
2. Here is the dog, of which (von, Dat.) you speak; it (he) is very ugly.
3. Have you seen the man, whose house we bought yesterday?
4. The present, we have received to-day, is very beautiful.
5. Will you visit the land, the beauties of which every one praises?
6. That oak, the leaves of which are so green, is in our garden.
7. The town (which) we admired most, is Florence in Italy. (Florenz, Italien.)
8. Will they accept the rings which we brought them (Dat.)?

II. Correlatives. *Examples:*

1. Es ist das nämliche, **welches** ich so bewunderte. *It is the same which I admired so.*
2. Wir tadeln diejenigen, **welche** träge sind. *We blame those who are idle.*
3. Der Lehrer straft den, **der** dies gethan hat. *The teacher punishes him who did this.*
4. Er lobt denjenigen heute, **den** er gestern tadelte. *He praises him to-day whom he blamed yesterday.*

*Exercise.*

1. Will you see these books, or the one (that) which I have here?
2. Let us love what is beautiful and good [that which = was].
3. That one ought (sollte) to be happy, who is in good health.
4. I shall give this to the one, who is most diligent (am fleißigsten).
5. He who (wer) answers best, will receive the prize.
6. They remember (remember themselves of that which) what you have written.
7. The boys bought what was most costly.
8. Do not speak of what (that which) you ought to forget.



## REFERENCE-PAGE W.

## Conjunctions.

Besides pure conjunctions, as *and*, *und*, etc., many adverbs and some prepositions may be used as conjunctions. All these are here enumerated.

Conjunctions may affect the position of the **Assertion** in the sentence which they begin, *but do not interfere with any other parts*. We must distinguish three classes:

1. Conjunctions which **do not alter** the order of words at all, and allow of the separation of separable verbs in the Simple tenses. These are marked (1) in the alphabetical list below.

*Example:*

$\frac{1}{\text{Der Vater}} \frac{2}{\text{liest}}, \mid \frac{1}{\text{und}} \frac{2}{\text{die Mutter}} \frac{5}{\text{geht aus.}}$  *The father reads, and the mother is going out.*

2. Conjunctions which [like all adverbs or other parts of the sentence (except the Subject), when first in the sentence, see Reference-Page J., page 38] require the *Inversion*, i.e. **Assertion before Subject** in the clause they begin; these allow of the separation of separable verbs in the Simple Tenses. They are marked (2) in the alphabetical list. *Example:*

$\frac{1}{\text{Der Vater}} \frac{2}{\text{liest}}, \mid \frac{2}{\text{unterdessen}} \frac{1}{\text{geht}} \frac{5}{\text{die Mutter aus.}}$  *The father reads, meanwhile the mother goes out.*

3. Conjunctions which **throw the Assertion** in the clause they begin to the very **end** of it; these **do not** allow of separation of separable verbs in any case. They are marked (3) in the alphabetical list. *Example:*

$\frac{1}{\text{Der Vater}} \frac{2}{\text{liest}}, \mid \frac{1}{\text{wenn}} \frac{4}{\text{die Mutter am Abend}} \frac{4}{\text{in die Stadt}} \frac{2}{\text{ausgeht.}}$   
*The father reads, when the mother in the evening goes out into the town.*

*Notice.*—When the clause beginning with one of these (3) Conjunctions precedes the other, i.e. the Principal sentence, then in *this latter*, i.e. in the *Principal sentence*, the *Inversion* takes place [just as if it began with an adverb or other part of the sentence (except the Subject), see Reference-Page J., page 38]. *Example:*

$\frac{1}{\text{Wenn}} \frac{2}{\text{die Mutter ausgeht}}, \mid \frac{2}{\text{(so)}} \frac{1}{\text{liest der Vater.}}$  *If (when) the mother goes out, the father reads.*

## Alphabetical List of Conjunctions and Words used as Conjunctions.

*Notice.*—Those marked (1) **do not alter** the order; those marked (2) require simple **Inversion of Assertion and Subject**; those marked (3) **throw the Assertion** to the end of their clause. [See 1, 2, 3, above.]

(N.B.—Subj. means Subject.)

*according as* (3), *je nachdem* (Subj.) ..... (Assertion).

*after* (3), *nachdem* (Subj.) ..... (Assertion).

*also, too* (2), *auch* (Assertion) (Subj.) .....

*although* (3),  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{obgleich, obwohl, wenn (Subj.) auch,} \\ \text{ob schon, wie wohl, wenn (Subj.) schon,} \\ \text{wenn (Subj.) gleich.} \end{array} \right.$

*and* (1), *und* (Subj.) (Assertion, etc.).

*as if* (3), *als ob* \* *als wenn* \* *wie wenn* \*.

[\* These three require Imperfect Subjunctive.]

*as long as*... (3), *so lange (als)* (Subj.)...

*as often as*... (3), *so oft (als)* (Subj.)...

*as soon as*... (3), *so bald (als)* (Subj.)...



## REFERENCE-PAGE W.—continued.

## Alphabetical List of Conjunctions.—continued.

because, for (1), denn (Subj.) (Assertion).  
 because, as, since (cause) (3), weil, da...  
 before (3), bevor, ehe...  
 besides, moreover (2), außerdem, überdieß.  
 both... and... (1), sowohl (1st subj.) als auch.  
 but (1), aber, allein [jedoch, 1 or 2].  
 but (after negative) (1), sondern (with incomplete clause).  
 but that (3), (after negative or zu and adj.), als daß...  
 either (2), entweder... [or=oder (1)].  
 even if (3), selbst wenn...  
 furthermore (2), ferner...  
 how... (3), wie.  
 however (=as to the rest) (2), übrigens...  
 however (with adj.) (3) wie (adj.) (Subj.) auch...  
 however much (3) { so sehr (Subj.) auch...  
                                   { wenn (Subj.) auch noch so...  
 if (3), wenn\* { requires its verb, if in a **past tense**,  
                                   { to be in the *Imperfect Subjunctive*.  
 in case (that) (3), falls, wofern...  
 indeed ('t is true) (2), zwar... [aber (1)].  
 in order to (Infinitive) (3), um (Obj.), zu (Infinitive).  
 instead of (...ing) (3), anstatt daß (Subj.).  
 just as (Subj.) (3), sowie, gleichwie...  
 lest (=so that not) (3), damit (Subj.) nicht...  
 likewise (2), dergleichen (Assert.) (Subj.).  
 meanwhile (2), unterdessen...  
 { notwithstanding (2), dessenungeachtet...  
 { nevertheless (2), nichtsdestoweniger...  
 nor (2), noch, auch (Assert.) (Subj.) nicht...  
 not only... (2) { nicht nur..., nicht bloß...  
                                   { nicht allein...  
 [but also (1)], sondern (Subj.) (Assert.) auch.

notwithstanding (3), ungeachtet daß...  
 on the other hand (2), dagegen, hingegen...  
 or (1), oder.  
 otherwise (else) (2), sonst...  
 partly... (2), theils...  
 provided that (3), vorausgesetzt, daß...  
 rather (2), vielmehr...  
 scarcely (2), kaum...  
 since (time) (3), seit or seitdem...  
 so (=then) (2), so...  
 sometimes... sometimes (2), bald... bald...  
 so that (3), so daß, damit\* (with Subjunctive).  
 still (yet) (2), doch..., dennoch..., gleichwohl.  
 that (=so that) (3), daß.  
 the (comparative), the (comparative), Notice carefully:  
       (3) je (comparative)..., desto (2) (comparative)...  
 then... (2) dann..., da.  
 therefore (2) { also, daher, darum  
                                   { deshalb, demnach  
 thus (2) { folglich, mithin  
                                   { deswegen [all (2)].  
 unless (3) { wofern (Subj.) nicht...  
                                   { ohne daß..., wenn (Subj.) nicht.  
 unless (1), außer\* (Subj.) (Assertion in Subjunctive).  
 until (3) { bis, bis daß...  
                                   { (after negative), als bis...  
 when (with Imperfect Tense) (3), als...  
 when (with Pres. or Future) (3), wenn, wann.  
 whether (3), ob (with Subjunctive).  
 while (3), während, indem.  
 whilst (3), während.

[N.B.—To the above must be added in class (3) all the indirect interrogatives; see Reference-Page X.]

The Student will notice that many of the above are Adverbs, and some Prepositions, but all used as Conjunctions.

## Most common Conjunctions.

- 1st Class : und, aber, oder, denn, [jedoch], sondern (after negative).  
 2d Class : zwar, sonst, also, darum, folglich, deshalb, unterdessen.  
 3d Class : als, bis, damit, seit, ob, wenn, daß, weil, während.

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE W.

[For General Sequence of Words in *all* sentences see page 38 or 83.]1 Conjunctions marked (1) : **No alteration** in sequence of words. *Examples :*

1. *My father is rich, but my uncle is a very poor man.*  
 1.  $\frac{1}{\text{Mein Vater ist reich,}}$   $\frac{2}{\text{aber}}$   $\frac{5}{\text{(allein, jedoch) mein Onkel ist ein sehr armer Mann.}}$
2. *He cannot come now, for he has lost all his money.*  
 2.  $\frac{1}{\text{Er kann jetzt nicht kommen,}}$   $\frac{2}{\text{denn}}$   $\frac{3}{\text{er hat}}$   $\frac{6}{\text{all sein Geld verloren.}}$
3. *My friend has sent me these letters, and I am very thankful to him.*  
 3.  $\frac{1}{\text{Mein Freund hat mir diese Briefe geschickt,}}$   $\frac{2}{\text{und}}$   $\frac{3}{\text{ich bin}}$   $\frac{5}{\text{ihm sehr dankbar.}}$

*Exercise on (1).*

- Will you go with your brother, **or** will you remain at home (zu Hause)?
- He is not going to Africa, **but** his brother will go there next year (nächstes Jahr).
- This little boy has not brought his books, **but** those of his friend.
- You cannot go with me, my child, **for** I must go alone (allein).
- Will the enemies destroy **both** the town **and also** the villages?
- My friends, we must obey (Dat.) the king **or** the emperor (Dat.).

2. Conjunctions marked (2) : **Assertion before Subject** in the clause they introduce.*Examples :*

1. *He has no friends ; besides, he is not a rich man.*  
 1.  $\frac{1}{\text{Er hat keine Freunde;}}$   $\frac{2}{\text{überdies}}$   $\frac{3}{\text{ist er nicht}}$   $\frac{5}{\text{ein reicher Mann.}}$
2. *He told them to go ; nevertheless they remained in the house.*  
 2.  $\frac{1}{\text{Er befahl ihnen zu gehen,}}$   $\frac{2}{\text{dennoch}}$   $\frac{3}{\text{(nichtsdestoweniger) blieben sie}}$   $\frac{4}{\text{im Hause.}}$
3. *The enemy defeated us last year, on the other hand we gained a victory now.*  
 3.  $\frac{1}{\text{Der Feind besiegte uns letztes Jahr,}}$   $\frac{2}{\text{dagegen}}$   $\frac{3}{\text{gewannen wir}}$   $\frac{4^*}{\text{jetzt}}$   $\frac{3}{\text{einen Sieg.}}$

\* N.B.—Adverbs of time sometimes precede the object.

*Exercise on (2).*

- He died soon, **otherwise** he would now be a rich man.
- They are not our friends, still they are just towards (gegen, Acc.) us.
- That little boy brought us the newspaper, then (dann) he went away (fort).
- 'Tis true, he is not a clever boy, **yet** (dennoch) he writes his exercises well (gut).
- Not only** was the English general brave, **but** (1) he was also cautious.
- We wrote to him last (letzte) week, **therefore** he went to Liverpool.

3. Conjunctions marked (3) : **Assertion at the very end** of their clause. *Examples :*

1. *We shall not praise him, as long as he is such a lazy boy.*  
 1.  $\frac{1}{\text{Wir werden ihn nicht loben,}}$   $\frac{2}{\text{so lange (als) er}}$   $\frac{3}{\text{ein so träger Knabe ist.}}$
2. *You have believed this although your friend has told you the contrary.*  
 2.  $\frac{1}{\text{Sie haben dieses geglaubt,}}$   $\frac{2}{\text{obgleich}}$   $\frac{3}{\text{Ihr Freund Ihnen}}$   $\frac{6}{\text{das Gegentheil gesagt hat.}}$

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE W.—continued.

## Exercise on (3).

1. Will you go on (auf, Acc.) the ice, notwithstanding that your friend has warned you?
2. We are doing this, in order to try his courage.
3. Write to (an, Acc.) him, so that he may know (wissen) the whole affair.
4. You do not know (wissen) how much we have loved that unfortunate man.
5. These boys played (were playing), whilst those ladies wrote their letters.
6. Will you wait, until the whole town knows (of) this affair (Acc.)?
7. I would not have believed it, if he had not shown me the letter.
8. These men would not have (been) gone, unless we had forced them.
9. He will do it, provided that you pay him well.
10. They have been ill since I saw them last (zuletzt).

## General Sentences on the Conjunctions and Relatives.

Examples: [See Notice on page 74, attached to No. 3.]

1. Wenn <sup>1</sup>der <sup>2</sup>Schnee schmilzt, | so <sup>2</sup>wird <sup>1</sup>der Frühling, | auf den <sup>1</sup>wir <sup>2</sup>hoffen, | <sup>4</sup>balb <sup>7</sup>kommen.  
*When the snow melts, the spring, for which we hope, will come soon.*
2. Entweder <sup>2</sup>wird <sup>1</sup>der Mann <sup>7</sup>kommen, | oder <sup>1</sup>ich <sup>2</sup>werde <sup>3</sup>ihn <sup>7</sup>strafen.  
*Either the man will come, or I shall punish him.*
3. <sup>1</sup>Wer <sup>2</sup>kann <sup>7</sup>wissen, | <sup>1</sup>ob <sup>4</sup>der Angeklagte, | <sup>2</sup>der <sup>5</sup>hier <sup>2</sup>steht, | <sup>5</sup>schuldig <sup>2</sup>ist oder nicht?  
*Who can know (it), whether the accused, who is standing here, is guilty or not?*
4. Während <sup>1</sup>der Feind <sup>3</sup>die Stadt, | <sup>1</sup>die wir <sup>2</sup>lieben, | <sup>2</sup>zerstörte, | <sup>2</sup>gewannen wir <sup>1</sup>einen <sup>3</sup>Sieg.  
*Whilst the enemy was destroying the town, which we love, we gained a victory.*
5. Als <sup>1</sup>die Nachricht <sup>4</sup>hier <sup>2</sup>ankam, | <sup>2</sup>war <sup>1</sup>der Soldat <sup>4</sup>schon <sup>6</sup>verurtheilt.  
*When the news arrived here, the soldier was already condemned.*

## Exercise.

Be careful to examine which is the "Principal Sentence;" it never begins with a conjunction; except so (not translated in English). It is printed in italics here:—

1. *The enemy, who gained this victory, would have fled, if we had been more cautious.*
2. *Whilst you (were writing) wrote this letter, he was reading the newspaper.*
3. *I shall wait, until the boy, whom I sent to (auf, Acc.) the post, comes back.*
4. *Have you seen the letter, which my son wrote, or have you not seen it (ihn) yet?*
5. *When the news, which we expected, arrived, we were no longer (nicht mehr) there.*
6. *We sent you a letter, so that you might (sollten) not expect us.*
7. *Scarcely was the door opened, when (so) the boys rushed in (hinein'stürzen).*
8. *We hoped, you would do this, because you have been our friend hitherto (bisher).*

## REFERENCE-PAGE X.

Indirect Speech (*Oratio Obliqua*).

A statement, request, or command, and a question may be mentioned, as it was uttered, *i.e.* direct (*Oratio Recta*), as :

**Statement :** ich sagte dir : „ Er hat es gethan,“

*I told you : “ He has done it.”*

**Request :** er bat ihn : „ Gib mir ein Buch!“

*He asked him : “ Give me a book !”*

**Command :** der Vater befahl : „ Geh in's Haus!“

*The father commanded : “ Go into the house.”*

**Question :** Sie fragten mich : „ Hast du das Geld?“

*You asked me : “ Have you the money ?”*

If the direct words are not used, all these become *Indirect Speech*.

*The following Rules hold good in all Indirect Speech.*

1. The order in the Indirect Speech clause is unchanged, if it is *not* introduced by any conjunction, *but* if a conjunction begins the clause, the assertion, *i.e.* the *conjugated verb or auxiliary*, is thrown to the very end of it.

2. The *Subjunctive* is used in the dependent clause, particularly if it is *not* introduced by a conjunction [unless the quotation is mentioned as an emphatic fact ; then the Indicative may be used in some cases].

3. The *Present Subjunctive* is preferred to the *Imperfect*, particularly in the third person Singular [unless the action referred to is emphasised as being a past action ; then the Perfect is used].

4. Always **complete** the Principal Sentence entirely, before beginning the clause containing the Indirect Speech.

**Statements :** either not introduced by a conjunction, or introduced by **daß, that**, as :

ich sagte dir, er **habe** es gethan ; or : ..., daß er es gethan **habe** (or **hat**).

**Requests or Commands :** either not introduced by a conjunction, or introduced by **daß, that**. The dependent clause generally contains **sollen, ought**, as :

er bat ihn, daß er ihm ein Buch **gebe** ; or : ..., er **solle** ihm ein Buch geben.

der Vater befahl, daß sie in's Haus **gehen sollten** ; or : ..., sie **sollten** in's Haus **gehen**.

**Questions :** always introduced by **ob, whether, if** ; or by one of the *interrogative conjunctions* below ; all these throw the assertion to the end of their clause, as :

Sie fragten mich, **ob** ich Geld **habe** (or : **hätte**). *You asked me whether I had money.*

**Notice.**—All interrogatives assume in *Oratio Obliqua* the force of Conjunctions.

*Such Interrogative Conjunctions are :*

[*N.B.* Those beginning with **wo**... must be looked upon as oblique cases of the relative pronoun *which*.]

wann... ? <i>when... ?</i>	wie lange... ? <i>how long... ?</i>	wohin... ? <i>whither... ?</i>	worunter... ? <i>under which... ?</i>
wer... ? <i>who... ?</i>	wo... ? <i>where... ?</i>	womit... ? <i>wherewith... ?</i>	wovon... ? <i>of what... ?</i>
warum... ? <i>why... ?</i>	wobei... ? <i>whereat... ?</i>	woran... ? <i>whereat... ?</i>	wie... ? <i>how ?</i>
was... ? <i>what... ?</i>	wodurch... ? <i>whereby... ?</i>	worauf... ? <i>upon what... ?</i>	or : auf welche Weise... ?
weßhalb... ? <i>why... ?</i>	woher... ? <i>whence... ?</i>	worin... ? <i>wherein... ?</i>	how ? <i>In what manner... ?</i>
weßwegen... ? <i>why... ?</i>			was für ein ? was für ?
wie viel... ? <i>how much... ?</i>			what sort of... ?

as : Er fragte, **wie lange** ich dort gewesen sei. *He asked how long I had been there.*

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE X.

## STATEMENTS.

(Read the Four Rules on page 78 very carefully.)

1.  $\frac{1}{\text{Der}} \frac{2}{\text{junge Mann}} \frac{3}{\text{sagte mir,}} \mid \frac{1}{\text{er}} \frac{2}{\text{habe den}} \frac{3}{\text{Schüler}} \frac{4}{\text{nicht}} \frac{6}{\text{gesehen.}}$   
*The young man told me, he had not seen the scholar.*
2.  $\frac{2}{\text{Glauben}} \frac{1}{\text{Sie,}} \mid \frac{1}{\text{daß}} \frac{1}{\text{er}} \frac{3}{\text{diese Aufgabe}} \frac{4}{\text{allein}} \frac{6}{\text{geschrieben}} \frac{2}{\text{habe? (hat.)}}$   
*Do you believe, that he has written this exercise alone?*
3.  $\frac{2}{\text{Haben}} \frac{1}{\text{Sie}} \frac{6}{\text{erwähnt,}} \mid \frac{1}{\text{daß}} \frac{1}{\text{diese}} \frac{4}{\text{Soldaten}} \frac{6}{\text{in Indien}} \frac{2}{\text{gewesen}} \frac{2}{\text{sind}} \text{ (a fact).}$   
*Have you mentioned, that these soldiers have been in India?*

## Exercise.

1. It is said (Man sagt) (that) this young man has (is) become very rich.
2. We do not believe, (that) the teacher will punish those boys to-day.
3. I have already mentioned, that the ship will sail (on (am, Dat.)) next Monday.
4. Who can say, (that) these men have not fought very bravely?
5. Do you deny, that our garden is larger than yours?
6. The messenger reported that the high tower had fallen down (Conj. with sein).

## REQUESTS OR COMMANDS.

1.  $\frac{1}{\text{Wer}} \frac{2}{\text{hat}} \frac{3}{\text{Ihnen}} \frac{6}{\text{befohlen,}} \mid \frac{1}{\text{Sie}} \frac{2}{\text{sollen in die Stadt}} \frac{4}{\text{gehen?}} \text{ [daß } \frac{1}{\text{Sie}} \frac{2}{\text{... sollen.}} \text{]}$   
*Who has ordered you, to go into the town?*
2.  $\frac{3}{\text{Was}} \frac{2}{\text{befiehlt der Hauptmann?}} \mid \frac{1}{\text{Er}} \frac{2}{\text{befiehlt,}} \mid \frac{1}{\text{daß}} \frac{1}{\text{die Stadt}} \frac{6}{\text{zerstört}} \frac{2}{\text{werde.}}$   
*What does the captain command? He commands, that the town be destroyed.*
3.  $\frac{1}{\text{Er}} \frac{2}{\text{rief mir}} \frac{3}{\text{zu,}} \mid \frac{1}{\text{ich}} \frac{2}{\text{solle keine}} \frac{3}{\text{Äpfel mehr}} \frac{4}{\text{nehmen.}}$   
*He shouted to me not to take any more apples.*

## Exercise.

1. I told you, you should (sollten) remain where you were.
2. His command was, that we should allow the men to enter (einzutreten).
3. Will you order me to punish him for (für) this? (ich sollte ... strafen).
4. He commands me (Dat.) not to lend you my book (see 3 above).
5. We shouted to them (that they should) to come here (herkommen) at once.

## QUESTIONS.

1.  $\frac{2}{\text{Wissen}} \frac{1}{\text{Sie,}} \mid \frac{4}{\text{auf welche Weise}} \frac{1}{\text{er}} \frac{3}{\text{es}} \frac{2}{\text{tat,}} \mid \frac{1}{\text{oder womit}} \frac{6}{\text{es}} \frac{3}{\text{getan wurde?}}$   
*Do you know, in what manner he did it, or wherewith it was done?*
2. *I scarcely know where he is.*  $\frac{1}{\text{Ich}} \frac{2}{\text{weiß kaum,}} \mid \frac{4}{\text{wo}} \frac{1}{\text{er}} \frac{2}{\text{ist.}}$

## Exercise.

1. We asked them, where they had (were) been the whole day.
2. The scholar asked, whether the Rhine was (is) in France?
3. They knew not, how (in what manner) the boy had done this yesterday.
4. He knows, what (wovon) the teacher is-speaking about now (söben).



## REFERENCE-PAGE Y.

## Interjections.

Practically speaking, interjections, or elliptical phrases used as such, are unlimited in number; and it is not easy to give exact equivalents of the interjections in two languages. Moreover, as in English, certain parts of a country have always certain characteristic exclamations. The following are the most common, with their approximate English equivalents:—

<i>Ah! Ah! Ei! Oh! Aha!</i>	<i>Fie! Pfui! Schändlich!</i>	<i>Help! Hülf! Zu Hülf!</i>	<i>'S death! Zum Teufel!</i>
<i>Agreed! Topp! Es gilt!</i>	<i>Forwards! Vorwärts!</i>	<i>Humpf! Em! Hem!</i>	<i>Stop! Halt! Halt da!</i>
<i>Alas! Ach! Leider!</i>	<i>Gently! Leise! Sachte!</i>	<i>Hurrah! Hurrah! Juchhe!</i>	<i>Take care! Achtung!</i>
<i>All right! Gut! Recht!</i>	<i>Get away! Weg! Fort!</i>	<i>Hush! St! Stille!</i>	<i>— Vorsicht!</i>
<i>Come! Frisch! Run denn!</i>	<i>— Gehen Sie mir!</i>	<i>Huzza! Hei!a!</i>	<i>Thank God! Gott sei Dank!</i>
<i>Attention! Achtung!</i>	<i>God be praised! Gottlob!</i>	<i>Indeed! Wirklich! Rein!</i>	<i>Tally ho! Trara!</i>
<i>Bang! Piff, Paff!</i>	<i>— Gott sei Dank!</i>	<i>I say! Holla! Hier!</i>	<i>Very well! Sehr gut!</i>
<i>By Jove! Gott! Himmel!</i>	<i>Good bye! Adieu!</i>	<i>Long live..! Es lebe (Nom.)!</i>	<i>Well! Run! Wohlan!</i>
<i>— Gott im Himmel!</i>	<i>— Auf Wiedersehen!</i>	<i>Now then! Run! Also!</i>	<i>Well I never! Merkwürdig!</i>
<i>Down! (to a dog) Leg'dich!</i>	<i>Good God! Gott!</i>	<i>O! Oh! Ah! (admiration)</i>	<i>Woe! Wehe!</i>
<i>— Kusch' dich!</i>	<i>Good health! Zur Gesundheit!</i>	<i>— An! (pain)</i>	<i>Ugh! Uh! Pfui!</i>
<i>Faith! Bei meiner Treu!</i>	<i>Hail! Heil! Willkommen!</i>	<i>O dear! Oh weh! Ach!</i>	<i>Zounds! Donnerwetter!</i>
<i>— Auf Treue!</i>	<i>Hallo! Holla! Was?!</i>	<i>On! Vorwärts!</i>	<i>— Verdammt!</i>

## I. True Impersonals:

*Impersonal Verbs.*

## (a) Applying to atmospheric phenomena:

*es donnert, it thunders; es hagelt, it hails; es schneit, it snows* | These are regularly conjugated, but of  
*es blizt, it lightens; es regnet, it rains; es tagt, it dawns* | course have only 3d person singular.

(b) *sein, to be; and geben, to give*, are often used impersonally.

(i) *es ist, there is; es sind, there are; es war, there was; es waren, there were*, etc.

This is used with a *Nominative* after it; it applies to things, etc., taken in a *limited sense*, and generally with the “place where” mentioned and referring to a small limit. *N.B.*—In questions, and in the *Inversion*, *es* is omitted, as: *Ist ein Knabe hier? Es waren drei Vögel in dem Häuschen.*

(ii) *es giebt, there is; es gab, there was*, without a plural form, is always followed by the *Accusative*, and applies to things, etc. taken in a *large or unlimited sense*, either with no “place where” mentioned, or referring to a very large limit. *N.B.*—*es* in *es giebt* is never omitted, as: *es giebt Leute, welche . . . There are people who . . . Hat es keinen Krieg gegeben? Was there no war?*

## II. Other verbs used impersonally:

(a) Ordinary verbs, as: *es fängt an, it begins*, etc.

(b) Verbs with reflected pronoun (*not* true reflexive verbs). [See Reference-Page Q.]

(i) With accusative of personal pronoun, as: *es freut mich (dich, ihn) I (thou, he), rejoice (it rejoices me).*

(ii) With dative of personal pronoun, as: *es gelingt mir, it succeeds to me=I succeed.*

*Notice* the impersonal constructions: *es gieng ein Mann*, instead of *ein Mann gieng*, and in the *Passive*: *es wird gesungen*, instead of *man singt*.

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE Y.

## Exercise on the Interjections.

1. Forwards ! Soldiers ! There is the enemy ! Attention ! Hurrah !
2. Woe ! The enemy has entered the town ! (are into the town broken (ein'brechen).
3. He said : Well I never ! and went to the poor horse (gieng zu, Dat.).
4. Good God ! you will surely (doch) not kill the unfortunate man.
5. Fie ! do not do that. Faith ! It would be shameful.
6. Hail ! Welcome, our emperor in (Dat.) our town !
7. All people (Leute) cried : Long live our good king !
8. " Help ! " cried the poor woman. God be praised ! you came in time.
9. When he saw his dog, he cried to him (ihm zu) : Down ! Lie down !
10. 'S death ! you should have (hätten . . . sollen) gone forwards.

## On the Impersonal Verbs.

*Examples.*

1. *Do you see, how it snows !* Sehen Sie, wie es schneit !
2. *Yesterday it rained the whole day !* Gestern regnete es den ganzen Tag.
3. *It is beginning to snow now.* Es fängt jetzt an zu schneien.
4. *There was no boy in school.* Es war kein Knabe in der Schule.
5. *There have been men who said that.* Es hat Leute gegeben, die das sagten.
6. *Do you rejoice that he is ill ?* Freut es Sie, daß er krank ist ?
7. *No, I am very sorry.* Nein, es tut mir sehr leid.
8. *In Germany they dance much.* In Deutschland wird viel getanzt.

*Exercise.*

1. See, how it lightens, and do you hear how it thunders ?
2. Day is dawning, the sun will rise soon.
3. Was there a bird in your cage ? [*N.B.* es is dropped in Questions.]
4. In France they drink much wine. [*N.B.* es is dropped in the Inversion.] (See 8 above.)
5. There were people who did not believe that I had been (was) in America.
6. Hurrah ! I succeeded (it succeeded to me) in catching the bird (zu fangen).
7. Some men went to that village (say : There (es) went some men into).
8. God be praised ! There is (it gives, with Accusative) no war.
9. There were many people in the theatre (Es waren . . .).
10. We rejoice (it rejoices us) that you have succeeded (that it to you succeeded is).

## On the Assertion and Predicate.

*Special note on the exact meaning of these terms as used in this Grammar.*

In order to facilitate the study of "Sequence of Words" in every German sentence, the terms "Assertion" and "Predicate" are used here in a sense somewhat departing from that which they usually have in English Grammar. The student must therefore make himself thoroughly familiar with the meaning of these two words in German Syntax.

**A.** The **Assertion** is always the conjugated Verb of the sentence, therefore in all tenses, formed by the aid of an auxiliary, it is this auxiliary which is called "the Assertion." Thus in *der Knabe spielte gestern im Garten*, the verb **spielte** is the Assertion; but in *der Knabe hat gestern im Garten gespielt*, the auxiliary **hat** expresses Person, Tense, Number, and Mood; and is therefore the Assertion now.

The Assertion is the only moveable part of the sentence; its ordinary place is No. 2., *i.e.* immediately after the Subject; but we see (page 83) that it can change its place, so as to be at the very beginning (*i.e.* immediately after the conjunction), or at the very end of a sentence. These are its only possible changes.

In the following sentence the *Assertion* of every clause is printed in black type :—*Der Bote kam in mein Zimmer, | aber ich war ausgegangen, | denn es war sehr schönes Wetter; | deßhalb hatte er den Brief, | welchen er mir überbrachte, | auf meinem Tische zurückgelassen, | wo ich denselben richtig fand, | als ich von meinem Spaziergang zurückkehrte | .*

**B.** The **Predicate**, in the sense used here, can only occur ((*a.*) below excepted) when the Verb of any sentence is one of the following :—*sein, to be; werden, to become; scheinen, to seem; heißen, to be called; bleiben, to remain; and some Passive verbs, as: genannt werden, to be called; erwählt werden, to be chosen.* The Predicate *must* always be : (*a.*) a Substantive in the Nominative; (*b.*) an Adjective, always invariable; (*c.*) the separated prefix of a separable verb, used without auxiliary and in a principal sentence.

In the following sentence the *Predicate* of every clause is printed in black type :—*Karl war letzten Abend sehr träge | ; er scheint überhaupt kein fleißiger Knabe zu sein | ; er schreibt oft seine Aufgaben einfach ab, | und ist daher gewöhnlich der Letzte in seiner Klasse | ; doch hoffen wir | , er werde nicht immer so thöricht bleiben | .*

The above explanations should be carefully studied.

## REFERENCE-PAGE Z.

*Complete Rules on the Sequence of Words in a Sentence.*

Subject to some modifications for the sake of emphasising a word by not placing it in its ordinary position, the following is the order of words in *every* sentence :

Remember : The Assertion (No. 2) is the *only moveable* member of any sentence.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.
SUBJECT.	ASSERTION.	OBJECTS.	ADVERBIALS.	PREDICATE.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	INFINITIVES.
Noun or Pronoun, <i>Nominative</i> of Verb ; together with their attributes, or their relative clauses.	The <i>conjugated</i> Verb ; or, Auxiliary in Compound Tenses.	Nouns or Pronouns in oblique Cases ; with their attributes or their relative clauses. If there be more than one Object, put Dative first ; also put Pronoun before Noun ; Person before Thing ; shortest Pronoun first ; Words governed by any Prepositions last. The reflexive Pronoun of reflexive Verbs stands also in place 3.	Put <i>Time</i> first ; often before the Objects even. Put <i>Place</i> last ; often after the Predicate even. The Adverb : <i>nicht</i> generally precedes the words which it negatives, especially other adverbs ; except in <i>nach nicht</i> = <i>not yet</i> .	Only occurs if in connection with : <i>werden, to become ; scheinen, to seem ; heißen, to be called ; bleiben, to remain ;</i> and some passives, as : <i>genannt werden, to be called ; erwählt werden, to be appointed.</i> The separated prefix of a separable verb becomes also a Predicate, and stands in place 5.	Invariable. If there are two Past Participles, that of the Auxiliary stands last.	Invariable. If there are two Infinitives, that of the Auxiliary stands last. — <i>zu</i> is never separated from its Infinitive.

There are only three classes of Sentences in German, viz. : Principal, Relative, Subordinate. In all these the above order 1, (2), 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 holds good, with the one exception of the Assertion (No. 2).

**A.** This ASSERTION IS PLACED BEFORE THE SUBJECT (No. 1) in the following cases :

- (a) If the sentence is a question (or a command, expressed without *sollen*).
- (b) If a conjunction marked (2) on pages 74, 75, or any member of the sentence, *not* the subject (*i.e.* a 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 above), or a subordinate clause, precede the Principal Sentence.
- (c) If in conditional sentences the conjunction *wenn* is omitted.

**B.** The ASSERTION (No. 2) IS THROWN TO THE VERY END OF THE SENTENCE :

- (a) In *all subordinate clauses*, introduced by a conjunction marked (3) on pages 74, 75.
- (b) In *all relative clauses*, introduced always by : *welcher* or *der* ; *wer*, *was*, and the oblique cases of these, to which belong : *worin*, *worauf*, *wobei*, *womit*, *wodurch*, *wofür*, *woran*, *wozu* ; *wie*, *auf welche Weise*, *wann*, *wo*, *warum*, etc. [For complete list see page 78 at foot.]

*Remember* : Nos. 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 are NOT influenced by the change of place of the Assertion, nor by any relative or subordinate clauses inserted in the body of the sentence.

*N.B.*—1. Separable Verbs *cannot* separate in relative or subordinate clauses.

2. Subordinate clauses, when not introduced by any conjunction, have the assertion in its proper place, *i.e.* No. 2.
3. In relative clauses introduced by the Nominative case of the relative pronoun, this latter is the subject itself.
4. Conjunctions do not count in the sequence of words, nor do Interjections.



## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE Z.

In analysing a sentence, remember carefully :

The *Subject* is got in answer to the question : "Who?" or "What?" (coupled with the verb). It is *always* in the *Nominative case*, and generally enlarged by article, adjective, Attributive Genitive or Relative Clause.

The *Object*. (a) The *direct object* answers to the question : "Whom?" or "What?" (coupled with the verb). It is *always* in the *Accusative*, but is also generally enlarged like the subject.

(b) The *indirect object* answers the question : "To whom?" "By whom?" "With whom?" etc., and is either *Genitive* or *Dative* (unless after a preposition governing accusative).

The *Predicate* is got in answer to the question : "What is (becomes, is called) the subject?" It is *Nominative case* if a noun ; and invariable if an adjective. The separated *prefix* of separable verbs, in Simple Tenses and Principal Sentences, is also a Predicate.

The *Assertion* is always the *conjugated* verb or auxiliary ; **never** the Infinitive, **nor** the Past Participle.

*Example of Analysis* of a Complex Sentence :

Analyse :  $\frac{1}{\text{Der arme Mann}} \frac{2}{\text{hoffte}}, \mid \text{daß} \frac{1}{\text{Sie}} \frac{3}{\text{ihm}} \frac{3}{\text{Etwas}} \frac{7}{\text{geben}} \frac{2}{\text{würden}}, \mid \text{und} \frac{1}{\text{er}} \frac{2}{\text{fragte}} \frac{3}{\text{mich}}, \mid \text{ob} \frac{1}{\text{ich}} \frac{3}{\text{Ihnen das Buch}}, \mid \text{welches} \frac{1}{\text{er}} \frac{3}{\text{mir}} \frac{6}{\text{anvertraut}} \frac{2}{\text{hatte}}, \mid \frac{6}{\text{übergeben}} \frac{2}{\text{hätte}}.$

*General Analysis.*

**Der arme Mann hoffte** : is the 1st Principal Sentence, order according to Reference-Page Z.

**daß Sie ihm Etwas geben würden** : Subordinate clause, enlargement of *hoffen*, introduced by *daß*, a conjunction of 3d class (see pp. 74, 75), therefore Assertion, *würden*, at its end.

**und er fragte mich** : is the 2d Principal Sentence, joined by *und*, a Conjunction of 1st class, therefore no alteration in the order.

**ob ich Ihnen das Buch [ . . . ] übergeben hätte** : Subordinate clause, enlargement of *fragen*, introduced by *ob*, a conjunction of the 3d class, therefore Assertion, *hätte*, at its end.

**welches er mir anvertraut hatte** : a Relative clause, attributive to *das Buch* ; has the Assertion *hatte* at its end like all relative clauses (see Reference-Page V), but does not interfere with the order in the sentence in which it is interpolated.

*Minute Analysis.*

**der arme Mann** : Subject (with attribute) of the 1st Principal Sentence ; **hoffte** : its assertion. **Sie** : Subject of 1st subordinate clause ; **ihm** : its indirect object ; **Etwas** : its direct object (Accusative). **geben** : its Infinitive ; **würden** : its Assertion. **er** : Subject of 2d Principal sentence. **fragte** : its Assertion ; **mich** : its direct object. **ich** : Subject of the 2d subordinate clause ; **Ihnen** : its indirect object ; **das Buch**, its direct Object [**welches** : relat. Pronoun, acc. Neut. ; **er** : Subject of the relative clause ; **mir** : its indirect object ; **anvertraut** : its Past Participle ; **hatte** : its Assertion]. **übergeben** : Past Participle of the 2d Subord. Clause ; **hätte** : its Assertion (Subjunctive). (Analyse in the same way, *vivâ voce*, any sentences met with in Translation, first giving a *general analysis*, and then a *minute one* of every word.)



## GENERAL EXERCISES.

Analyse the following, giving reason for position of Assertion in every instance as shown on the preceding page.

1.  $\frac{a\ 1}{\text{Der General}} \frac{a\ 2}{\text{befahl}} \frac{a\ 3}{\text{den Soldaten}}, \left| \frac{b\ 1}{\text{sie}} \frac{b\ 2}{\text{sollten}} \frac{b\ 3}{\text{das Dorf}}, \left| \frac{c\ 1}{\text{welches}} \frac{c\ 4}{\text{auf dem Hügel}} \frac{c\ 2}{\text{stand}}, \right| \frac{b\ 7}{\text{angreifen}}, \right|$   
 $\frac{d\ 1}{\text{denn er}} \frac{d\ 2}{\text{sagte}}, \left| \frac{e\ 1}{\text{das}} \frac{e\ 2}{\text{sei}} \frac{e\ 5}{\text{der Schlüssel}} \frac{e\ 5}{\text{der Stellung}} \frac{e\ 5}{\text{der Feinde}}, \left| \frac{f\ 1}{\text{die}} \frac{f\ 4}{\text{dahinter}} \frac{f\ 2}{\text{lagen}} \right|$

The general commanded the soldiers to attack the village, which stood on the hill; for he said that was the key of the position of the enemy, who were lying behind it.

2.  $\frac{a\ 1}{\text{Während}} \frac{a\ 4}{\text{die Knaben}} \frac{a\ 2}{\text{in dem Hofe}} \frac{a\ 2}{\text{spielten}}, \left| \frac{b\ 2}{\text{kam}} \frac{b\ 1}{\text{ein Bettler}} \frac{b\ 4}{\text{in das Haus}} \right| \frac{c\ 2}{\text{und stahl}} \frac{c\ 3}{\text{die Kleider}}, \left| \right|$   
 $\frac{d\ 4}{\text{welche}} \frac{d\ 2}{\text{im Zimmer}} \frac{d\ 2}{\text{hiengen}}, \left| \frac{e\ 1}{\text{ohne}} \frac{e\ 3}{\text{daß}} \frac{e\ 2}{\text{Jemand ihn beobachtete}} \right|$

Whilst the boys were playing in the yard, a beggar came into the house and stole the clothes, which were hanging in the room, without any one noticing him.

Translate.

- The enemies destroyed the town, which stood by the (am) river, and escaped over the river, before (vor) the citizens, who were surprised (überrascht), could assemble (sich versammeln).
- Since the ship has sailed, I have often thought of (an, with accusative) my friend, who is now on the sea, and I shall be glad to hear soon that he has reached London (in  $\mathcal{L}$ . ankommen, with to be) safely (glücklich).
- I asked him, why he had done this, but he answered nothing; therefore I think he knows that he has done wrong (Unrecht tun).
- When (als) the ship came into the harbour, we hastened (eilen, reg.) to see whether Charles had (was) arrived, but alas we found he had not come, because he was ill when the ship left London.
- Do you know whether your friend found the book, which he had lost, or whether he bought a new [one]?

## Dictionary of Words (not on pages 12 or 58 and 59).

## For the Exercises of this Term.

*about* (*circa*), adv., ungefähr; preposition, um (Acc.)

*to accept*, an'nehmen (irreg.)

*the affair*, die Geschichte, —, —n

*ago*, vor (with Dat. *after* it)

*to allow*, erlauben (reg.)

*alone*, allein (adv.)

*already*, schon (adv.)

*to answer*, antworten (reg.)

*the apple*, der Apfel, —s, —

*to arrive*, an'kommen (irreg.)

*to ask*, fragen (reg.)

*to assemble*, sich versammeln (reg.)

*astonished* (adj.), erstaunt

*at once* (adv.), sogleich

*away* (adv.), fort

*America, Africa* (unaltered)

*the beauty*, die Schönheit, —, —en

*before* (prep.), vor (Dat. or Acc.)

*the bird*, der Vogel, —s, —

*to blame*, tadeln, rügen (reg.)

*the boot*, der Stiefel, —s, —

*both*, beide or die beiden

*brave(-ly)*, tapfer

*to bring*, bringen (half reg.)

*the cage*, der Käfig, —s, —e

*to call*, rufen (irreg.)

*the cap*, die Mütze, —, —n

*to catch*, fangen (irreg.)

*cautious*, vorsichtig

*certainly*, sicher, gewiß

*Charles, Karl*, —s

*the citizen*, der Bürger, —s, —

*clever*, klug, geschickt

*to come*, kommen (irreg.)

*to come back*, zurückkommen

*to command*, befehlen (irreg.)

*the command*, der Befehl, —s, —e

*content(-ed)* zufrieden

*costly*=*dear*, teuer

*the courage*, der Mut, —es

*to cry* (= *call*), rufen, schreien (irreg.)

*to dawn*, tagen (impers. reg.)

*the day*, der Tag, —es, —e

*dear*=*beloved*, lieb (adj.)

— = *costly*, teuer

*to deny*, verneinen (reg.)

*to destroy*, zerstören (reg.)

*to die*, sterben (irreg. with *sein*)

*diligent*, fleißig

*to do* (= *make*) machen (reg.), tun (irreg.)

*the door*, die Türe, —, —n

*to drink*, trinken (irreg.)

*the enemy*, der Feind, —es, —e

*English*, (adj.) englisch

*to enter*, ein'treten (irreg.)

— (= *forcibly*) ein'brechen in (irreg.)

*the exercise*, die Aufgabe, —, —n

*to expect*, erwarten (reg.)

*to fall down*, niederfallen (irreg.)

*false*, falsch (never modifies)

*to fear*, fürchten (reg.)

*to find*, finden (irreg.)

*to force*, zwingen (irreg.)

*to forget*, vergessen (irreg.)

*formerly*, einst, früher

*France*, Frankreich

*fresh*, frisch (neu)

*the friend*, der Freund, —es, —e

*to gain*, *win*, gewinnen (irreg.)

*the garden*, der Garten, —s, —

*the general*, der General, —s, —e

*gentle*, sanft, mild

*the gentleman*, der Herr, —n, —en  
*glad*, froh (fröhlich)

*the glove*, der Handschuh, —es, —e

*green*, grün

*the hand*, die Hand, —, —e

*happy*, glücklich

*the harbour*, der Hafen, —s, —

*to hasten*, eilen, sich beeilen (reg.)

*the health*, die Gesundheit, —, —en

*Henry*, Heinrich

*high*, hoch (when declined, hoch...)

*hitherto*, bisher

*at home*, zu Hause

*home* (motion), nach Hause

*the ice*, das Eis (des Eises)

*idle*, träge, faul

*ill*, krank (unwohl)

*July*, der Juli

*just*, gerecht (adj.)

— eben=*just then* (adv.)

*to kill*, tödten (reg.)

*the lady*, die Dame, —, —n

*the land*, das Land, —es, —er

*large*, groß

*last* (adv.), zuletzt, am letzten  
(adj.), der Letzte (etc.)

*late*, spät

*lazy*, träge, faul

*the leaf*, das Blatt, —es, —er

*to leave*, verlassen (irreg.)

*to lend*, leihen (irreg.)

*to lie* (*be situated*), liegen (irreg.)

*to like*, lieben, gern haben

*little* (= *small*), klein (adj.)

— adv. = wenig

*March*, der März (—es)

*the market*, der Markt, —es, —e

*Mary*, Marie, Maria

*the messenger*, der Bote, —n, —n

*the mile*, die Meile, —, —n

## Dictionary—Concluded.

*the minute*, die Minute, —, —n  
*Monday*, der Montag  
*the month*, der Monat, —, —e  
*the neighbour*, der Nachbar, —s, —n  
*never* (not ever), nie  
*new*, neu (frisch)  
*the newspaper*, die Zeitung, —, —en  
*next*, nächst (adj.)  
*now*, jetzt, nun (adv.)  
*the oak*, die Eiche, —, —n  
*o'clock*, Uhr (no plural)  
*one* (after adj.), never translated  
*only*, nur (adv.), einzig (adj.)  
*to order*, befehlen (irreg.) (Dat.)  
*own* (adj.), eigen  
*to pay*, bezahlen (reg.)  
*the pencil*, der Bleistift, —s, —e  
*people*, man (indeclinable)  
 — die Leute (no singular)  
*the picture*, das Gemälde, —s, —  
*to play*, spielen (reg.)  
*the post*, die Post, —, —en  
*the present*, das Geschenk, —es, —e  
*the prize*, der Preis, —(s)es, —(s)e  
*proud*, stolz, hochmützig  
*the quarter*, das Viertel, —s, —  
*to reach*, reichen (reg.)  
*to read*, lesen (irreg.)  
*to receive*, erhalten (irreg.)  
 — bekommen (irreg.)  
*to rejoice*, sich freuen (reg.)  
*to remain*, bleiben (irreg.)  
*to remember*, sich erinnern (reg.),  
 with Genitive (or an and Acc.)  
*to report*, berichten (reg.)  
*rich*, reich, wohlhabend

*the river*, der Fluß, —fließ, —fließt  
*the room*, das Zimmer, —s, —  
*to rush into*, in (Acc.) stürzen (reg.)  
*safely*, sicher, glücklich  
*to sail*, segeln (reg.), abfahren  
 (irreg.)  
*scarcely*, kaum  
*the sea*, das Meer, —es, —e  
*to see*, sehen (irreg.)  
*to send*, senden (half regular)  
 — schicken (reg.)  
*several*, mehrere  
*the shadow*, der Schatten, —s, —  
*shameful*, schändlich  
*the ship*, das Schiff, —es, —e  
*since* (preposition) seit (Dat.)  
 or (adv. conjunction) seitdem  
*to shout* (to), zu'rufen (irreg.)  
*the soldier*, der Soldat, —en, —en  
*soon*, bald  
*to speak* (of), sprechen (irreg.) (von)  
*to stand*, stehen (very irreg.)  
*to succeed*, gelingen (impers.)  
*surely*, sicher, gewiß  
*surprised* (adj.), erstaunt, über=  
 rascht  
*the table*, der Tisch, —es, —e  
*to tell*, sagen (with Dat.) (reg.)  
*the time*, die Zeit, —, —en  
*the theatre*, das Theater, —s, —  
*to think* (of), denken (half reg.) (an)  
*to thunder*, donnern (reg.)  
*towards*, gegen (accus.)  
*the tower*, der Turm, —es, —e  
*to try*, prüfen (reg.)  
*ugly*, häßlich (wüßst)

*unfortunate*, unglücklich  
*until* (prepos.), bis  
 — (conjunction), bis, bis daß  
*vain*, eitel  
*in vain*, umsonst  
*the victory*, der Sieg, —es, —e  
*the village*, das Dorf, —es, —er  
*to visit*, besuchen (reg.)  
*to wait*, warten (reg.)  
 — for, erwarten  
*the war*, der Krieg, —es, —e  
*to warn*, warnen (reg.)  
*to wash*, waschen (irreg.)  
*the water*, das Wasser, —s, —n  
*the week*, die Woche, —, —n  
*whole* (wholly), ganz  
*why?* warum?  
*wine*, der Wein, —es, —e  
*with*, mit (dative)  
*the word*, das Wort, —es, —er  
 (= sentences, Plural: die Worte)  
*to write*, schreiben (irreg.)  
*wrong*, das Unrecht, —s  
*I am wrong* = ich habe Unrecht  
 [or: ich bin im Unrecht]  
*the year*, das Jahr, —es, —e  
*yesterday*, gestern  
*young*, jung

## NOTICE.

The Irregular Verbs (at least the roots) must be looked out on pages 49, 50, and 51.

Words given in the Reference Page immediately preceding an Exercise are as a rule not given here again.

## CONVERSATIONAL SENTENCES.

*A Railway Journey. Eine Reise per Eisenbahn.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Johann, holen Sie mir einen Wagen.                         | <i>John, fetch me a cab.</i>   |
| 2. Ja, mein Herr, ich will gleich für einen gehen.            | <i>Yes, Sir, I will go for one at once.</i>                          |
| 3. Um wie viel Uhr fährt Ihr Zug ab?                          | <i>At what o'clock does your train leave?</i>                        |
| 4. Ich glaube, er fährt zehn Minuten nach fünf ab.            | <i>I think it leaves at ten minutes past five.</i>                   |
| 5. Es ist (die) höchste Zeit; es ist schon halb fünf.         | <i>It is high time; it is already half-past four.</i>                |
| 6. Da ist der Fiaker; tragen Sie das Gepäck hinaus.           | <i>Here is the cab; carry the luggage out.</i>                       |
| 7. Es ist alles richtig; Sie können ruhig sein.               | <i>It is all right, you may be easy.</i>                             |
| 8. Adieu, meine Lieben, ich muß jetzt gehen.                  | <i>Good-bye, my dears, I must go now.</i>                            |
| 9. Kinder, führt euch gut auf während meiner Abwesenheit.     | <i>Children, behave well during my absence.</i>                      |
| 10. Der Zug wartet schon. Sie haben keine Zeit zu verlieren.  | <i>The train is already waiting; you have no time to lose.</i>       |
| 11. Haben Sie Ihr Billet gelöst. Lösen Sie es schnell.        | <i>Have you taken your ticket? Take it quickly.</i>                  |
| 12. Da pfeift die Lokomotive; adieu, auf Wiedersehen.         | <i>There, the engine is whistling; good-bye, au revoir.</i>          |
| 13. Wie schnell der Zug fährt! Ja, vierzig Meilen per Stunde. | <i>How quick the train goes! Yes, forty miles an hour.</i>           |
| 14. Ist dies ein Rauchcompé? Nein, mein Herr.                 | <i>Is this a smoking compartment? No, Sir.</i>                       |
| 15. Sehen Sie das schöne Schloß dort oben? Wie heißt es?      | <i>Do you see that beautiful castle up there? What is it called?</i> |
| 16. Das ist Ehrenbreitstein, eine starke Festung.             | <i>That is Ehrenbreitstein, a powerful fortress.</i>                 |
| 17. Es hat eine große Besatzung, und ist sehr wichtig.        | <i>It has a large garrison, and is very important.</i>               |
| 18. Sehen Sie diese Stromschnellen im Rhein?                  | <i>Do you see these rapids in the Rhine?</i>                         |
| 19. Ja und da oben ist der Loreleielsen.                      | <i>Yes, and up there the Lurline-rock.</i>                           |
| 20. Ah! Ich weiß nicht was soll es bedeuten! u. s. w.         | <i>Ah! "I know not what it can mean," etc.</i>                       |
| 21. Da! Sehen Sie die Insel im Rhein mit dem Turm!            | <i>There; see this island in the Rhine with the tower.</i>           |
| 22. Ja, das ist der Mäuseturm des Bischofs Hatto!             | <i>Yes, that is the mouse-tower of Bishop Hatto.</i>                 |
| 23. Wie hübsch Bingen sich von hier ausnimmt!                 | <i>How beautiful Bingen looks from here!</i>                         |
| 24. Was für eine prächtige Brücke über den Rhein!             | <i>What a splendid bridge over the Rhine!</i>                        |
| 25. Das ist wohl der Main dort? Ja, mein Herr.                | <i>That is probably the Main there? Yes, Sir.</i>                    |
| 26. Es geht jetzt wieder langsamer, nicht wahr?               | <i>We are going slower again, are we not?</i>                        |
| 27. Ja, wir sind ganz nahe bei Mainz.                         | <i>Yes, we are quite close to Mayence.</i>                           |
| 28. Was für starke Mauern! Ja, Mainz ist eine Festung.        | <i>What strong walls! Yes, Mayence is a fortress.</i>                |
| 29. Sehen Sie die Soldaten, die da exerzieren!                | <i>Look at the soldiers who are drilling there.</i>                  |
| 30. Nun fahren wir in den Bahnhof ein.                        | <i>Now we are entering the station.</i>                              |
| 31. Steigen Sie hier aus? Ja, ich gehe nur bis Mainz.         | <i>Do you get out here? Yes, I am only going to Mayence.</i>         |
| 32. Sie fahren wohl weiter? Ja, ich gehe nach Mannheim.       | <i>You are probably going further? Yes, I am going to Mannheim.</i>  |
| 33. Adieu, mein Herr, ich bin Ihnen sehr verbunden.           | <i>Good-bye, Sir, I am much obliged to you.</i>                      |
| 34. Wollen Sie eine Kutsche nehmen, oder nicht?               | <i>Will you take a cab, or not?</i>                                  |
| 35. Ich ziehe vor, zu Fuß nach dem Gasthose zu gehen.         | <i>I prefer to go on foot to the Hotel.</i>                          |
| 36. Ja, in schönem Wetter geht man lieber zu Fuß.             | <i>Yes, in fine weather one prefers to go on foot.</i>               |
| 37. Sehen Sie, daß mein Gepäck abgegeben wird.                | <i>See that my luggage is delivered.</i>                             |



## POEM.

(To be learnt by heart.)

## Der kleine Hydriot (W. Müller).

1. Ich war ein kleiner Knabe, stand fest kaum auf dem Bein;  
Da nahm mich schon mein Vater mit in das Meer hinein;  
Und lehrte leicht mich schwimmen an seiner sichern Hand,  
Und in die Fluten tauchen bis nieder auf den Sand.
5. Ein Silberstückchen warf er dreimal in's Meer hinab,  
Und dreimal muß' ich's holen, eh' er's zum Lohn mir gab.

Dann reich' er mir ein Ruder, hieß in ein Boot mich geh'n;  
Er selber blieb zur Seite mir unverdrossen steh'n.

Wies mir, wie man die Wogen mit scharfem Schläge bricht,

10. Wie man die Wirbel meidet und mit der Brandung figt.  
Und von dem kleinen Rahne gieng's flugs in's große Schiff;  
Es trieben uns die Stürme um manches Felsenriff.  
Ich saß auf hohem Maste, schaut' über Meer und Land;  
Es schwebten Berg' und Türme vorüber mit dem Strand.

15. Der Vater hieß mich merken auf jedes Vogels Flug,  
Auf aller Winde Wehen, auf aller Wolken Zug.  
Und bogen dann die Stürme den Mast bis in die Flut;  
Und spritzten dann die Wogen hoch über meinen Hut;  
Dann sah der Vater prüfend mir in das Angesicht,—

20. Ich saß in meinem Korbe und rüttelte mich nicht.  
Da sprach er, und die Wange ward ihm wie Blut so rot:  
„Glück zu! auf deinem Maste, du kleiner Hydriot!“  
Und heute gab der Vater ein Schwert mir in die Hand.  
Und weihte mich zum Kämpfer für Gott und Vaterland.

25. Er maß mich mit den Blicken vom Kopf bis zu den Zeh'n;  
Mir war's, als tät' sein Auge hinab in's Herz mir seh'n;  
Ich hielt mein Schwert gen Himmel und schaut ihn sicher an,  
Und dächte mich zur Stunde nicht schlechter als ein Mann.

Da sprach er, und die Wange ward ihm wie Blut so rot:

30. „Glück zu! mit deinem Schwerte, du kleiner Hydriot!“

## The little Boy of Hydrea.

1. *I was but a little boy, stood scarcely firm on my feet (legs)  
When my father first took me to sea with him;  
And taught me easily to swim with his safe hand,  
And to dive into the waters down to the very sand.*
5. *A little silver coin he thrice threw down into the sea,  
And thrice had I to fetch it up, ere he gave it me as a re-ward.*

*Then he handed me an oar, and told me to step into a boat;  
He himself remained unwearied standing by my side.*

*Showed me how with sharp stroke one cuts the waves,*

10. *How one avoids the whirlpools and struggles with the surf.  
And from the little boat we soon went on board a large ship;  
The storms drove us around many a rocky reef.  
I sat on the high mast, looked over sea and land;  
Mountains and towers floated past us with the shore.*

15. *My father taught me to take notice of every bird's flight,  
Of the direction of every wind and the motion of every cloud.  
And when the storms bent our mast down into the waters,  
And the waves sent their spray high above my hat,  
Then looked my father searchingly into my face,—*

20. *I sat in my basket (cross-trees) and did not move.  
Then said he, and his cheek became as red as blood:  
“All hail! upon thy mast, thou little boy of Hydrea!”  
And this day put my father a sword into my hand,  
And dedicated me as champion for God and Fatherland.*

25. *He searched me with his glance from head to foot (toes);  
I felt, as if his eye looked down into my very heart;  
I lifted my sword towards heaven and firmly looked at him,  
And thought myself just then no worse than a full-grown man.*

*Then said he, and his cheek became as red as blood:*

30. *“All hail to thee, with thy sword, thou little man of Hydrea!”*

*Note:* Hydrea, a small island off the coast of Argolis in Morea in Greece, south-east of Athens; its inhabitants are known as brave and bold fishermen and sailors.



## POEM.

(To be learnt by heart.)

## Der Erbkönig (Götthe).

1. Wer reitet so spät durch Nacht und Wind?  
Es ist der Vater mit seinem Kind;  
Er hat den Knaben wohl in dem Arm;  
Er faßt ihn sicher, er hält ihn warm.
5. „Mein Sohn, was birgst du so bang dein Gesicht?“  
„Sieh'st, Vater, du den Erbkönig nicht?  
„Den Erbkönig mit Kron' und Schweif?“  
„Mein Sohn, es ist ein Nebelstreif.“
9. „Du liebes Kind, komm, geh' mit mir!  
„Gar schöne Spiele spiel' ich mit dir!  
„Manch' bunte Blumen sind an dem Strand;  
„Meine Mutter hat manch' gülden Gewand!“
13. „Mein Vater, mein Vater, und hörest du nicht  
„Was Erbkönig mir leise verspricht?“  
„Sei ruhig, bleibe ruhig, mein Kind!  
„In dürren Blättern säuselt der Wind.“
17. „Wilst, feiner Knabe, du mit mir geh'n?  
„Meine Töchter sollen dich warten schön.  
„Meine Töchter führen den nächtlichen Reih'n  
„Und wiegen und tanzen und singen dich ein.
21. „Mein Vater, mein Vater, und siehst du nicht dort  
„Erbkönigs Töchter am düster'n Ort?“  
„Mein Sohn, mein Sohn, ich seh' es genau:  
„Es scheinen die alten Weiden so grau.“
25. „Ich lieb' dich, mich reizt deine schöne Gestalt;  
„Und bist du nicht willig, so brauch' ich Gewalt.“  
„Mein Vater, mein Vater, jetzt faßt er mich an;  
„Erbkönig hat mir ein Leid's getan!“
29. Dem Vater grauset's; er reitet geschwind;  
Er hält in den Armen das ächzende Kind;  
Erreicht den Hof mit Mühe und Not:  
In seinen Armen das Kind war todt.

## The Erl-King (Fairy-King).

1. *Who is that riding so late, through night and wind?*  
*It is a father along with his child.*  
*He has his boy snugly in his arms;*  
*He grasps him securely; he holds him warm.*
5. “*My son, why hidest thou so timidly thy face?*”  
“*Seest thou not, father, the Fairy-king?*”  
“*The King of the fairies, with his crown and tail?*”  
“*My son, 'tis but a streak of mist.*”
9. “*Thou dear child, come, go with me!*  
“*Right lovely games shall I play with thee.*  
“*There are many bright flowers on the bank,*  
“*And my mother has many a golden garment.*”
13. “*My father, my father, and hearest thou not*  
“*What the King of the fairies promises me, whis-*  
“*Be still, be tranquil, my child!* [pering?”  
“*'Tis but the wind, rustling in withered leaves!*”
17. “*Wilt thou, my bonny boy, go with me?*  
“*My daughters shall nicely wait upon thee;*  
“*My daughters they lead the dance in the night;*  
“*They'll rock thee, and dance thee, and sing thee*  
[to sleep.”
21. “*My father, my father, and seest thou not there*  
“*The Fairy-king's daughters on yon gloomy spot?*”  
“*My son, my son, I see it quite plainly,*  
“*'Tis but the old willows that seem so grey.*”
25. “*I love thee; thy beauteous form excites me,*  
“*And, if thou art not willing, I shall use force.*”  
“*My father, my father, now he is seizing me,*  
“*The Fairy-king has hurt me!*”
29. *Horror falls upon the father; he rides rapidly;*  
*He holds in his arms the moaning child;*  
*He reaches his home with trouble and difficulty:*  
*In his arms the child was dead.*

One of the best-known and most effective pieces of recitation.

Erl-King, so called because of having his habitation among “Erlen” or Alder-trees.

## F I F T H   T E R M

*Idiomatic differences between English and German in the use of words.*

THE student must now use a Dictionary for the Exercises. A few sentences from page 120 and a few lines of the Poems on pages 121 and 122 should still form an integral portion of each Lesson. The idioms also given with the Preposition, pages 98-104, should be learnt over and over again, and the Reference-Pages given hitherto should be referred to in the Translation and Composition Lessons, especially the two (pages 38 and 83) which treat of the Sequence of Words, when writing Exercises or doing Composition, which ought now to be begun.

## REFERENCE-PAGE AA.

## Remarks on the Noun and Article.

## I. Difference between English and German as to the use of the Article before Nouns.

A. The definite article *omitted in English but used in German*—

1. With abstract terms used in their full meaning, as: *youth*, **die** Jugend, etc.
2. With words representing whole species or classes, as: *man*, **der** Mensch, etc.
3. Before titles followed by proper names, as: *Queen Victoria*, **die** Königin Victoria.
4. Before the adjective in front of proper names, if not in the Vocative, as: **der** arme Karl, *Poor Charles*; **but**: *Armer Karl!* *Poor Charles!* (Vocative).
5. Before names of days, metals, months, and also meals, as: **das** Gold, *gold*; **das** Abendessen, *supper*; **der** Juli, *July*.
6. Before verbals in -ing, as: *hunting*, **die** Jagd; *playing*, **das** Spiel.
7. In some phrases, as: *in school*, in **der** Schule; *in church*, in **der** Kirche; *at market*, auf **dem** Markt; *in town*, in **der** Stadt; also with the word *most*, as: *most men*, **die** meisten Menschen.

## B. Indefinite article in English rendered by definite article in German—

In such phrases as: *sixpence a pound* = *Sechs Pence das* (or: *per*) *Pfund*.

## C. Possessive adjective in English rendered by definite article in German—

1. When the ownership is undoubted, as: *er hat es in der Hand*, *he has it in his hand*.
2. With some reflexive verbs, as: *ich wasche mir die Hände*, *I wash my hands*.

D. Article (def. or indef.) *used in English but omitted in German*—

1. With the word *all*, as: *all the boys*, alle Knaben; *all the money*, alles Geld.
2. With the word *both*, as: *both the books*, beide Bücher (or: *die beiden Bücher*).
3. With relatives accompanied by nouns, as: *the river*, *the beauties of which you admired*, *der Fluß*, *dessen Schönheiten Sie bewunderten*.
4. Before the words: *Norden*, *north*; *Osten*, *east*; *Süden*, *south*; *Westen*, *west*; also before *Abend*, *evening*; *Mitternacht*, *midnight*; *Morgen*, *morning*; if they are preceded by **gegen**, or **nach** (*towards*); as: *towards the north*, *gegen Norden*.
5. In the phrases: *many a*, *no less a*, *not so good a*, *to become a* (*soldier*, etc.), as: *mancher Knabe*, *many a boy*; *he became a soldier*, *er wurde Soldat*.

II. Notice that in German the article can *never* stand between an adjective and its noun, but *must* stand before the adjective, thus:

*both the boys* = *die beiden Knaben*; *such a man* = *ein solcher Mann*; *half an apple* = *ein halber Apfel*; *all the world* = *die ganze Welt* (= *the whole world*).

## III. The Article in German must be repeated before each of a series of words, especially if these are of different genders, unless all the words apply to one and the same person (or thing), as:

*der König und die Königin*, *the king and queen*.  
*but*: *der König und Herr*, *the king and master* (*i.e.* in one person).

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE AA.

*Examples.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>I have often told you that children should reverence old age.</i></li> <li>2. <i>Many animals, which live in very cold countries, have warm furs, which are very valuable; most of these furs are white in winter.</i></li> <li>3. <i>Dinner will be taken in the large dining-room, but we shall have tea here in this little room.</i></li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ich habe euch oft gesagt, daß die Kinder das Alter ehren sollen.</li> <li>2. Viele Thiere, welche in sehr kalten Ländern leben, haben warme Pelze, die sehr werthvoll sind; die meisten dieser Pelze sind im Winter weiß.</li> <li>3. Das Mittagessen wird in dem großen Speisezimmer zu sich genommen werden, aber den Thee werden wir hier in diesem Stübchen nehmen.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

*Translate.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Das Gold und das Silber sind edle Metalle, aber das Eisen ist nützlicher als alle anderen Metalle.</li> <li>2. Haben Sie dieselben in der Kirche gesehen? Ich sah sie, als sie in die Kirche giengen.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Die Menschen sollten ihre Pflichten gegen Gott nie vergessen, denn Er hat uns Alle erschaffen, und er erhält uns.</li> <li>4. Sie verdarben uns die Freude, als sie uns sagten, er werde nicht kommen weil er krank sei.</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

*Exercise.*

1. When we were in Berlin, we saw (the) prince Albert, who had (was) returned.
2. Were these cherries dear? I believe they were sevenpence a pound.
3. August and September are the best months for a tour in (the) Switzerland.
4. He had the book in his desk (Pult, *m.*), whilst he was looking for it in school.
5. Poor Henry! I believe (*dat.*) poor Charles and you.

*Examples.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Switzerland is bounded on the north by Germany and on the south by Italy.</i></li> <li>2. <i>All the world knows that such a man does not deserve any respect.</i></li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Die Schweiz ist gegen Norden von Deutschland begrenzt und gegen Süden von Italien.</li> <li>2. Die ganze Welt weiß, daß ein solcher Mann keine Achtung verdient.</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

*Translate.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Wir besuchten diese Stadt, deren Gebäude Sie so schön fanden.</li> <li>2. Die Angelegenheiten beider Männer waren in einem fatalen Zustande.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Gegen Morgen fieng es an zu regnen, und es regnete den ganzen Tag; aber gegen Abend heiterte sich das Wetter wieder recht schön auf.</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

*Exercise.*

1. He lost all *the* money which we gave him in town yesterday.
2. Many *a* good man was deceived by this fellow (Kerl) who sold these things.
3. Do you know what has become of him? [aus (*dat.*),] He has become *a* sailor.
4. Half *a* loaf (Laib, *m.*) is better than no bread; —a proverb (Sprichwort, *n.*).
5. "My good sword in *my* hand, I fear no foe," he exclaimed (ausrufen).

## REFERENCE-PAGE BB.

## Some Remarks on Gender of Nouns.

We have already given the rules by which the Gender of many nouns can be recognised (see Reference-Page F., page 25). In speaking of living beings, we may say generally that in *full-grown* beings the gender corresponds with the sex, whilst young *undeveloped* beings are of the neuter gender. Thus we have :

**der** Vater, *the father* ; **die** Mutter, *the mother* ; **das** Kind, *the child*.

**der** Stier, *the bull* ; **die** Kuh, *the cow* ; **das** Kalb, *the calf*.

**der** Hengst, *the stallion* ; **die** Stute, *the mare* ; **das** Füllen, *the colt, filly*.

**der** Hahn, *the cock* ; **die** Henne, *the hen* ; **das** Küchlein, *the chicken*.

**der** Eber, *the boar* ; **die** Sau, *the sow* ; **das** Ferkel, *the sucking-pig*.

Thus also many names indicating *species* of animals are neuter, as : **das** Pferd, *the horse* ; **das** Schwein, *the pig* ; **das** Huhn, *the fowl* ; **das** Rind, *a head of cattle*.

In the above the sexes are expressed by different words ; many feminines are, however, formed from the masculines—

(a.) By addition of *=in* and modification of root-vowel (especially in monosyllables), as :

**der** Graf, *the count* ; **die** Gräfin, *the countess*.

**der** Bauer, *the peasant* ; **die** Bäuerin, *the peasant woman*.

**der** Franzose, *the Frenchman* ; **die** Französin, *the Frenchwoman*.

**der** Hund, *the dog* ; **die** Hündin, *the bitch*.

**der** Koch, *the cook* ; **die** Köchin, *the female cook*.

**der** König, *the king* ; **die** Königin, *the queen*.

The Plural of words in *=in* is *=innen* (indeed the Singular had formerly *=inn*).

(b.) By cutting off *=r* of the masculine, as :

**der** Witwer, *the widower* ; **die** Witwe, *the widow* ; **der** Tauber, *the male pigeon* ; **die** Taube, *the female pigeon*.

(c.) By adding such words as *=kuh*, *cow* ; *=henne*, *hen*.

**der** Hirsch, *the stag* ; **die** Hirschkuh, *the hind* ; **der** Pfau, *the peacock* ; **die** Pfauhenne, *the pea-hen*.

These words must be learnt gradually by noting them when met with in translation.

N.B.—**Der** Deutsche, *the German (gentleman)*, has feminine, **die** Deutsche, *the German (woman)*.

List of the most common words with two genders with different signification for each :—

**der** Alp, *the nightmare* ; **die** Alp, *the Alpine meadow*.

**der** Band, *the volume* ; **das** Band, *the tie, ribbon*.

**der** Bauer, *the peasant* ; **das** Bauer, *the bird-cage*.

**der** Erbe, *the heir* ; **das** Erbe, *the inheritance*.

**die** Mark, *a coin=one shilling* ; **das** Mark, *the marrow*.

**der** See, *the lake* ; **die** See, *the sea, ocean*.

**der** Schild, *the shield (in battle)* ; **das** Schild, *the coat of arms ; sign (of an inn)*.

**der** Stift, *the metal (etc.) rod* ; **das** Stift, *a convent*.

**der** Thor, *the fool* ; **das** Thor, *the gate*.

**der** Verdienst, *gain, wages* ; **das** Verdienst, *the merit*.

## Exercise.

[For the words in the Exercises, where not given here, a Dictionary must be used. For sequence of words, see page 83.]

1. Have you spoken to (zu, Dat.) the peasant and peasant woman, who came yesterday to our house?
2. Yes, I bought, as (wie) I said, two hens, three chickens, and one cock of (von) them.
3. What have you shot? I shot a hind, which had strayed (sich verirren, reg.) into our field.
4. This man was a fool, for he spent (vergeuden) his inheritance on (in) pleasures, which had not even (nicht einmal) the merit of being real pleasures (of being=zu sein, at end).
5. This French woman fought a duel with this German woman, but she was (wurde) vanquished.



## REFERENCE-PAGE CC.

## Some Remarks on Number in Nouns.

A. Words of same form and gender in the singular, but of different meaning, have different plurals :

das Band, *the tie, ribbon*, has die Bänder, *the ribbons* ; but : die Bande, *the fetters, ties, chains* (poetical).

die Bank, *the bench, bank*, has die Bänke, *the benches* ; but : die Banken, *the (money) banks*.

das Land, *the country, land*, has (usual) die Länder, *the lands* ; and die Lande, *lands* (poetical).

das Wort, *the word, sentence*, has die Wörter, *disconnected words* ; but : die Worte, *sentences, sayings*.

B. Nouns implying materials or metals have **no** plural. If a plural is required, it is formed with the words *Arten, kinds* ; *Sorten, sorts* ; as : drei Sorten Gold, *three kinds of gold*.

C. Abstract terms have no plural, if used as abstract terms, as : die Liebe, *love* ; but some can be used concretely, as : die Lieben, *the loved ones*. Others have to borrow a plural, as : die Gunst, *the favour*=die Gunstbezeugung, *Plural* : die Gunstbezeugungen ; such are : der Tod (*case of*) death=der Todesfall, *Plural* : die Todesfälle, *cases of death, deaths* ; der Rat, *the advice*=der Ratschlag, *Plural* : die Ratschläge, *counsels*. *N.B.* die Räte, *Plural of der Rat=the councillor* ; der Streit, *the quarrel*=die Streitigkeit, *Plural* : die Streitigkeiten, *quarrels*.

D. Nouns implying measure, number (collective), or weight, and preceded by a definite or indefinite numeral, are used in the singular though indicating plurality, if they are of the masculine or neuter gender, as : zehn Fuß lang ; fünf Pfund Blei ; zwanzig Grad Wärme (*ten feet long ; five pounds of lead ; twenty degrees of cold*). Thus also in vernacular English : *ten foot long*, etc. ; but if they are of the feminine gender, they must be used in the Plural, as : sechs Ellen Tuch, *six yards of cloth*.

## Used Singular in these cases (in D.).

der Fuß, *the foot* ; der Zoll, *the inch* ; das Pfund, *the pound*.

der Grad, *the degree* ; der Mann, *man* ; das Paar, *the brace, pair*.

das Buch, *the quire* ; das Hundert, *the hundred* ; das Stück, *the piece*.

das Duzend, *the dozen* ; das Tausend, *the thousand*.

der Zentner, *the hundredweight* ; das Fuder, *the load*, etc.

## Used Plural in these cases.

die Elle, *the yard*.

die Tonne, *the tun, ton*.

die Flasche, *the bottle*.

die Klafter, *the fathom*.

die Meile, *the mile*.

E. Some words have no singular ; the most common of these are :

die Einkünfte, *the income, revenue*.

die Eltern, *the parents, father and mother*.

die Ferien, *the vacation, holidays*.

die Geschwister, *brothers and sisters*.

die Kosten=die Unkosten, *expenses*.

die Leute, *people, men* (used generally). (*See N.B. below.*)

die Trümmer, *the ruins, fragments*.

die Truppen, *the troops=an army*.

*N.B.* Leute is used for the Plural of Compounds in -mann, as : der Seemann (*sailor*), die Seeleute (if the class of men as a class is referred to).

## Exercise.

1. The counsels of those councillors are not always wise.
2. There have been several quarrels between those towns.
3. We have had a severe (hart) winter, for we had often (eine Räte von) ten degrees of cold.
4. We bought three dozen yards of that cloth when we were there.
5. These troops number (zählen) 10,000 men.

## REFERENCE-PAGE DD.

## Some Remarks on the Adjective.

We have already seen that adjectives may be used—

1. As *Attributes* in front of a noun (see Reference-Page G.), *der gute König*, etc.
2. As *Adverbs*, invariable, as : *er schreibt gut*.
3. As *Nouns* with an article, etc., and changing like the adjective attribute, *der Gute, the good man, ein Güter, a good man*, etc.
4. As *Predicates* (see page 82), invariable, and only with *sein, werden, bleiben, heißen, genannt werden*, etc. : *er wird arm bleiben*.

As to this use of adjectives as **Predicates**, notice the following carefully :

The predicative adjective may be accompanied by an extension, which, unless governed by a preposition (see (D) below), *must stand in front of the adjective*. This extension must be either in the Accusative, the Genitive, or the Dative case.

**A. The Accusative** of weight, measure, age, value, **preceding the adjective**, as : *er ist fünfzehn Jahre alt*; this is used **before** the following adjectives :

*alt, old ; breit, broad ; groß, large ; hoch, high ; lang, long ; schwer, heavy ; tief, deep ; werth, worth.*

**B. The Genitive** extension ; as : *er ist seiner Sache gewiß, he is sure of his business*. Thus :

bewußt, conscious of	gewiß, sure of	mächtig, master of	*überdrüssig, weary of
eingedenk, mindful of	kundig, acquainted with	*müde, tired of	verdächtig, suspected of
fähig, capable of	*ledig, rid of	schuldig, guilty of	würdig, worthy of

*N.B.* All these, except those marked \*, may by prefixing *un . . .* be changed into their contraries ; as : *ungewiß, uncertain of* ; those marked \* require *nicht* (as : *nicht müde, not tired of*) for their contraries.

**C. The Dative** extension, as : *es ist mir angenehm, it is agreeable to me*. Thus :

ähnlich, similar to	dankebar, grateful to	lieb, dear to	*überlegen, superior to
*angeboren, inborn in	*fremd, strange to	möglich, possible to	*verhaßt, hateful to
angemessen, appropriate to	gehorsam, obedient to	nötig, necessary to	vorteilhaft, advantageous to
angenehm, agreeable to	gleich, equal to	nützlich, useful to	willkommen, welcome to
bekannt, known to	gnädig, gracious to	schädlich, hurtful to	zuträglich, beneficial to
bequem, convenient to	günstig, favourable to	*teuer, dear to	[and a few others rarely used]
beschwerlich, troublesome to	*lästig, troublesome to	treu, faithful to	

*N.B.* All these, except those marked \*, may by prefixing *un . . .* be changed into their contraries ; as : *unähnlich, dissimilar to*. Those marked \* require *nicht* instead of *un . . .* for their contraries.

**D. The extension** if governed by a *preposition* **usually follows the adjective**, and must be in the case which the preposition requires, as : *er ist höflich gegen diesen Mann*. Thus :

achtſam auf (Acc.), heedful of	empfindlich für (Acc.), susceptible of	höflich gegen (Acc.), polite towards
artig gegen (Acc.), polite towards	*eiferſüchtig auf (Acc.), jealous of	*reich an (Acc.), rich in
*bange vor (Dat.), afraid of	*eitel auf (Acc.), vain of	*ſtolz auf (Acc.), proud of
bekannt mit (Dat.), acquainted with	ermüdet von (Dat.), fatigued with	überzeugt von (Dat.), convinced of
*beſchämt über (Acc.), ashamed of	*froß über (Acc.), glad of	*verſchwenderiſch mit (Dat.), prodigal with
begierig nach (Dat.), greedy after	*gleichgültig gegen (Ac.), indifferent to	zufrieden mit (Dat.), satisfied with
*frei von (Dat.), free from	*grauſam gegen (Acc.), cruel to	[and a few others rarely used.]

*N.B.* All these, except those marked \*, may by prefixing *un . . .* be changed into their contraries ; as : *unartig gegen (Acc.), uncivil to*. Those marked \* require *nicht* before the adjective for their contraries.

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON REFERENCE-PAGE DD.

*Examples.*

1. *The man was conscious of his guilt and tired of life; he hanged himself.*
2. *How high was this tree? I think it was fifty or sixty feet high.*
3. *I cannot believe that this news was unknown to the man who was in the house.*

1. Der Mann war sich seiner Schuld bewußt, und des Lebens müde, er hat sich erhängt.
2. Wie hoch war dieser Baum? Ich glaube, er war fünfzig oder sechzig Fuß hoch.
3. Ich kann nicht glauben, daß diese Nachricht dem Manne, der in dem Hause war, unbekannt war.

*Translate.*

1. Er wäre des Preises würdig gewesen, wenn er die Zeichnung vollendet hätte.
2. Der Strom war an dieser Stelle jedenfalls zwanzig Fuß breit.

3. Ich fürchte, daß es uns unmöglich sein wird, dieses heute zu tun.
4. Die Nachrichten von Afrika waren dem alten Mann sehr willkommen.

*Exercise.*

1. Was this man suspected of theft (Diebstahl, *m.*), or only of a mistake? (Fehler, *m.*)
2. The sea is at this spot six fathoms (Klafter, *f.*) deep, or more.
3. This ought to be useful to the boy, who must write that theme (Aufsatz, *m.*).
4. God be (sei) gracious to us sinners (Sünder, *m.*).
5. He will be welcome to his friends in England, for he is worthy of their esteem.

*Examples.*

1. *The prince was jealous of his brother; he was convinced of the truth of the news, which arrived to-day.*
2. *One ought never to be vain of one's knowledge, for no one can know everything.*
3. *Be polite towards your teachers and not indifferent to their admonitions.*

1. Der Fürst war eifersüchtig auf seinen Bruder; er war von der Wahrheit der Nachricht überzeugt, die heute ankam.
2. Man sollte nie auf seine Kenntnisse eitel sein, denn Niemand kann Alles wissen.
3. Sei höflich gegen deine Lehrer und nicht gleichgültig gegen ihre Ermahnungen.

*Translate.*

1. Der Schüler ist unbekannt mit diesen Sachen, er kann seine Aufgabe nicht recht gelernt haben.
2. Dieser Erbe war sehr verschwenderisch mit dem Gelde, das er erbt.

3. Ich war bange (or es war mir bange) vor dem Examen in der Schule.
4. Sie sollten über die guten Zeugnisse froh sein, die Ihr Sohn aus der Schule mit nach Hause gebracht hat.

*Exercise.*

1. He is jealous of his friend, who always loved him so much (so sehr).
2. Boys should be polite towards their teachers, for they desire only their good (ihr Bestes).
3. The enemy was superior to us in this battle, which we lost.
4. Are you convinced of the truth of the news, (which) your son sent (to) you?
5. Do not be cruel to that horse; it feels pain (den Schmerz) as much as yourself (like you yourself).

## REFERENCE-PAGE EE.

## Remarks on Prepositions.

Distinguish carefully Prepositions from adverbs and from conjunctions. Prepositions are followed by nouns or pronouns, and must govern an Accusative, a Genitive, or a Dative.

We give here (as an appendix to Reference-Page O., page 52) a list of the most common English prepositions in alphabetical order, with hints as to their translation into German before nouns or pronouns.

*above—*

- (a) indicating locality, is **über** with **dat.**, if there is *no motion towards the noun* implied, and with **acc.** in the sense of *across*, with verbs of motion, as : der Vogel **schwebt über dem** Haus, but der Vogel **fliegt über das** Haus.
- (b) = *beyond* = **über** (as above); er **lebt über dem** Meer; **geht über das** Meer.
- (c) = *more than* = **über**, with accusative : er **liebt ihn über Alles** (*more than all*).

*about—*

- (a) = *around* = **um** (acc.) : sie **versammelten sich um ihn**, *they assembled about him*.
- (b) = *through* = **in** (dat.) ... **umher** : er **geht in der Stadt umher**, *he goes about the town*.
- (c) = *with* = **bei** (dat.) : ich **habe kein Geld bei** mir, *I have no money about me*.
- (d) = *concerning* = **über** (acc.) or **wegen** (gen.) : ich **spreche über ihn**, *I talk about him*.
- (e) with nouns of number, weight, etc. = *ungefähr* : er **hat ungefähr drei Pfund**, *he has about £3*.
- (f) **idiomatic** : **um diese Zeit**, *about this time*.

*at—*

- (a) **locality** : **bei**, **an**, **in** (dat.) : **Bei der Kirche** ; **an dem Haus** ; **in Paris**.
- (b) **time** : **um** (acc.), as : **um diese Stunde** = *at this hour*.
- (c) with some *adjectives* : **pleased at** = **vergnügt über** (acc.), **zufrieden mit** (dat.); **clever at** = **geschickt in** (dat.); **astonished at** = **erstaunt über** (acc.);  **vexed at** = **ärgerlich über** (acc.).
- (d) with some *verbs* : **to rejoice at** = **sich freuen über** (acc.); **to aim at** = **zielen nach** (dat.), **auf** (acc.); **to laugh at** = **lachen über**; **to blush at** = **erröten über**; **to mock at** = **spotten**, with gen. [or **über**, acc.]; **to wonder at** = **sich (ver)wundern über** (acc.).
- (e) **idiomatic** : **at any rate** (= *at all events*) = **auf jeden Fall**; **at church** = **in der Kirche**; **at court** = **bei Hofe**; **at daybreak** = **bei Anbruch des Tages**; **at home** = **zu Hause**; **at play** = **beim Spiel**; **at school** = **in der Schule**; **at sea** = **auf der See**, **auf dem Meer**; **at table** = **bei Tisch**; **at the arrival of** = **bei (der) Ankunft** (gen.); **at the battle** = **in der Schlacht**; **at the beginning** = **im (am) Anfang**; **at the command of** = **auf (den) Befehl** (gen.); **at the expense** = **auf Kosten**; **at the house of...** = **bei** (dat.); **at the same time** = **zu gleicher Zeit**; **at the time of...** = **zur Zeit** (gen.) [and a few more].

*by—*

- (a) **agent**, always = **von** (dat.) : er **wurde von mir** besiegt (*by me*).
- (b) **instrument**, always = **durch** (acc.) : **durch den Schuß** verwundet (*by the shot*).
- (c) **locality**, = **bei**, **neben** (dat.) : *it stands by the tree* = **es steht bei dem Baume**.
- (d) **idiomatic** : **by my honour** = **bei meiner Ehre**; **10 feet by 4** = **zehn Fuß lang und vier breit**; **by the 3d of March** = **am dritten März**; **by the ton** = **nach der Tonne** = **tonnenweise**; **by land** = **zu Land**; **by water** = **zu Wasser**; **by day** = **bei Tag**; **by night** = **bei (in der) Nacht**; **(take) by the hand** = **an der Hand**; **by command of** = **auf Befehl** (gen.); **piece by piece** = **Stück auf (um) Stück**; **by boat** = **mit dem Schiff**; **by the advice of** = **auf Rat**; **by Jove** = **beim Jupiter**! **day by day** = **von Tag zu Tag**, **täglich** [and a few more].



## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON PAGE 98.

*above and about.**Examples.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>I am sorry to be unable to give you anything, but I have no money <b>about</b> me.</i></li> <li>2. <i><b>Above</b> this world there lives a God, who knows our inmost thoughts.</i></li> <li>3. <i>They were <b>about</b> this time on a journey in England and Ireland.</i></li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Es tut mir leid, Ihnen Nichts geben zu können, aber ich habe kein Geld <b>bei</b> mir.</i></li> <li>2. <i><b>Ueber</b> dieser Welt lebt ein Gott, der unsere tiefsten Gedanken kennt.</i></li> <li>3. <i>Sie waren um diese Zeit auf Reisen in England und Irland.</i></li> </ol> |
|--|--|

*Translate.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Wenn ihr <b>über</b> diese Sache reden wollt, so tut es jetzt oder nie.</li> <li>2. Die Schwalben flogen im Herbst <b>über's</b> Meer nach dem Süden, und kehren im Frühling wieder zu uns zurück.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Es ist zu schmutzig auf den Straßen, um in der Stadt herum zu wandern.</li> <li>4. Man sollte immer auf seine Gesundheit Acht geben, denn die Gesundheit geht <b>über</b> Alles in der Welt.</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

*Exercise.*

1. **Above** three hundred people lost their lives during this flood (Ueberschwemmung, *f.*).
2. You ought to love (the) virtue **above** all in the world.
3. You are **about** two miles distant (entfernt) from the town which you see there.
4. Has your father spoken with the teacher **about** this affair?
5. He has travelled **about** in America and Asia.

*at and by.**Examples.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>All (the) shops in the village are shut (geschlossen) <b>at</b> this late hour.</i></li> <li>2. <i>Do not rejoice <b>at</b> the misfortune of your neighbours; it is not Christian-like.</i></li> <li>3. <i><b>At</b> table these girls are not allowed to learn their lessons.</i></li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Alle Läden im Dorfe sind um diese späte Stunde geschlossen.</i></li> <li>2. <i>Freuen Sie sich nicht <b>über</b> das Unglück Ihrer Nachbarn; es ist nicht christlich.</i></li> <li>3. <i><b>Bei</b> Tische dürfen diese Mädchen ihre Aufgaben nicht lernen.</i></li> </ol> |
|---|---|

*Translate.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Sie hätten <b>über</b> diese Sünde erröten sollen, wenn Sie überhaupt (at all) noch <b>über</b> Etwas erröten können.</i></li> <li>2. <i>Er ist dieses Jahr auf Kosten seines Geschäftshauses nach Asien gereist:</i></li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. <i>Das Schiff war dreihundert Fuß lang und zwanzig Fuß breit.</i></li> <li>4. <i>Ich verspreche Ihnen <b>bei</b> meiner Ehre, Sie vor acht Uhr in Ihrem Hause zu besuchen, wenn diese Nachricht bis dann angekommen ist.</i></li> </ol> |
|---|---|

*Exercise.*

1. Have you aimed **at** that bird? I wonder **at** you.
2. We were **at** any rate **at** home **at** seven o'clock.
3. The house stands quite close (*nahe*) **by** the church in the village.
4. The French were beaten **by** the Germans in the last war.
5. We have (are) travelled **about** in the world **by** land and water.



## REFERENCE-PAGE EE.—Continued.

for

- (a) generally für, with accusative : *for him*=für ihn.  
 (b) instead of=anstatt (gen.); *he went for his son*=er gieng anstatt seines Sohnes.  
 (c) with some verbs, as : *to beg for*=bitten um (acc.); *play for*=spielen um (acc.); *to care for*=sich kümmern um; *to ask for* or *after*=fragen nach (dat.).  
 (d) idiomatic : *for a time*=eine Zeit lang; *for how long?*=auf wie lange? *for ever*=auf immer; *for the sake of*=um (genitive) willen.  
 (e) for, before feelings prompting an action, is=aus, as : *for fear*=aus Furcht, etc.

from

- (a) locality, origin, derivation=von or aus (dative); *from Germany*=von Deutschland.  
 (b) time=seit; *from that day*=seit jenem Tage.  
 (c) with feelings, prompting an action=aus; as : *from pity*=aus Mitleid.  
 (d) free from=frei von; *er ist nicht frei von Vorurteilen*=he is not free from prejudices.  
 (e) with some verbs, to abstain from=sich enthalten (genitive) : *to die from*=sterben an (dat.), *to suffer from*=leiden an (dat.); *to dismiss from*=entheben (gen. of thing, acc. of person); *to dissuade from*=abraton von (dat.); *to escape from*=entfliehen (dat.); *to exempt from*=entheben.  
 (f) idiomatic : *from memory*=aus dem Gedächtniß; *from day to day*=von Tag zu Tag; *from town to town*=von Stadt zu Stadt; *from time to time*=von Zeit zu Zeit.

in

- (a) generally in with dat. of rest and acc. of change or motion=into.  
 (b) with time, always in with dative.  
 (c) with verbs, to believe in=glauben an (acc.); *to wound in*=verwunden an (acc.); *to trust in*=vertrauen (dative).  
 (d) with adjectives rare; *rich in*=reich an (acc.); *fertile in*=fruchtbar an (acc.).  
 (e) idiomatic : *in a carriage*=zu Wagen; *in the country*=auf dem Land; *into the country*=auf das Land; *in German*=auf Deutsch; *into German*=in's Deutsche; *in a word*=mit einem Worte; *in time*=zu rechter Zeit, zur rechten Zeit; [*in pity*, etc., see from, or of, pity]; *to take a part in*=Theil nehmen an (dat.); *in (this) manner*=auf (diese) Weise; *in any case*=auf jeden Fall, jedenfalls; *in the day-time*=bei Tag=*in the night-time*=bei Nacht or in der Nacht; *in patience*=mit Geduld.

*of* is the most frequently-used preposition in English, and its rendering is very difficult; we give it here in such a way, as to assist the English pupil in Composition.

A. *of*, preceded by an adjective in English, and followed by Noun or Pronoun :—

* <i>afraid of</i> , bange vor (dat.)	* <i>guilty of</i> , schuldig (after its gen.)	<i>sure of</i> , gewiß (after its gen.)
* <i>ashamed of</i> , beschämt über (acc.)	* <i>needful of</i> , bedürftig (after its gen.)	<i>susceptible of</i> , empfänglich für (acc.)
<i>capable of</i> , fähig (after its gen.)	* <i>jealous of</i> , eifersüchtig auf (acc.)	
<i>careful of</i> , achtsam auf (acc.)	<i>mindful of</i> , eingedenk (after its gen.)	<i>suspected of</i> , verdächtig (after its gen.)
<i>conscious of</i> , bewußt (after its gen.)	* <i>prodigal of</i> , verschwenderisch mit (dat.)	* <i>tired of</i> , müde (after its gen.)
* <i>convinced of</i> , überzeugt von (dat.)	* <i>proud of</i> , stolz auf (acc.)	* <i>vain of</i> , stolz auf (acc.)
* <i>covetous of</i> , gierig nach (dat.)	* <i>rid of</i> , ledig (gen.); frei von (dat.)	<i>worthy of</i> , werth, würdig (after its gen.)
* <i>desirous of</i> , ehrgeizig nach (dat.)	<i>sensitive of</i> (about), empfindlich über (acc.)	
* <i>glad of</i> , froh über (acc.)		
* <i>good of</i> , gut von (dat.)		

All those with Genitive usually must stand after this Genitive.

N.B.—(a) Those of the above not marked with an asterisk can take *un* . . . before them in German, with the same construction, but exactly contrary meaning, as: *unschuldig* (gen.), *guiltless of*, etc.; but those marked with an asterisk must take *nicht* before them, if the contrary meaning is required.

N.B.—(b) After any superlative *of* is *von* (dat.), as: *the best of them*, der beste von ihnen.

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON PAGE 100.

*for and from.**Examples.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>You ought to have pardoned (to) the poor soldier his slight offence <b>for</b> my sake, (Sir) Captain!</i></li> <li>2. <i>What does he care <b>for</b> war or peace? It is all the same to him.</i></li> <li>3. <i>The murderer, who was condemned to death, (has) escaped yesterday <b>from</b> prison with another prisoner.</i></li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Sie hätten dem armen Soldaten um meinetwillen sein leichtes Vergehen verzeihen sollen, Herr Hauptmann!</li> <li>2. Was bekümmert er sich um Krieg oder Frieden? Es ist ihm Alles gleich.</li> <li>3. Der Mörder, der zum Tode verurteilt wurde, ist gestern <b>aus</b> dem Gefängnisse mit einem andern Gefangenen entflohen.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

*Translate.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Der Bettler gieng <b>von</b> Stadt zu Stadt und bettelte überall.</li> <li>2. Wir rieten ihm ernstlich ab, nach Australien auszuwandern; jedermann riet ihm <b>von</b> dem Unternehmen ab.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Ich glaube, der Hund ist ganz frei <b>von</b> Untugenden (<i>faults</i>); es ist überdies ein Freishund.</li> <li>4. Junge Leute sollten sich gänzlich des Rauchens enthalten, denn diese Gewohnheit ist kostspielig und der Gesundheit sehr schädlich.</li> </ol> |
|---|--|

*Exercise.*

1. *For* what did you play? We only played for hazel-nuts, Sir.
2. He learnt German *for* some time at school, and was very diligent.
3. The boy did it only *from* fear of punishment, not *from* pleasure.
4. The little girl said the whole poem (*from* memory) by heart.
5. They are seen *from* time to time in the town, but not often.

*in and of.**Examples.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>We believe <b>in</b> God the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost.</i></li> <li>2. <i>One should bear one's troubles <b>in</b> patience; impatience will not make them better, and is of no avail.</i></li> <li>3. <i>You (they) ought <b>in</b> any case to have come to me first.</i></li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Wir glauben <b>an</b> Gott den Vater, den Sohn und den heiligen Geist.</li> <li>2. Man sollte seine Beschwerden mit Geduld tragen. Ungeduld macht sie nicht besser und hilft Einem Nichts.</li> <li>3. Sie hätten auf jeden Fall zuerst zu mir kommen sollen.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

*Translate.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Der Soldat ist <b>in</b> jener Schlacht am Fuß verwundet worden.</li> <li>2. Wir fiengen die Diebe alle <b>auf</b> diese Weise in acht Tagen.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Er ist Ihres Vertrauens unwürdig, denn er wird sich nie bessern.</li> <li>4. Dieser Mann war überdies auch des Mordes verdächtig.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

*Exercise.*

1. We often took drives (=spazieren fahren) *in* a carriage *in* the country.
2. Did this happen *in* the day-time or *in* the night-time?
3. Was the thief not conscious of his guilt (*Schuld, f.*)? He was innocent.
4. You must choose the smallest (*masc. acc.*) of these red balls.
5. Boys! You ought to be careful of all your books *in* school.

## Reference-Page EE.—Continued.

**B. of**, preceded by a Verb in English, and followed by Noun or Pronoun :

<i>accuse of</i> , anklagen { (Acc. of Person) (Gen. of Thing)	<i>complain of</i> , klagen über (Acc.) <i>consist of</i> , bestehen in (Dat.)	<i>remind of</i> , erinnern an (Acc.)
<i>assure of</i> , versichern (same as above)	<i>convict of</i> , überführen { (Acc. of Person) (Gen. of Thing)	<i>rob of</i> , berauben { (Acc. of Person) (Gen. of Thing)
<i>be afraid of</i> , sich fürchten vor (Dat.)	<i>despair of</i> , verzweifeln an (Dat.) <i>die of</i> , sterben an (Dat.) [ <i>an illness</i> ]	<i>speak of</i> , sprechen von (Dat.) <i>take care of</i> , sorgen für (Acc.)
<i>be ashamed of</i> , sich schämen { 1. with Gen. 2. with über and Acc.	<i>dispose of</i> , verfügen über (Acc.) <i>doubt of</i> , zweifeln an (Dat.) — zweifeln (Acc.)	— sich (Gen.) annehmen <i>take possession of</i> , sich bemächtigen (Gen.)
<i>be aware of</i> , sich (Gen.) bewußt sein	<i>get rid of</i> , sich (Gen.) entledigen	— Besitz nehmen von (Dat.)
<i>become of</i> , werden aus (Dat.)	<i>hear of</i> , hören von (Dat.)	<i>think of</i> , denken an (Acc.)
<i>be in want of</i> , bedürfen (Gen.)	<i>make sure of</i> , sich (Gen.) versichern	— gedenken (with Genitive)
<i>beware of</i> , sich hüten vor (Dat.)		
<i>boast of</i> , sich rühmen (Gen.)		

**C. of**, *not* after an adjective or verb, but followed by a Noun or Pronoun.

1. *omitted in German*, the following Noun being in the *Nominative or Accusative*.

- (i) Before names of towns, countries, rivers, as : *the town of Paris*, die Stadt Paris.
- (ii) Before materials, when not particularised, but preceded by words indicating measure, weight, number, etc., as : *a pound of sugar*=ein Pfund Zucker. [See 3, ii. below.]
- (iii) In the days of the month, as : *the third of January*=der dritte Januar.
- (vi) In the following phrases : *what sort of* . . , *two kinds of* . . , as : *What sort of man* ? = Was für ein Mann.

2. *omitted in German*, the following Noun being in the *Genitive* without preposition.

- (i) Indicating Possession, as : *the dog of my brother*=der Hund meines Bruders.
- (ii) In answer to the question : *When* ? but only in indefinite time, as : *of a morning*=des Morgens.
- (iii) In compound Prepositions governing Genitive, as : *instead of him*=anstatt seiner.
- (iv) In the phrases : *to die of hunger*=Hungers sterben ; *be of good cheer*=gutes Mutes sein.

3. *translated by von* ; with dative of the following Noun (and its attributes).

- (i) Before and after cardinal numbers, as : *two of my brothers*=zwei von meinen Brüdern.  
*a town of ten thousand inhabitants*=eine Stadt von zehntausend Einwohnern.
- (ii) Before materials, when particularised (especially by a whole clause), and preceded by words indicating measure, weight, number, etc., as : *a pound of the sugar which I like*=ein Pfund von dem Zucker, den ich liebe.
- (iii) After ordinal numbers, as : *the tenth of these days*=der zehnte von diesen Tagen.
- (iv) After titles followed by the name of a country, town, etc., as : *the Queen of England*=die Königin von England.
- (v) Before materials showing the nature of the preceding noun, as : *a ship of wood*=ein Schiff von Holz.
- (vi) After demonstrative or relative Pronouns, as : *this one of my boys*=dieser von meinen Knaben.

4. Rendered by turning the noun with *of* into an adjective, as :

*gloves of Paris*=Pariser Handschuhe ; *a ship of wood*=ein hölzernes Schiff.

5. Rendered by forming compound nouns, as :

<i>the art of poetry</i> , die Dicht-kunst	<i>the field of battle</i> , das Schlachtfeld	<i>a man of business</i> , ein Geschäfts-
<i>the desire of pleasure</i> , die Vergnü-	<i>a garland of flowers</i> , ein Blumen-	mann
gungsfucht	frau	<i>a matter of fact</i> , eine Tatsache
<i>the drop of rain</i> , der Regentropfen	<i>the love of life</i> , die Lebenslust	<i>a sign of life</i> , ein Lebenszeichen

*N.B.*—The pupil must be careful not to indulge too much in any haphazard formation of such compound nouns. Let him gradually make a collection of them, as he meets with them in his reading.

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON PAGE 102.

*Examples.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>The criminal was not only not ashamed of his deed, but boasted even of his shameful cruelty.</i></li> <li>2. <i>I must almost despair of your good-will to conclude this matter quickly.</i></li> <li>3. <i>Of what has the child died? I believe it died of the measles, or rather of their consequences.</i></li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Der Verbrecher schämte sich nicht nur seiner That nicht, sondern rühmte sich sogar seiner schändlichen Grausamkeit.</li> <li>2. Ich muß an Ihrem guten Willen, dieses Geschäft schnell zu vollenden, fast verzweifeln.</li> <li>3. An was ist das Kind gestorben? Ich glaube, es starb an den Masern, oder vielmehr an deren Folgen.</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

*Translate.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Wann hörten Sie zum letzten Mal von Ihrem Herrn Bruder?</li> <li>2. Ich glaube fast, er hat mich und alle seine Freunde ganz vergessen, denn er hat schon seit zwei Jahren nicht mehr an uns geschrieben.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Was hat der Dieb ihm genommen? Er hat ihn all seines Gepäcks beraubt.</li> <li>4. Er bemächtigte sich seiner Juwelen, seiner Uhr und überhaupt aller seiner Sachen; doch hat man ihn gefangen und des Verbrechens überführt.</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

*Exercise.*

1. What do you boast of? You have not even (nicht einmal) seen London.
2. Give me three pounds of tea at two shillings, and one pound at (zu, Dat.) three shillings and sixpence.
3. Have you any more (noch) of that tea (C. 3 iii.), which you showed me (Dat.) last week (Acc.).
4. My father died on the nineteenth of January; he was fifty-one years old.
5. Are you speaking of Henry, or are you thinking of my cousin Charles?

*Of (continued).**Examples.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>I fear very much, that that one of your friends, whom you love most, has not remained faithful to you.</i></li> <li>2. <i>The general rode over the field of battle, upon which the dead lay thickly.</i></li> <li>3. <i>This is a matter of fact, which no one doubts, who knows him.</i></li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ich fürchte sehr, derjenige von Ihren Freunden den Sie am meisten lieben, ist (sei) Ihnen nicht treu geblieben.</li> <li>2. Der General ritt über das Schlachtfeld, auf dem die Todten dicht lagen.</li> <li>3. Es ist dies eine Tatsache, die Niemand bezweifelt, der ihn kennt.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

*Translate.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Die spanischen Weine sind in der ganzen Welt berühmt.</li> <li>2. Diese Frau war immer gutes Mutes, obgleich sie viel Sorge um ihre Kinder gelitten hat.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Wir sahen die Kaiserin von Oesterreich, die in England ein Jagdschloß besaß.</li> <li>4. Ohne Ihre Hülfe können wir trotz aller Anstrengungen die Sache kaum glücklich zu Ende führen.</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

*Exercise.*

1. Give me a sign of life, when you arrive in the town of Berlin.
2. What do you do of an evening? We often speak of our old friends in England.
3. He was the fourth of those unfortunate kings, who lost their lives (*singular*).
4. Was the "Victory" (*not translated*) not a wooden ship? Yes, it was (a wooden ship).
5. We lived three months in Bâle, a town in Switzerland of 40,000 inhabitants.



## Reference-Page EE.—Continued.

*on* (*upon*)

- (a) generally with meaning of locality=*auf* [Dative or Accusative (motion)].
- (b) *after some verbs*: *to revenge oneself on*=*sich rächen an* (dat.); *to have pity on*=*Mitleid haben mit* (dat.); *to wait on*=*bedienen* (acc.); *to reflect on*=*nachdenken über* (acc.); *to live on*=*leben von* (dat.); *to feed on*=*sich nähren von* (dat.); *to play on an instrument*=*ein Instrument spielen*.
- (c) *idiomatic use*: *on* (before a day of the week or the month)=*am* (=an dem) dat., *am Montag*; *on the arrival*=*bei der Ankunft*; *on the occasion*=*bei der Gelegenheit*; *on view*=*ausgestellt*; *on this side of*=*diesseits* (gen.); *on that side of*=*jenseits*; *on account of*=*wegen* (gen.), *für* (acc.); *on my honour*=*bei meiner Ehre*=*auf Ehre*; *on board*=*an Bord*; *on foot*=*zu Fuß*; *on horseback*=*zu Pferd*; *on this condition*=*unter dieser Bedingung*; *on the contrary*=*im Gegentheil*; *on (a river)*=*an* (einem Fluß); *on one's travels*=*auf Reisen*; *on (about) me*=*bei mir*.

*to*

- (a) *after verbs of motion*=*an* (acc.), *zu* (dat.), *nach* (dat.) with towns or countries.
- (b) *after adjectives*, generally not translated, but followed by dat. [see page 94, C.]. However: *polite to*=*höflich gegen* (acc.); *cruel to*=*grausam gegen* (acc.); *deaf to*=*taub gegen* (acc.); *indifferent to*=*gleichgültig gegen* (acc.); *charitable to*=*barmherzig gegen* (acc.).
- (c) *after verbs*, generally not translated, but followed by dative. However: *amount to*=*sich belaufen auf* (acc.); *apply to*=*sich richten* (wenden) *an* (acc.); *to attend to*=*sich abgeben mit* (dat.); *consent to*=*beistimmen* (dat.)=*sich fügen in* (acc.); *to direct to*=*adressiren an* (acc.); *pay attention to*=*achten* or *Acht geben auf* (acc.); *speak to*=*sprechen zu* (dat.); *write to*=*schreiben an* (acc.).
- (d) *idiomatic use*: *to church*=*in die Kirche*; *to the market*=*auf den Markt*; *to school*=*in die Schule*; *to a house*=*in ein Haus*; *to the country* (rus)=*auf das Land*; *to the concert*=*in's Concert*; *to the townhall*=*auf's Rathhaus*; *to the post*=*auf die Post*; *to put to flight*=*in die Flucht schlagen*.

*with*

- (a) generally=*mit* (dat.), especially speaking of the instrument or means.
- (b) =*on account of*=*vor* (dat.) as: *to die with cold*=*vor Kälte sterben*.
- (c) =*among*, *near*=*bei* (dat.), as: *with the English*, *bei den Engländern*.
- (d) *after some verbs*: *to agree with*, =*to suit*=*wohl bekommen* (dat.) *es bekommt mir wohl*; *agree with* (*in opinion*) *beistimmen* (dat.); *entsprechen* (dat.)=*correspond with* or *to something*, but: *correspond*=*write to*=*correspondiren mit* (dat.); *part with*=*sich entschlagen* (gen.)=*scheiden von*. The following have Dat. of person and Acc. of thing: *provide with*=*liefern*; *present with*=*schenken*; *meet with*=*begegnen*; *reproach with*=*vorwerfen*; *trust with*=*anvertrauen*;—*it is all over with him*=*es geht zu Ende mit ihm*; *with all my heart*=*von ganzem Herzen*.

N.B.—The other prepositions do not present much difficulty; they will be found on page 52 with their German equivalents. The pupil must carefully remember that prepositions must be followed by Nouns or Pronouns; otherwise they become adverbials. As to verbs in *-ing* after prepositions, see page 116, iv. d. iii.



## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON PAGE 104.

*on and to.**Examples.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>It is not Christian-like, to revenge oneself on one's enemies; one ought rather to have pity on the misguided ones.</i></li> <li>2. <i>Do think of my question! Where did you go on his arrival?</i></li> <li>3. <i>I will pardon you, on (the) condition, that you promise me never to do it again.</i></li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Es ist nicht christlich, sich an seinen Feinden zu rächen, man sollte eher mit den Verblendeten Mitleid haben.</i></li> <li>2. <i>Denke doch über meine Frage nach! Wohin giengst du bei seiner Ankunft?</i></li> <li>3. <i>Ich will Ihnen unter der Bedingung verzeihen, daß Sie mir versprechen, es nie wieder zu tun.</i></li> </ol> |
|--|--|

*Translate.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Paris an der Seine und London an der Themse sind jetzt die größten Städte Europa's; einst war es Rom an der Tiber.</i></li> <li>2. <i>Der Fürst giebt sich mit Manchem ab, gegen den er, wenn er noch Privatmann wäre, gleichgültig wäre.</i></li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. <i>Seid nicht grausam gegen kleine Thiere; man muß nie taub sein gegen die Stimme des Schmerzes.</i></li> <li>4. <i>Wenn Sie nächstens an mich schreiben, so bitte ich Sie, Ihre Briefe an mich Numero dreißig, Ludwigstraße, München, Bayern, zu adressiren.</i></li> </ol> |
|---|--|

*Exercise.*

1. On this side of this mountain lies France, on that side Italy.
2. One often meets men on (his) journeys, whom one least expects (am wenigsten).
3. Boys, pay attention to this sentence: Be polite to your superiors (Vorgesetzten).
4. While you went to school, we were at church, and he went to his uncle.
5. This picture is on view now; it was carried to the town hall yesterday.

*with and other prepositions.**Examples.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>With the Roman emperors it was the custom to arrange great festivities for the populace, so as to gain its favour.</i></li> <li>2. <i>It grieves one to part with one's home, and all that one loves.</i></li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Bei den römischen Kaisern war es der Brauch dem Pöbel große Feste zu veranstalten, um sich denselben günstig zu stimmen.</i></li> <li>2. <i>Es tut weh' von seiner Heimat zu scheiden und von Allem, das man liebt.</i></li> </ol> |
|---|---|

*Translate.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Als ich ihm begegnete, gab' ich ihm Ihr Empfehlungsschreiben, und er stimmte mit mir darin überein daß es am Besten wäre, spät im Herbst nach Rom zu gehen.</i></li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. <i>Die Nachrichten von verschiedenen Seiten stimmen mit dem Privatbriefe, den Sie erhalten haben, darin überein, daß er schon vor mehreren Jahren in Chicago gestorben ist.</i></li> </ol> |
|---|--|

*Exercise.*

1. You may trust him with your secret; he will never betray your trust.
2. We waited, but, as he did not come, we went away to school.
3. On account of the arrival of these guests, our excursion was postponed (auf'schieben).
4. The king reproached his general with this negligence, and we think he was right.
5. This corresponds with my expectations (Erwartungen); he is ruined (ruinirt).

## REFERENCE-PAGE FF.

## Remarks on some of the Pronouns.

I. *Personal.*

(a.) The genitive of Personal Pronouns is rarely used, except with verbs and prepositions which govern the Genitive, as: *anstatt seiner, instead of him*; *ich erinnere mich Ihrer, I remember you*.

*N.B.* *um . . . wissen* and *wegen* have a peculiar alteration of *r* into *t* in the Genitive of the Personal Pronoun, *um seinetwillen, for his sake*; *ihrerwegen, on her (or their) account*.

(b.) *sich* is both dative and accusative; thus: *sich* (Dat.) *vorwerfen, to reproach oneself*, makes: *ich werfe mir vor, du wirfst dir vor, etc.*; but *sich* (Acc.) *waschen, to wash oneself*, makes: *ich wasche mich, du wäschest dich, er wäscht sich, etc.* *sich* has often the meaning of *einander=one another*, as: *sie lieben sich, they love one another*.

II. *Possessive.*

(a) *mine, thine, his, ours*, after *to be, to become, to remain, to call*, are sometimes simply and invariably *mein, dein, sein, unser*, as: *this pen is mine=diese Feder ist mein*.

(b) Such expressions as: *a brother of mine, both of us, all of you*, cannot be rendered literally; they are translated: *einer meiner Brüder; wir beide; Sie alle*.

(c) *der* (*die, das*) *meinige, etc.*; *der* (*die, das*) *meine, etc.*; and *meiner, meine, meines*, can never be used before a noun; they have exactly the same meaning, and may be used one for the other; euphony alone decides which to use in translating *mine, etc.* (see page 66, I.).

III. *Relative.*

(a) Remember that the relative pronoun *must* in German stand first in the relative clause (except it be accompanied by a preposition), and that the Assertion *must* be last in the clause, thus: *the town, the public buildings of which you admired so much, lies in my native country=die Stadt, deren öffentliche Gebäude Sie so sehr bewunderten, liegt in meinem Heimatlande*. Therefore such expressions as: *both of which, all of which, some of which*, cannot be literally translated; we must render: *both of which I saw*, by: *welche ich beide sah*; *all of which I know*, by: *die ich alle kenne*; *some of which he gave me*, by: *von denen er mir einige gab*.

(b) Relative pronouns must introduce the relative clause, though in English the relative be omitted, thus: *the man I saw* must be rendered by: *der Mann welchen* (or *den*) *ich sah*.

(c) There are two relative pronouns in German, *welcher* (etc.), and *der* (etc.); they have exactly the same meaning=*who* or *which*, and may be generally used indifferently, but if preceded by a Personal Pronoun of the 1st or 2d person, in the Nominative, *der* (and not *welcher*) must be used; in this case the personal pronoun is often, for the sake of emphasis, repeated after the relative, as: *I who went there=ich, der ich dahin gieng*; *we who sent you this present=wir, die wir Ihnen dieses Geschenk schickten*.

(d) Remember that the interpolation of a relative sentence in any clause does not in any way alter the sequence of words in this latter Clause, as:

Weil der Mann, den ich Ihnen empfahl, Ihnen nicht  
gefiehl, so werde ich Ihnen einen Andern schicken.

Because the man, whom I recommended to you, did  
not please you, I will send you another.

## EXAMPLES ON EXERCISES ON PAGE 106.

## PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE.

*Examples.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The messenger went <i>for the sake of this letter to the post</i> once more; it was <i>only on your account</i>, dear cousin (f.).</li> <li>2. Do not imagine, that you will ever obtain a prize, if you do not apply <i>yourself more to the study of German</i>.</li> <li>3. We lost <i>one of our sticks on the way hither</i>, we think.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Der Bote gieng um dieses Briefes willen noch einmal auf die Post; es war nur <i>Ihretwegen</i>, meine liebe Base.</li> <li>2. Bilde dir nicht ein, daß du je einen Preis erlangen wirst, wenn du dich des Studiums des Deutschen nicht mehr befließest.</li> <li>3. Wir verloren einen unserer Stöcke auf dem Wege hierher, glauben wir.</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

*Translate.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Um eines Dankeswortes willen stürzte sich dieser junge Mann in's Wasser, um die Blume zu holen.</li> <li>2. Sie wußten recht wohl, daß diese Feder nicht mein war, lieber Karl.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Es tut mir leid, einen meiner Handschuhe dort verloren zu haben.</li> <li>4. Erinnern Sie sich noch meiner? O ja, ich kann mich Ihrer noch sehr gut erinnern.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

*Exercise.*

1. Is this a friend of yours? Oh, no; it is one of my enemy's brothers.
2. The man, whom you saw, came to you *for my sake*. He is a messenger of mine.
3. We remember him; he went once with us to London in the train (Eisenbahn, f.).
4. We saw *both of them* at the theatre last night (gestern Abend).
5. Is this my stick? No, it is mine, you know you have lost yours.

## RELATIVE.

*Examples.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. These two men, <i>both of whom I know well</i>, are Americans.</li> <li>2. We received the letter you wrote to us from Munich.</li> <li>3. We who are Englishmen ought to learn the English language also.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Diese zwei Männer, die ich beide sehr gut kenne, sind Amerikaner.</li> <li>2. Wir haben den Brief erhalten, den Sie uns von München schrieben.</li> <li>3. Wir, die wir Engländer sind, sollten auch die englische Sprache lernen.</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

*Translate.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Wir sahen viele Knaben, von denen wir einige kannten, im Flusse baden; es war verboten.</li> <li>2. Mein Freund schrieb mir, daß ich, der ich Lust habe, Matrose zu werden, mich nach Liverpool begeben sollte.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Die Kleider, welche Sie gestern auf der Jagd trugen und die ganz naß und schmutzig waren, sind jetzt wieder ganz trocken, und der Diener, dem ich sie gab, hat sie auch wieder gereinigt und gebürstet.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

*Exercise.*

1. We saw the dog you bought yesterday, and we think it is beautiful.
2. Thou, who (thou) art in the house all day (=the whole day (acc.)), art not in good health.
3. This is the horse, the beauties of which you admired; but it is ill now.
4. Rome, whose armies conquered the world, was (passive) itself (selbst) conquered by those barbarians, whom the Romans despised as (als) barbarians.

## REFERENCE-PAGE FF.—Continued.

IV. Remarks on some *Indefinite Pronouns*.

(a) *man, one, people, they.* Do not confound this with *der Mann, the man*; *man* can never change, it can only be used in the Nominative and requires its verb always in the Singular, as: *they say, man sagt*. For Genitive, Dative, and Accusative of *man*, we use *sein, his*, in the oblique cases, as: *one must forgive one's enemies, man (sollte) muß seinen Feinden verzeihen*.

(b) *All.* (i) Before possessive adjectives, masc. and neuter Singular, *all* is invariable: *der arme Mann ist all seines Gutes beraubt worden, the poor man was robbed of all his property*.

(ii) Before possessive adjectives in the feminine Singular and in all Plurals, *alle* is (except in poetry) changed thus: fem.: N.A. *alle*; G. *aller*; D. *aller*; *Plural*: N.A. *alle*; G. *allen*; D. *allen*, as: *Alle meine Liebe, alle meine Bestrebungen sind dem Vaterlande geweiht all my love, all my endeavours are dedicated to my native land*.

(iii) *All* in the sense of *the whole* is *der (die, das) ganze*, or: *ganz* invariable before towns or countries, as: *all the world, die ganze Welt; all Germany, ganz Deutschland*.

(iv) *All that*=*alles was*, where *was* has the force of a relative pronoun, as: *Alles, was ich je besessen habe, ist verloren, all that I ever possessed, is lost*.

(v) *All* in the sense of *every*=*jeder (jede, jedes)*, as: *at all hours, zu jeder Stunde; every day = jeden Tag or alle Tage* [cf. French; *tous les jours*=*every day*].

(c) *Much, little*, before materials, are invariable, *viel, wenig*, as: *much sugar=viel (NOT vieler) Zucker; little gold=wenig (NOT weniges) Gold*.

(d) *Many, few*, are declined [as well as *both* and *all*] in the Plural, thus:

N. and A.	<i>vieler, many</i>	<i>weniger, few</i>	<i>beide, both</i>	<i>alle, all</i>	<i>manche, several, many</i>
Genitive	<i>vieler, of many</i>	<i>weniger, of few</i>	<i>beider, of both</i>	<i>aller, of all</i>	<i>mancher, of several</i>
Dative	<i>vielen, to many</i>	<i>wenigen, to few</i>	<i>beiden, to both</i>	<i>allen, to all</i>	<i>manchen, to several</i>

As: *Er glaubt wenigen Leuten=he believes (dat.) few people*.

(e) *A few, einige, mehrere*, is declined like *vieler*;

but: *a little, ein wenig*, is invariable: *ich habe ein wenig Wein; Einige Knaben haben ein wenig Deutsch gelernt=a few boys have learnt a little German*.

(f) *Another* in the sense of "a different one" is *ein anderer, eine andere*, etc., declined like an adjective in the second form (see Reference-Page G), as: *dieses Buch ist schmutzig, gib mir ein anderes=this book is dirty, give me another*.

but: *another* in the sense of "an additional one," one more of the same kind, is *noch ein, noch eine, noch eines*, as: *Ich habe diese Äpfel sehr gern, geben Sie mir noch einen=I like these apples very much, give me another*.

(g) (*Some*) *more*=*noch (mehr)* (invariable), as: *Do you like these cherries? Yes, give me some more=Haben Sie diese Kirschchen gern? Ja, bitte geben Sie mir noch mehr (or noch welche)*.

(h) *No more*=*keiner mehr, keine mehr*, etc.; decline *keiner* as adj. of 2d Form: *He has no more [money] =er hat keines mehr; er hat kein Geld mehr*.



## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON PAGE 108.

On (a), (b), (c), (d).

## Examples.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. 'Tis indeed true, <i>one</i> must look to <i>one's</i> affairs <i>oneself</i>, if they are to be properly done.</li> <li>2. All his possessions and property the prince lost in this battle; all his hopes he buried there.</li> <li>3. It is not yet the end of the world; <i>one</i> should never despair, hope remains still always to us.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Es ist in der That wahr, man muß seine Geschäfte selber besorgen, wenn sie gut besorgt sein sollen.</li> <li>2. All sein Gut und Besitztum verlor der Fürst in dieser Schlacht; alle seine Hoffnungen hat er da zu Grabe getragen.</li> <li>3. Es ist noch nicht aller Welt Ende, man muß nie verzagen, denn die Hoffnung bleibt uns ja immer noch.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

## Translate.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Es ist nicht Alles Gold, was glänzt, und doch jagen die Menschen so oft Allem nach, was von Weitem glänzt.</li> <li>2. Ich fürchte vor Allem, er werde mit all seinem Wissen es nie weit bringen.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. All sein Wissen ist nicht weit her, obschon er auf allen Universitäten studirt hat.</li> <li>4. Viele gehen voll Hoffnung in die Fremde, aber Wenige kehren glücklich wieder heim: ich sage: Bleib' im Land und nähr' dich redlich.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

## Exercise.

1. We remained ten years in America, but were unlucky in *all* our enterprises.
2. These men had indeed *much* luck, yet they made *little* money in two years.
3. He has forgotten *all* that he ever knew; he is now ill in body and mind.
4. *One* should be charitable to *one's* neighbours, for sooner or later *one* may need charity oneself.
5. There is *much* money in England; but *no* (*nicht*) *little* poverty and misery also.

On (e), (f), (g), (h).

## Examples.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. He spoke of a few people, whom I knew formerly personally.</li> <li>2. Give me another towel; I want another; this one is wet and dirty.</li> <li>3. There is no more hope; he is dead.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Er sprach von einigen Leuten, die ich selbst früher persönlich kannte.</li> <li>2. Gib mir ein anderes Handtuch; ich brauche noch eines; dieses ist naß und schmutzig.</li> <li>3. Es ist keine Hoffnung mehr da; er ist todt.</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

## Translate.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Geben Sie mir noch ein wenig Butterbrot, bitte; ich habe keines mehr, und es ist vorzüglich.</li> <li>2. Haben Sie noch (mehr) von diesen Cigarren? Wenn Sie noch von dieser Sorte haben, schicken Sie mir gefälligst ein Kistchen à 25 Mark heute noch.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Er verlangte noch einen Apfel und dann noch einen; es scheint als ob er die Äpfel sehr gerne äße.</li> <li>4. Wenige Leute sind wirklich glücklich; haben sie viel, so wünschen sie mehr; haben sie nur wenig, so sind sie mit dem Wenigen, das sie haben, nicht zufrieden.</li> </ol> |
|---|--|

## Exercise.

1. We like these apples; please send us a dozen more to our house.
2. He has spent (ausgeben) all his money; now he has not any more (no more).
3. We often wish we had chosen another town; but we have no more choice now.
4. The king has added (hinzu'fügen) another country to his kingdom.
5. The merchant had a few boxes (Kisten) (of) books; he has learnt a little German now.



## REFERENCE-PAGE GG.

## On the Government of Verbs.

Verbs may be followed in German: I. by Nouns or Pronouns; II. by other Verbs in the Infinitive or Past Participle; and, III. by subordinate clauses with a verb finite in them.

## I. Verbs followed by Nouns or Pronouns.

A. Noun or Pronoun in the NOMINATIVE (see page 82) after these six verbs only: *bleiben*, to remain; *heißen* or *geheißen werden*, to be called; *scheinen*, to appear; *sein*, to be; and *werden*, to become. As: *er ist ein König geblieben*=he has remained a king.

B. Noun or Pronoun in the ACCUSATIVE after a verb. [See also page 102, top.]

- (a) After all verbs, which in German coalesce with a preposition governing accusative, as: *to answer a question* = *antworten auf eine Frage*; *to declare him a rascal* = *ihn für einen Schurken erklären*; *to consider one a fool* = *Einen für einen Narren halten*; *to recollect a name* = *sich an einen Namen erinnern*.
- (b) After all transitive verbs, as: *einen Apfel holen*, to fetch an apple; i.e. all verbs which can be turned into the Passive Voice, as: *der Apfel wird geholt*.
- (c) After the following (and a few more) the direct object (generally the *thing* which is ...d) is in the Accusative, and the *person* to whom the thing is ...d, is in the Dative. [N.B. Dative before Accusative, see p. 83.]

[ <i>approach</i> , ( <i>sich</i> ) <i>nähern</i> ]	<i>impute</i> , zu'schreiben	<i>present (with)</i> , <i>schenken</i>	<i>show</i> , <i>zeigen</i>
<i>bring</i> , <i>bringen</i>	<i>lend</i> , <i>leihen</i>	<i>recommend</i> , <i>empfehlen</i>	[ <i>submit</i> , ( <i>sich</i> ) <i>unterwerfen</i> ]
<i>dedicate</i> , <i>widmen</i> , <i>weihen</i>	<i>offer</i> , <i>an'bieten</i>	<i>refuse</i> , <i>ab'schlagen</i>	<i>spare (save)</i> , <i>ersparen</i>
<i>give</i> , <i>geben</i>	<i>owe</i> , <i>dancken</i> , <i>schulden</i>	<i>relate</i> , <i>erzählen</i>	<i>take away</i> , <i>weg'nehmen</i>
<i>grant</i> , <i>gewähren</i>	<i>pardon</i> , <i>verzeihen</i>	<i>send</i> , <i>schicken</i>	<i>tell</i> , <i>sagen</i>

as: *er brachte dem König einen Becher*=he brought (to) the king a cup.

- (d) After the following (and a few more) the direct object (the *person*) is in the accusative, and the indirect object (the *thing*) in the genitive. [N.B. Person before Thing, see p. 83.]

<i>absolve from</i> , <i>entbinden</i>	<i>assure of</i> , <i>versichern</i>	<i>dismiss from</i> , <i>entsetzen</i>	<i>favour with</i> , <i>würdigen</i>
<i>accuse of</i> , <i>an'klagen</i>	<i>convict of</i> , <i>überführen</i>	<i>deprive of</i> , <i>entheben</i>	<i>rob of</i> , <i>berauben</i>

C. Noun or Pronoun in the DATIVE after a verb. [See also p. 102, to.]

- (a) After all verbs, which coalesce in German with a preposition governing the dative, as: *to speak of*=*sprechen von (dat.)*.
- (b) After the following (and many more), with prefixes: *bei*, *entgegen*, *vor*, *nach*, *zu*; and: *ent-*, *wider-*.

<i>advise</i> , <i>raten</i>	<i>command</i> , <i>befehlen</i>	<i>hurt</i> , <i>schaden</i>	<i>seem</i> , <i>scheinen</i>
<i>allow</i> , <i>erlauben</i>	<i>communicate</i> , <i>mit'teilen</i>	<i>meet</i> , <i>begegnen</i>	<i>serve</i> , <i>dienen</i>
<i>answer</i> , <i>antworten</i>	<i>escape from</i> , <i>entfliehen</i>	<i>obey</i> , <i>gehörchen</i>	<i>thank</i> , <i>dancken</i>
<i>avoid</i> , <i>aus'weichen</i>	<i>flatter</i> , <i>schmeicheln</i>	<i>please</i> , <i>gefallen</i>	<i>threaten</i> , <i>drohen</i>
<i>belong to</i> , <i>gehören</i>	<i>follow</i> , <i>folgen</i>	<i>reproach</i> , <i>vorwerfen</i>	<i>trust</i> , <i>zu'trauen</i>

- (c) With some impersonals, as: *it is of use*=*es nützt*; *it happens*=*es geschieht*; *it occurs (to me)*=*es fällt (mir) ein*; *I succeed*=*es gelingt mir (dir, ihm, etc.)*.

D. Noun or Pronoun in the GENITIVE after a verb. [See also pp. 100 and 102.]

- (a) After: *to mock*=*spotten*; *to need*=*bedürfen*; *be without*=*ermangeln*; *think of*=*gedenken*.

(a) With the reflexive verbs:	<i>boast of</i> , <i>sich ... rühmen</i>	<i>use</i> , <i>sich ... bedienen</i>
<i>abstain from</i> , <i>sich ... enthalten</i>	<i>enjoy</i> , <i>sich ... erfreuen</i>	<i>remember</i> , <i>sich ... erinnern</i>
<i>apply to</i> , <i>sich ... befehlen</i>	<i>pity</i> , <i>sich ... erbarmen</i>	and a few more.

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON PAGE 110.

## On I. A. and B.

## Examples.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>We heard he had become a merchant, but they had accused him of defalcations and considered him a thief.</i><br>2. <i>Pray, lend (to) the boy your umbrella, for it rains heavily.</i><br>3. <i>Did he remember that event?</i> | 1. Wir haben gehört, er sei ein Kaufmann geworden, aber man habe ihn der Veruntreuung angeklagt und halte ihn für einen Dieb.<br>2. Bitte, leihen Sie dem Knaben Ihren Regenschirm, denn es regnet stark.<br>3. Erinnerte er sich an jene Begebenheit? |
|--|--|

## Translate.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Wer immer ein ehrlicher Mann bleiben will, muß der Versuchung aus dem Wege gehen, so viel er kann.<br>2. Wir erklären den Mann für einen dummen Kerl, der sich den Gesetzen des Landes, worin er lebt, widersetzt. | 3. Bitte, lies diesen Brief; er ist von deinem alten Freund in St. Petersburg.<br>4. Die Amme erzählte den Kindern eine Geistergeschichte; doch der Vater verbot ihr, dies je wieder zu tun, denn er halte es für ungeraten ( <i>unadvisable</i> ). |
|---|---|

## Exercise.

1. They offered him a post (*Stelle, f.*) in South Africa; but he did not go.
2. I favoured him with my confidence, but I found he betrayed it (*verraten*).
3. Tell the boys they ought (*sollen*) to bring me their exercises to-morrow.
4. That good son sent his parents every Christmas (*Weihnachten, f.*) some presents.
5. He owed it to me, that he was recommended to the principal of this school.

## On I. C. and D.

## Example.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Of what are you speaking? I speak of the clergyman who preached last Sunday.</i><br>2. <i>It was of no use to the lawyer that he called up this witness in the lawsuit.</i><br>3. <i>We say it serves the fellow right (it happens right to the f.) for he has deserved heavy punishment.</i> | 1. Von was sprechen Sie? Ich spreche von dem Geistlichen, der letzten Sonntag predigte.<br>2. Es nützte dem Advokaten nichts, daß er diesen Zeugen in dem Prozesse aufrief.<br>3. Wir sagen, es geschieht dem Kerl recht, denn er hat schwere Strafe verdient. |
|---|--|

## Translate.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Wie befinden Sie sich? Ich danke, ich erfreue mich recht guter Gesundheit seit einigen Monaten ( <i>dat.</i> ).<br>2. Obgleich dieser Fehler ihm verziehen wurde, würdigte ihn der Prinzipal der Schule doch nie wieder seines ganzen Vertrauens wie vorher. | 3. Diese Art und Weise zu leben, wird nur Ihnen selbst schaden, und ich empfehle Ihnen, Ihre Lebensweise zu ändern.<br>4. Man sollte sich stets seiner Mitmenschen erbarmen wenn sie im Unglück sind, denn es ist möglich, daß wir ihrer, früher oder später, selbst bedürfen. |
|---|--|

## Exercise.

1. Do not accuse this boy *of the theft*, if you are not quite sure.
2. Children should (*sollen*) follow *the advice* of their parents and teachers.
3. You may (*können*) threaten *me* as much as you like (*wollen*); I am not afraid.
4. Permit me, my friend, to (*zu*) tell you, that I think you are wrong.
5. Whom did you meet? I only met two children, who were going to school.

## REFERENCE-PAGE GG.—Continued.

## II. Verbs followed by other Verbs. [Infinitive or Past Participle.]

A. The *ten* auxiliaries, and a few other verbs sometimes used like auxiliaries.1. *sein*, to be,

(a) with the Infinitive *Passive* in English, is rendered by *zu* with the Infinitive *active* in German, as: *it is to be feared*=*es ist zu fürchten*. [*N.B.*—In questions and in the Inversion this *es* is omitted.]

(b) with the Past Participle of another verb forms the Compound Tenses of the latter, as: *he has (is) gone*=*er ist gegangen*.

2. *haben*, to have,

(a) with the Infinitive Active of another verb, is rendered by *zu* and Infinitive: *he has to do it* = *er hat es zu tun*.

(b) with the Past Participle of another verb forms the Compound Tenses of the latter, as: *he has done it*=*er hat es getan*.

3. *werden*, to become,

(a) with the Infinitive, without *zu*, forms the Future, as: *wir werden es sehen*=*we shall see it*; *er wird es gesehen haben*=*he will have seen it*.

(b) with the Past Participle of another verb, forms its Passive voice, as: *he was (became) punished*=*er wurde bestraft*. [In Compound Tenses with another verb, use *worden*—no *ge*.]

4. The seven auxiliaries of mood: *dürfen*, to be allowed; *können*, to be able; *lassen*, to let; *mögen*, to like; *müssen*, to be obliged; *sollen*, ought; and *wollen*, to be willing, take Infinitive without *zu* after them, as: *er durfte kommen*, *he was allowed to come*.

*Note.*—The English Infinitive *Passive* after *to allow*, *lassen*, must be rendered by the Infinitive *Active* in German without *zu*, as: *I allow it to be brought*=*ich lasse es bringen*.

*N.B.*—The Compound tenses of these seven auxiliaries, if used with other verbs, are formed with their Infinitives and *not* their Past Participles, as: *er hat kommen dürfen*, *not gedurft*.

5. Some nine verbs may be used as auxiliaries (besides the *ten* above), viz.: *bleiben*, to remain; *fühlen*, to feel; *heißen*, to order; *helfen*, to help; *hören*, to hear; *sehen*, to see; *lehren*, to teach; *lernen*, to learn; and *machen*, to make, force, as: *er bleibt stehen*, *he remains standing*.

*N.B.*—These, however, form their Compound Tenses with their Past Participles as all ordinary verbs do, thus: *ist er stehen geblieben*?=has (is) he remained standing (has he stopped)?

B. All other verbs require *zu* before the Infinitive which may be governed by them, thus: *ich befehl ihm zu gehen*=*I commanded him to go*.

Remark, however, the idioms: *spazieren gehen*, to go a walk; *spazieren fahren*, to take a drive; *spazieren reiten*, to take a ride on horseback; *schlafen gehen*, to go to bed; *betteln gehen*, to go a-begging; and a few more with *gehen*, as: *trinken gehen*=to go to drink, etc.

## III. Verbs governing subordinate clauses.

(a) Verbs of saying, asking, etc., introducing indirect speech, either with or without *daß* (see page 78).

(b) Verbs of wishing, fearing, doubting, are generally followed by Subjunctive in the subordinate clause, as: *ich fürchte, er sei todt*=*I fear he is dead*.

*N.B.*—Verbs connected with *damit*, so that; *wenn*, if; *als ob*, *als wenn*, as if, require Subjunctive in the subordinate clause; the last two always *Imperfect Subjunctive*.

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON PAGE 112.

## On II. A.

*Examples.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>What one has to do, one ought to do soon and well ; it is no use to delay it.</i><br>2. <i>When the beggar came to our door, it was to be expected that the dog would bark.</i><br>3. <i>Peace has at last been concluded, after this long and terrible war.</i> | 1. Was man zu tun hat, soll man bald und gut tun; es nützt nichts, es aufzuschieben.<br>2. Als der Bettler an unsere Türe kam, war zu erwarten, daß der Hund bellte.<br>3. Es ist endlich Frieden geschlossen worden, nach diesem langen, schrecklichen Kriege. |
|--|---|

*Translate.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Mein Sohn hat lesen können, als er vier Jahre alt war; ich habe ihn selbst lesen gelehrt; denn er war zu schwächlich um in die öffentliche Schule zu gehen.<br>2. Es ist ärgerlich, daß wir an einem so schönen Tage in die Schule zu gehen haben. | 3. Es ist Zeit schlafen zu gehen; Karl ist schon lange schlafen gegangen.<br>4. Wenn es morgen schön ist, so werden wir spazieren gehen; oder, wenn wir Geld genug haben, werden wir einen Wagen nehmen und spazieren fahren. |
|---|---|

*Exercise.*

1. Our master commanded us to do this; we had to do it; it is done.
2. Was the criminal punished? Yes, he has been punished; he was imprisoned (ein'sperren).
3. I told you (Dat.), you were not allowed to go for a walk this afternoon (Acc.).
4. Where did we stop? (stehen bleiben.) We stopped (use Perfect) [on] page 132.
5. Will you help me to write this letter? it is to (an) my uncle in St. Petersburg.

## On II. B., and III.

*Examples.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Do you wish to see this man? Yes, he invited me to visit (come to see) him; but I could not come earlier.</i><br>2. <i>Let them go a-begging, if they are hungry. He who does not work shall not eat.</i><br>3. <i>They told me you had been in Switzerland and in the Tyrol last year.</i> | 1. Wünschen Sie, diesen Mann zu sehen? Ja; er hat mich eingeladen, ihn zu besuchen, aber ich konnte nicht früher kommen.<br>2. „Laß' sie betteln gehen, wenn sie hungrig sind.“ Wer nicht arbeitet, soll nicht essen.<br>3. Man sagte mir, Sie wären letztes Jahr in der Schweiz und im Tirol gewesen. |
|---|--|

*Translate.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Der Bote zweifelte, ob er die Stadt zur Zeit erreichen könnte, denn es war schon sehr spät am Tage.<br>2. Fürchten Sie nicht, er würde sich in große Gefahr stürzen, wenn er mit diesem Pferde auf die Jagd gieng? | 3. Ich habe eine Ahnung, als ob mir etwas sehr Unangenehmes zustoßen (happen) würde.<br>4. Wir schrieben Ihnen, damit Sie auf der Hut sein sollten (take care) wenn er Ihnen begegnen würde; denn er ist ein Schwindler, und man darf ihm nicht trauen. |
|---|---|

*Exercise.*

1. We do not fear, that you will meet with [any] thieves; but take care (see 4 above).
2. Has any one (Jemand) commanded you to go to their neighbour this evening?
3. I do this, so that you may know, that you have one friend in the old country.
4. They tell me, that you went for a walk during this rain; it was very foolish (töricht).
5. The horses go to drink, and that boy leads the first of them.



## REFERENCE-PAGE HH.

## On the Translation of the English Infinitive.

The English Infinitive may be used as a substantive, or it may be governed by a verb, an adjective, or a noun.

I. The **English Infinitive** used *substantively* :

(a) As *Subject*, translate it by an infinitive with neuter article, as : *To lie is disgraceful*=*das Lügen ist verabscheuungswürdig*. *To sit too long*=*das zu lange Sitzen*.

*N.B.*—The article is sometimes omitted, especially in proverbs : *Seten und Arbeiten*, *To pray and to work*.

(b) As *Object* :

(1) dependent on another verb, as : *he is used to work*, *er ist an das Arbeiten gewöhnt*.

(2) *how to...*, *what to...*, *where to...*, after such words as *to know*, must be resolved into *subordinate clauses* introduced by *wie*, *was*, *wo* (*wohin*, etc.), as : *he knows how to write*=*er weiß, wie man schreibt* (or *schreiben sollte*).

(3) The English Accusative and Infinitive after *to know*, *to believe*, *to wish*, etc., must be resolved into a subordinate clause with or without *daß*, *that*, as : *We knew that man to be a thief*=*wir wußten, daß jener Mann ein Dieb war*—or : *jener Mann war ein Dieb*.

II. The English Infinitive governed by a **Verb**. [For this, see page 112.]III. The English Infinitive governed by an **adjective**. (*Remember* : Infin. at end of sentence) :

(a) Such adjectives as *curious*, *neugierig*; *difficult*, *schwer*; *easy*, *leicht*; *eager*, *begierig*; *possible*, *möglich*; *impossible*, *unmöglich*, require in German the Infinitive with *zu* : *it will be easy to do that*=*es wird leicht sein, das zu tun*.

(b) Adjectives preceded by *too*, *zu*; and adjectives followed by *enough*, *genug*, require the Infinitive with *um...zu*, as : *He is too good to do this wicked deed*=*er ist zu gut, um diese schlechte That zu begehen*; *we are rich enough to buy that house*=*wir sind reich genug, um dieses Haus zu kaufen*.

IV. The English Infinitive after some Nouns, such as *the choice*, *die Wahl*; *the liberty*, *die Freiheit*; *the courage*, *der Mut*; *the necessity*, *die Notwendigkeit*; *a desire*=*a mind*, *Luft* (without article); *the duty*, *die Pflicht*; *the pleasure*, *das Vergnügen*; *the wish*, *der Wunsch*, must be rendered by Infinitive with *zu* in German, as :

*It will be a pleasure for me to write to you*=*es wird mir ein Vergnügen sein, an Sie zu schreiben*;  
*I had a mind to go to London*=*ich hatte Lust, nach London zu gehen*.

**Idiomatic** : *He is just about to go there*=*er will eben dahin gehen*.

**Purpose** is indicated by *um...zu* with Infinitive, as :

*He gave me money to buy the books*=*er gab mir Geld, um die Bücher zu kaufen*.



## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON PAGE 114.

## On I. and II.

## Example.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>We scarcely know how to act in this affair; at any rate it is advisable to wait a little longer.</i><br>2. <i>Of what use is it to hunt after money and wealth?</i><br>3. <i>He hated to ride in a railway carriage; he preferred to ride on horseback.</i> | 1. Wir wissen kaum, wie wir in dieser Angelegenheit handeln sollen; jedenfalls ist ein längeres Warten geraten.<br>2. Was nützt das Haschen nach Geld und Gut?<br>3. Er haßte das Fahren in der Eisenbahn; er zog das Reiten zu Pferd vor. |
|---|--|

## Translate.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Wer das Säen (sowing seed) vernachlässigt, kann nicht auf reichliches Ernten (reaping) hoffen.<br>2. Dasßpäte Zu-Bett-gehen und dasßpäte Aufstehen am Morgen sind der Gesundheit nachtheilig, wenn es zu oft geschieht. | 3. Man braucht sich über sein Stehlen nicht zu verwundern, denn sein Gang zum Lügen war ja wohlbekannt.<br>4. Zum Faulenzen (idling) habe ich keine Zeit; der ganze Tag ist bei mir mit Arbeiten ausgefüllt. |
|--|--|

## Exercise.

1. To-walk-too-rapidly or to-run-too-much is injurious to one's health.
2. My dear mother always told me: "To-pray and to-work bring blessing."
3. To-read in the dusk (Dämmerung) is injurious to one's eyes (say: to the eyes).
4. Do you know where to go (whither you should go) and what to say (what you should say)?
5. The king believed him to be a very capable soldier; but he proved himself to be rash.

## On III. and IV.

## Example.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>It is scarcely possible to let Louisa have this letter before she goes away.</i><br>2. <i>He had not the courage at all, to stand up to his accuser; he was too cowardly to face public opinion.</i><br>3. <i>We should like (should have a mind) to hear him sing once; but it cannot be to-day.</i> | 1. Es ist kaum möglich, Louisen diesen Brief zukommen zu lassen, vor sie fortgeht.<br>2. Er hatte gar nicht den Mut, vor seinen Ankläger zu treten; er war zu feige sich der öffentlichen Meinung entgegenzustellen.<br>3. Wir hätten Lust, ihn einmal singen zu hören, aber es geht heute nicht. |
|---|---|

## Translate.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Dieser Mann war reich genug, um den Verlust nicht zu fühlen.<br>2. Dieser gute Vater gab seinem Sohne Geld, um drei Monate in Rom zuzubringen, und sich daselbst mit den Werken der alten Meister bekannt zu machen. | 3. Es würde uns wirklich sehr viel Vergnügen machen, Sie mit uns zu nehmen, aber wir fürchten, Sie seien nicht stark genug, um die Anstrengungen auszuhalten.<br>4. Hatte er nicht Lust, Soldat zu werden? O ja, aber sein Vater erlaubte es nicht. |
|---|---|

## Exercise.

1. Will you give us the pleasure to come to (zu) us to-morrow evening?
2. The little girl was curious to see the nest, which her brother brought home (nach Hause).
3. You see, you have the choice to go to London or to (nach) Bristol.
4. We gave you this watch, in order to reward you for your diligence (Hleiß m.).
5. When the messenger arrived, we were just about to leave the town.

## REFERENCE-PAGE KK.

On the Translation of the verbal in *-ing*.

I. The verbal in *-ing* used SUBSTANTIVELY, whether subject or object in a sentence, is always translated by an Infinitive *without zu*, but with the article, in German, unless the German idiom has a real substantive for the same idea, thus :

*hunting*, das Jagen or die Jagd ; *playing*, das Spielen or das Spiel.

II. The verbal in *-ing* in APPPOSITION to a noun or adjective is rendered by an Infinitive *with zu* in German, as :

*the necessity of doing this*=die Notwendigkeit, dies zu tun ; *it is easy of acquiring*=es ist leicht zu lernen.

III. The verbal in *-ing* used as an ADJECTIVE is always translated by the Present Participle in German, and declined like an adjective in the three forms (see Reference-page G) if used before a noun, but it remains invariable if used after *to be*, *to become*, etc., as :

ein liebendes Kind, a loving child ; I have a living dog, ich habe einen lebenden Hund ; der Brief ist unterhaltend (invariable), the letter is amusing ; thus : laughing, lachend.

IV. The verbal in *-ing* used in its verbal character, i.e. as a VERB,—

(a) when completing the signification of another verb, as : to go on *doing* a thing, etc., is translated by Infinitive with *zu*, as : er hörte auf, zu singen=he stopped singing.

(b) after *instead of* and *without*, it is translated by Infinitive with *zu*, as : we went there *instead of remaining at home*=wir giengen dahin, anstatt zu Hause zu bleiben.

(c) When after a noun or pronoun, with a relative force, it is translated by a relative clause in German, as : *the man bearing the weight*=der Mann, der die Last trug, . . .

N.B.—Distinguish this from the next following meaning of the verbal in *-ing*.

(d) In all other cases the verbal in *-ing* is resolved into a subordinate clause, introduced by a subordinate conjunction [generally daß, or one compounded with daß, except in iv. below].

(i.) Verbal in *-ing* preceded by a possessive adjective, as : he heard of my *doing this*=er hörte, daß ich dies tat.

(ii.) Verbal in *-ing* preceded by a Genitive, as : his father's *knowing this* does not seem to disturb him=daß sein Vater dies weiß, scheint ihn nicht zu bekümmern.

(iii.) Verbal in *-ing* preceded by a preposition (except *instead of* and *without*, and sometimes *on* or *of* [see IV. b above] ; with these latter the Infinitive with *zu* is preferable) : he is paid for *playing*=er ist dafür bezahlt, daß er spielt [for that, that he plays].

(iv.) Verbal in *-ing* not dependent on another word, indicates *reason*, or *time*.

(aa) *reason* : translate the verbal in *-ing* by subordinate clause introduced by *da* or *weil*, because, as : he could do it, being rich=er konnte es tun, da (weil) er reich ist.

(bb) *time* : (A) referring to a past event, use *als*, when ; thus : arriving at the river, he hesitated to cross over=als er am Fluße ankam, zögerte er hinüberzugehen.

(B) referring to an action taking place at the same time as another, use *indem* or *während*, whilst, as : eating his dinner, he conversed with me=während (or indem) er zu Mittag speiste, sprach er mit mir.

(C) referring to an action completed before another action, use *nachdem*, after, thus : having done this, he went away=nachdem er dies getan hatte, gieng er weg.

## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON PAGE 116.

## On I. II. III.

## Examples.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Riding is very conducive to health, if it is not continued to complete exhaustion.</i><br>2. <i>Cultivating the earth is an old and honourable occupation.</i><br>3. <i>Do read instructive books, instead of these stupid novels, which are so exciting.</i> | 1. Das Reiten ist der Gesundheit sehr günstig, wenn es nicht bis zur vollständigen Ermüdung fortgesetzt wird.<br>2. Das Bebauen der Erde ist ein alter und ehrenwerter Beruf.<br>3. Lesen Sie doch belehrende Bücher statt dieser dummen Romane, die so aufregend sind. |
|---|---|

## Translate.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Seinen Mantel fester an sich ziehend, trostete er dem Sturm.<br>2. Der Wunsch, Sie wieder zu sehen, bewog mich heute zu kommen. | 3. Das Trinken und Spielen hat schon so Viele zu Grunde gerichtet.<br>4. Lassen Sie doch das Wetten; man verliert zuletzt ja doch immer dabei. |
|--|--|

## Exercise.

1. He loves hunting so much, that he neglects his business often.
2. The child possesses two birds, one [a] singing [one], and [the other] a speaking one.
3. A shrieking (geßend) whistling (Piff m.) announced the arrival of the train.
4. Let us understand that there is a need of going, and we will go at once (sogleich).
5. It is easy to spend money; it is not so easy to earn some (welches).

## On IV.

## Examples.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Cease playing on that violin; hearing it all day long is disagreeable.</i><br>2. <i>We saw two men bringing a heavy box up-stairs.</i><br>3. <i>Without seeing it, we believe it.</i> | 1. Hören Sie auf, die Geige zu spielen; es ist unangenehm das den ganzen Tag zu hören.<br>2. Wir sahen zwei Männer, welche eine schwere Kiste die Treppe hinaustrugen.<br>3. Ohne es zu sehen, glauben wir es. |
|---|--|

## Translate.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Als ich den Mann sah, rief ich ihm zu, er solle mir die Zeitung sogleich herbringen.<br>2. Da dieses Buch Ihrem Freunde gehört, ist es Ihre Pflicht, es ihm zurückzugeben, sobald Sie es zu Ende gelesen haben. | 3. Indem er mit der einen Hand einen Zweig ergriff, streckte er die andere dem Ertrinkenden (drowning one) entgegen.<br>4. Nachdem der Zug (train) schon angefangen hatte, sich zu bewegen, sprang der Mann in ein Coupé (compartment) und verließ sich (hurt) am Weine. |
|--|--|

## Exercise.

1. Believing [cause] this news, I sent at once to (nach) my friend.
2. We heard of your having passed (bestehen) this examination (Examen, n.).
3. Did you see that woman selling (who sold) apples in the market?
4. He often read a book, smoking his cigar, whilst we wrote our letters.
5. You were speaking of his playing the piano. (thereof that he . . . played.)

## REFERENCE-PAGE LL.

## Remarks on the Past Participle.

## The Past Participle—

- (a) used as a *verb*, is invariable, as : *ich habe sie gesehen*. Idiomatically the Past Participle as a verb may replace a whole sentence, as : *Gesetzt, er sei arm* = *Let us suppose, he is poor* ; *Zugegeben, = I grant you*, etc. ; or it may imply a command, as : *Aufgestanden!* *Come, get up*, etc.
- (b) used as an *adjective*, the Past Participle may be—
- (i) an attribute, declined like an adjective, as : *der gebildete Mensch* ; *ein geliebter Mann*.
- (ii) a predicate and invariable, as : *er ist gebildet*, *he is educated*.
- (c) used as a *noun*, the Past Participle changes like an adjective, as : *der Gefangene*, *the prisoner (caught-one)* ; *ein Gelehrter*, *a learned man*.

*N.B.*—*kommen* and *gehen* sometimes form idiomatic phrases with the Past Participle of *laufen*, *fliegen*, *verlieren*, etc., as : *er kommt geflogen* = *he comes flying* ; *das Buch ist verloren gegangen* = *the book has (gone) been lost*.

## On the idiomatic use of some Tenses.

As a rule, English and German agree with each other in the use of the Tenses ; it must however be remembered that the English : *I am —ing* ; *I was —ing* ; *I shall be —ing* ; *I have been —ing*, etc., are quite inadmissible forms in German. The want of these descriptive forms is supplied by such words as *eben*, *gerade*, etc., as : *I was writing*, *ich schrieb eben*, *ich schrieb gerade* ; and so also in the other tenses. Emphasis, as in *I do write* ; *I did go*, must in German also be expressed by adverbials, as : *ich schreibe wirklich* ; *ich gieng in der That*.

- (i) The *Present*, often with *noch*, *so gleich*, etc., often stands for a near future, as : *er sieht ihn noch heute*, = *he will see him to-day* ; *ich gehe so gleich* = *I'll go at once*.
- (ii) The *Imperfect* in English must be rendered by the *Perfect* in German, when an action completely past is referred to and not in relation to another past action, as : *I was in Paris. How long were you there?* *Ich bin in Paris gewesen. Wie lange sind Sie dort gewesen?* (Implying that the stay in Paris is past and over.)
- a. If, however, the time is fixed by reference to another past action or event, the two languages agree in the use of the Imperfect, as : *He was in Paris during the siege* = *Er war in Paris während der Belagerung*.
- b. In mentioning actions recently passed, and in colloquial sentences, the Germans prefer the Perfect to the Imperfect, as : *I was there yesterday* = *ich bin gestern dort gewesen*.
- (iii) The English *Perfect*, referring to an action distinctly understood as *uncompleted* at the time of speaking, must be rendered into German by the Present tense, with *schon* (*already*) or *seit* (*since*) ; as : *How long have you been in Rome?* = *Wie lange sind Sie schon in Rom?* *I have been here two years* = *Ich bin seit zwei Jahren hier*. (Implying that he is still in Rome.)

[The other tenses present no difficulties.]



## EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES ON PAGE 118.

## On I.

## Examples.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. <i>Take care! There is a carriage coming! Let it drive past.</i></p> <p>2. <i>Granted, that he is on the road to recovery, it will be a long time before he is quite well, as before.</i></p> <p>3. <i>The people have not yet received the promised present.</i></p> | <p>1. <i>Aufgepaßt! da kommt ein Wagen gefahren. Laßt ihn vorüberfahren.</i></p> <p>2. <i>Angenommen, er sei auf dem Wege der Besserung, so wird es doch noch lange gehen, bis er ganz gesund ist, wie früher.</i></p> <p>3. <i>Die Leute haben das versprochene Geschenk noch nicht erhalten.</i></p> |
|---|--|

## Translate.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. <i>Frisch in's Wasser gegangen! Es ist nicht zu fast.</i></p> <p>2. <i>Verloren! Es bleibt mir nichts übrig, als nach Hause zu gehen und dem Spiele zu entsagen.</i></p> | <p>3. <i>Die Gelehrten sind nicht einig, ob diese Münze von den Griechen oder den Persern abstamme.</i></p> <p>4. <i>Aufgefessen! (To horse!) Vorwärts! frisch in die Schlacht geritten.</i></p> |
|--|--|

## Exercise.

1. These parents have lost three of their beloved children.
2. "Loved and Lost" is the title (Titel, *m.*) of a much-admired waltz (Walzer, *m.*).
3. Alas! one of my gloves has been (gone) lost at the ball; I am ashamed.
4. Don't beg always, why not work? (Use Past Participle.)
5. Granted that he is rich, he should not forget that he may (can) become poor again.

## On II.

## Examples.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. <i>Although I do not know the people, yet I'll see if I cannot help them.</i></p> <p>2. <i>She came into the room as he was sitting down to (his) dinner.</i></p> <p>3. <i>We do admire the singer whom we have just been hearing.</i></p> | <p>1. <i>Obgleich ich die Leute nicht kenne, will ich doch sehen, ob ich Ihnen nicht helfen kann.</i></p> <p>2. <i>Sie kam in das Zimmer, als er sich eben zum Mittagessen niedergesetzt hatte.</i></p> <p>3. <i>Wir bewundern den Sänger in der That, den wir soeben gehört haben.</i></p> |
|--|---|

## Translate.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. <i>Wie lange sind Sie schon in Paris? Ich bin schon seit drei Wochen hier, aber ich langweile mich.</i></p> <p>2. <i>Waren Sie je in St. Petersburg während des Winters? Man macht sich keine Vorstellung (idea) von der Kälte.</i></p> | <p>3. <i>Reisen Sie heute noch ab? Ja, ich muß morgen in Hamburg sein.</i></p> <p>4. <i>Kann der Herr Englisch? Nein, und doch lernt er es schon seit zwei Jahren; er ist schon mehr als zwei Jahre in England und nimmt Stunden im Englischen.</i></p> |
|---|---|

## Exercise.

1. Where were you? (Perf). I was in my room (Impf.) when you arrived.
2. I do like to hear the cuckoo (Rufuß, *m.*); I am often listening to it (zu'hören, *dat.*).
3. How long has he been learning German? He has been learning it for a whole year (acc.).
4. Were you in Paris at the time of the Exhibition (Ausstellung, *f.*) of (von) 1878?
5. We should have seen you, if it had not been such a (a so) dark night.



## SOME IDIOMS AND PROVERBS.

*To speak at random.*  
*To eat humble pie.*  
*He is ruined.*  
*This man is very conceited.*  
*To try to lay aside the idea of a thing.*  
*It is not becoming to say this.*  
*I am sorry ; I like to dance.*  
*They condemned him.*  
*It is customary with us.*  
*You came off second-best.*  
*We assist our friends.*  
*This uniform suits him.*  
*To put aside childish things.*  
*You did not get on well, Sir.*  
*He has brought his pigs to market.*  
*Every one has his hobby.*  
*He is badly off : he is very ill.*  
*They live in fine style, indeed.*  
*He attaches importance to it.*  
*We will pass it over.*  
*Things may take a turn.*  
*That is of no importance.*  
*You must put up with it.*  
*He was well liked here.*  
*What (whom) do you take me for ?*  
*Be careful of your clothes, children.*

In den Tag hinein reden.—Dummheiten sagen.  
 Zu Kreuze kriechen (lit. *crawl to the cross*).  
 Er ist zu Grunde gerichtet ; er ist ruiniert.  
 Dieser Mensch ist sehr von sich eingenommen.  
 Versuchen, sich Etwas aus dem Sinne zu schlagen.  
 Es schickt sich nicht, dies zu sagen.  
 Es tut mir leid ; ich tanze gern (*willingly*).  
 Sie brachen den Stab über ihn.  
 Es ist bei uns Rechtens. — Es ist der Brauch.  
 Sie haben den Kürzeren gezogen.  
 Wir greifen unseren Freunden unter die Arme.  
 Diese Uniform steht ihm gut.  
 Die Kinderschuhe vertretten.  
 Sie haben es nicht weit gebracht, mein Herr.  
 Er hat alles an den Mann gebracht.  
 Jeder hat sein Stiefenpferd.  
 Es steht schlecht mit ihm ; er ist sehr krank.  
 Sie leben auf hohem Fuße in der Tat.  
 Es ist ihm viel daran (an der Sache) gelegen.  
 Wir wollen Ihnen durch die Finger sehen.  
 Das Blatt kann sich wenden.  
 Das hat Nichts zu sagen. — Es ist alles Eins.  
 Sie müssen sich darein schicken.  
 Er war hier wohl gelitten.  
 Für was (Für wen) halten Sie mich ?  
 Gebt Acht auf euere Kleider, Kinder !

*Some very common Proverbs.*

*All is well that ends well.*  
*More haste less speed.*  
*Birds of a feather flock together.*  
*Practice makes perfect.*  
*Nothing venture, nothing win.*  
*Lightly come, lightly gone.*  
*Like father like son.*  
*With the Romans do as the Romans do.*  
*The early bird picks up the worm.*  
*To-morrow is soon enough !*  
 (Excuse for procrastination.)

Ende gut, Alles gut.  
 Eile mit Weile.  
 Gleich und gleich gesellt sich gern.  
 Übung macht den Meister.  
 Wer nichts wagt, gewinnt nichts.  
 Wie gewonnen, so zerronnen.  
 Der Apfel fällt nicht weit vom Stamme.  
 Mit den Wölfen muß man heulen.  
 Morgenstund' hat Gold im Mund.  
 „Morgen, morgen, nur nicht heute,“  
 Sagen alle faulen Leute !

## POEM.

(To be learnt by heart during this Term.)

## Die Drei Indianer (Lenau, 1802-50).

1. Mächtig zürnt der Himmel im Gewitter;  
Schmettert manche Rieseneich' in Splittter;  
Uebertönt des Niagara's Stimme;  
Und mit seiner Blitze Flammenruten  
Peitscht er schneller die beschäumten Fluten,  
Daß sie stürzen mit empörtem Grimme.
2. Indianer stehn am lauten Strande,  
Lauschen nach dem wilden Wogenbrande,  
Nach des Waldes bangem Sterbgestöhne.  
Greis der Eine, mit ergrautem Haare,  
Aufrecht, überragend seine Jahre,  
Die zwei andern, seine starken Söhne.
3. Seine Söhne jeht der Greis betrachtet;  
Und sein Blick sich dunkler jeht umnachtet,  
Als die Wolken, die den Himmel schwärzen;  
Und sein Aug' versendet wild're Blitze,  
Als das Wetter durch die Wolkenriffe;  
Und er spricht aus tief empörtem Herzen:
4. „Fluch den Weißen! Ihren letzten Spuren!  
„Jeder Welle Fluch, worauf sie fuhren,  
„Die einst, Bettler, unsern Strand erklettert!  
„Fluch dem Windhauch, dienstbar ihrem Schiffe!  
„Hundert Flüche jedem Felsenriffe,  
„Das sie nicht hat in den Grund geschmettert!  
5. „Täglich über's Meer in wilder Eile  
„Fliegen ihre Schiffe, gift'ge Pfeile;  
„Treffen uns're Küste mit Verderben!  
„Nichts hat uns die Räuberbrut gelassen,  
„Als im Herzen tödtlich bitt'res Hassen;  
„Kommt, ihr Kinder, kommt; wir wollen sterben!“  
6. Also sprach der Alte, und sie schneiden  
Ihren Rachen von den Uferweiden.  
Drauf sie nach des Stromes Mitte ringen,  
Und nun werfen sie weithin die Ruder.  
Armverschlungen, Vater, Sohn und Bruder  
Stimmen an, ihr Sterbelied zu singen.
7. Laut' ununterbroch'ne Donner krachen;  
Blitze flattern um den Todesnachen;  
Ihn umtaumeln Möven, sturmesmunter.  
Und die Männer kommen festentschlossen  
Singend schon dem Falle zugeschossen,  
Stürzen jeht den Catarakt hinunter.

## The Three Indians.

(Literal Translation.)

1. Majestically angry is the sky in its thunderstorm;  
It rends many a giant oak into fragments;  
It drowns the Niagara Falls' voice;  
And with the flaming rods of its lightning  
It whips into more rapid motion the foaming waters,  
So that they rush down in riotous fury.
2. Some Indians are standing by the noisy bank  
Listening to the wild breaking of the waves,  
And to the trembling death-groans of the forest.  
The one an old man, with hair turned grey,  
But upright, overtowering his old age,  
The two others, his strong sons.
3. And now the old man looks at his sons,  
And his glance becomes gloomy with a  
Gloom darker than the clouds which blacken the sky;  
And his eye sends forth lightnings, fiercer  
Than the storm through the rifts in the clouds;  
And he speaks, from his deeply wrathful heart:
4. “Curses upon the White men! Upon their furthest  
steps!  
“Curses upon every wave, on which they rode,  
“They who once, beggars, climbed on our shore!  
“Curses upon each breath of wind wafting onward  
their ships!  
“A hundred curses upon each rocky reef  
“That did not wreck them utterly!  
5. “Day by day across the Sea in wild haste  
“Fly their ships, empoisoned arrows,  
“Striking our shores with ruin!  
“Nothing that brood of robbers has left us  
“Save in our hearts a deadly, bitter hatred;  
“Come, my children, come; we will die!”  
6. Thus spoke the old man, and they cut loose  
Their canoe from the willows of the bank.  
Then they struggle towards the centre of the stream,  
And now they throw afar their oars.  
Interlacing their arms, father, son, and brother  
Begin to sing their song of death.
7. Loudly roars the unceasing thunder;  
Lightnings flash like ribbons around the death canoe,  
Sea-gulls tumble round it, rejoicing in the storm.  
And the men are coming, firmly resolved,  
Shooting towards the Falls, and still singing,  
Now they dash down the cataract.

## A piece from Schiller's "The Bell."

(To be learnt by heart.)

## Literal rendering.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. Wohlthätig ist des Feuers Macht,<br/>Wenn sie der Mensch bezähmt, bewacht;<br/>Und was er bildet, was er schafft,<br/>Das dankt er dieser Himmelskraft.</p> <p>5. Doch furchtbar wird die Himmelskraft,<br/>Wenn sie der Fessel sich entrafft,<br/>Einhertritt auf der eig'nen Spur,<br/>Die freie Tochter der Natur!</p> <p>9. Wehe, wenn sie losgelassen,<br/>Wachsend, ohne Widerstand,<br/>Durch die vollbelebten Gassen<br/>Wälzt den ungeheuren Brand!</p> <p>13. Denn die Elemente hassen<br/>Das Gebild der Menschenhand.<br/>Aus den Wolken quillt der Segen,<br/>Strömt der Regen;</p> <p>17. Aus der Wolke ohne Wahl<br/>Zuckt der Strahl!<br/>Hört ihr 's wimmern hoch vom Turm?<br/>Das ist Sturm!</p> <p>21. Rot wie Blut<br/>Ist der Himmel.<br/>Das ist nicht des Tages Glut!<br/>Welch' Getimmel</p> <p>25. Straßen auf!<br/>Dampf wallt auf!<br/>Flackernd steigt die Feuerfäule;<br/>Durch der Straße lange Zeile</p> <p>29. Wächst es fort mit Windeseile.<br/>Kochend, wie aus Ofens Rachen<br/>Glüh'n die Lüfte; Balken krachen;<br/>Pfeilen stürzen; Fenster klirren;</p> <p>33. Kinder sammern; Mütter irren;<br/>Thiere wimmern unter Trümmern;<br/>Alles rennet, rettet, flüchtet;<br/>Taghell ist die Nacht gelichtet;</p> | <p>1. Beneficent is the strength of fire<br/>As long as man restrains and watches it;<br/>And whate'er he fashions, whate'er he creates,<br/>He owes to this heavenly power.</p> <p>5. But awful is this heavenly power,<br/>When she casts off her fetters<br/>And strides onward in her own tracks<br/>The released daughter of Nature!</p> <p>9. Woe, if unrestrained,<br/>Ever growing, unopposed,<br/>Through the populous streets<br/>She rolls the monstrous conflagration!</p> <p>13. For the elements do hate<br/>The creations of human hands.<br/>Down from the clouds flows blessing,<br/>Pours the rain;</p> <p>17. Down from the clouds without favour<br/>Flashes the lightning.<br/>Hear ye the wailing from the high steeple?<br/>That means: "Fire!"</p> <p>21. Red like blood<br/>Are the heavens.<br/>That is not the sun's glow!<br/>What crowding</p> <p>25. All along the streets!<br/>Steam rolls upwards!<br/>Flickering ascends the column of fire;<br/>Through the street's long row of houses</p> <p>29. Onwards it moves with the speed of the wind.<br/>Red hot, as from the mouth of an oven<br/>The air glows; beams are crashing;<br/>Pillars falling; windows rattling;</p> <p>33. Children wailing; mothers straying;<br/>Beasts are whining under ruins;<br/>Each one hurries, saves, rescues;<br/>Darkness is illumined to broad daylight.</p> |
|---|---|

37. Durch der Hände lange Kette,  
Um die Wette  
Fliegt der Eimer; hoch im Bogen  
Spritzen Quellen, Wasserivogen.
41. Heulend kommt der Sturm geslogen,  
Der die Flamme brausend sucht.  
Prasselnd in die dürre Frucht  
Fällt sie, in des Speichers Räume,
45. In der Sparren dürre Bäume;  
Und als wollte sie im Wehen  
Mit sich fort der Erde Wucht  
Reißen in gewalt'ger Flucht,
49. Wächst e in des Himmels Höhen  
Riesengroß!—Hoffnungslos  
Weicht der Mensch der Götterstärke!  
Müßig steht er seine Werke
53. Und bewundernd untergehen.—

Leergebrannt ist die Stätte,  
Wilder Stürme rauhes Bette.  
In den öden Fensterhöhlen

57. Wohnt das Grauen,  
Und des Himmels Wolken schauen  
Hoch hinein.—Einen Blick  
Nach dem Grabe seiner Habe
61. Sendet noch der Mensch zurück;  
Greift fröhlich dann zum Wanderstabe.  
Was Feuerswuth ihm auch geraubt,  
Ein süßer Trost ist ihm geblieben:
65. Er zählt die Häupter seiner Lieben,  
Und sieh'! ihm fehlt kein teures Haupt.

37. Through long chains of hands,  
In eager rivalry,  
Fly the fire-buckets; up in high arches,  
Fountains are rising, floods of water.
41. Howling the storm-wind comes rushing,  
That, roaring, seeks the flames.  
Upon the dry crops, hissing  
They fall, and into the rooms of the storehouse,
45. And the dry beams of the wood-work;  
And as if with their breath they wished  
Heavenwards to tear the whole earth's weight  
In one mighty rush,
49. They grow into the heights of heaven  
Giantlike.—Bereft of hope,  
Man yields to divine force!  
Idle and yet admiring, he beholds
53. His works being destroyed.—

Burnt out is the homestead,  
Of wild storms now the rough bed.  
In the empty window-caverns

57. Horror dwells,  
And Heaven's clouds gaze in  
From on high.—One glance only  
Towards the grave of his possessions
61. Does man cast back;  
Then he cheerfully seizes his wanderer's staff.  
Whate'er the fire's fury may have deprived him of,  
One sweet consolation remains to him:
65. He counts the heads of his loved ones,  
And, lo, not one dear head is missing.

Die drei bedeutendsten deutschen Dichter waren:

Goethe (Johann Wolfgang von), geboren zu Frankfurt am Main, den 28<sup>ten</sup> August 1749; gestorben zu Weimar den 22<sup>ten</sup> März 1832.

Schiller (Friedrich), geboren zu Marbach den 11<sup>ten</sup> November 1759; gestorben zu Weimar den 9<sup>ten</sup> Mai 1805.

Lessing (Gottlieb Ephraim), geboren zu Camenz den 22<sup>ten</sup> Januar 1729; gestorben zu Braunschweig, den 15<sup>ten</sup> Februar 1781.



## Short piece for Composition.

*Notice.*—Do not omit to refer to the pages mentioned for reference here.

A young man had for several days been suffering<sup>1</sup> from<sup>2</sup> severe<sup>3</sup> toothache<sup>4</sup> and resolved<sup>5</sup> at last<sup>6</sup> to go to a dentist<sup>7</sup> and have his tooth drawn<sup>8</sup>. He went slowly<sup>9</sup> to the dentist's house but came out<sup>10</sup> again very soon. One of his friends seeing him coming out from the dentist's house, and observing<sup>11</sup> that he looked<sup>12</sup> quite<sup>13</sup> happy, said to him: "Ah! I see, you have got rid of<sup>14</sup> that tooth at last; you look quite happy; I congratulate<sup>15</sup> you!" "Oh no," answered the young man, "what makes me look so happy is, that the dentist was not at home!"

*Words to above.*

1. *to suffer* = *leiden*, irregular. See p. 50.
2. *from* = *an* (dat.). See p. 98, *from* (e).
3. *severe* = *stark*. See p. 28.
4. *toothache* = *Zahnweh* (n.).
5. *to resolve* = *sich* (acc.) *entschließen*. See p. 51 (*entschließen*).
6. *at last* = *endlich*, *zuletzt*.
7. *the dentist* = *der Zahnarzt*, —*es*, *u. e.*
8. *have drawn* = *herausziehen lassen*. See p. 51 (irregular).

9. *slowly* = *langsam* (adverb).
10. *to come out* (*again*) = (*wieder*) *herauskommen*, separable verb, irregular. See *kommen*, p. 50.
11. *to observe* = *beobachten*, regular and inseparable.
12. *to look* = *aussehen*, separable, irreg. See p. 51.
13. *quite* = *ganz* (adverb).
14. *to get rid of* = *loswerden*, separable (like *werden*) with accusative.
15. *to congratulate* = *Glück wünschen*, regular, with dative.

*Order of the above in German.*

*N.B.*—Study the reasons given here very carefully. By referring to PAGE 83, the numbers above the various parts of the Sentences will be understood.

[The order of words will be found strictly adhering to the rules given on page 83.]

A young man<sup>1</sup> had<sup>2</sup> several days<sup>4</sup> from severe toothache<sup>6</sup> suffered<sup>2</sup> — and resolved<sup>3</sup> himself at last<sup>4</sup>, —  
to (zu) a dentist<sup>4</sup> to go<sup>7</sup> — and his tooth<sup>3</sup> drawn to have<sup>7</sup>. — He went<sup>1</sup> slowly<sup>2</sup> to the house of the dentist,<sup>4</sup>  
— but came<sup>2</sup> very soon<sup>4</sup> again out. — When<sup>4</sup> one of his friends<sup>1</sup> him out-of the house of the dentist<sup>4</sup>  
came<sup>7</sup> saw,<sup>2</sup> — and<sup>2</sup> observed<sup>2</sup> — that he<sup>1</sup> quite<sup>4</sup> happy<sup>5</sup> out-looked,<sup>2</sup> — said he<sup>2</sup> to him: — "Ah! I see, —  
you (have) are your tooth<sup>3</sup> at last<sup>4</sup> got-rid-of; — you look<sup>1</sup> quite<sup>2</sup> happy<sup>4</sup> out; I wish<sup>1</sup> you<sup>2</sup> luck!" —  
"Oh, no," answered<sup>3</sup> the young man,<sup>2</sup> — "what me<sup>1</sup> so happy<sup>3</sup> out-look makes,<sup>7</sup> — is, — that the dentist<sup>1</sup>  
not at home<sup>4</sup> was.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>a</sup> Adverbials of time precede others.

<sup>b</sup> Of two infinitives put that of the auxiliary last.  
[See p. 83.]

<sup>c</sup> Of two adverbials put that of *place* last, and that of *time* first.

<sup>d</sup> *Seeing* and *Coming* must be resolved into subordinate clauses. [See p. 116, IV. d. iv. *bb.*]

<sup>e</sup> Assertion at end of subordinate clause.

<sup>f</sup> In subordinate clause no separation can take place.

<sup>g</sup> The principal clause *must* have a subject, and it stands after the Assertion, when a subordinate clause precedes.

<sup>h</sup> Of two objects the Pronoun comes before the Noun.

<sup>i</sup> In relative clauses the Assertion stands last.

<sup>k</sup> In subordinate clauses the Assertion stands last.

<sup>l</sup> [See p. 112, note to A. 4.]

<sup>m</sup> [See p. 112, A. 5.]



### Longer Sentences. Exercises for Analysing.

Carefully divide each long sentence into its constituent parts, considering **apart** each Principal, each Subordinate, and each Relative sentence, and referring to Pages 83 and 124 as to the sequence of words in each clause.

Example of analysing a longer German sentence :

<sup>a</sup>Wilhelm von Dranien gehörte zu den hagnern und blaffen Menschen<sup>a</sup>, <sup>b</sup>wie Cäsar sie nennt<sup>b</sup>, <sup>c</sup>die des Nachts nicht schlafen und zu viel denken<sup>c</sup>, <sup>d</sup>vor denen das furchtloseste aller Gemüther gewankt hat<sup>d</sup>. <sup>e</sup>Die stille Ruhe eines immer gleichen Gesichts verbarg eine geschäftige, feurige Seele<sup>e</sup>, <sup>f</sup>die auch die Hülle, <sup>g</sup>hinter welcher sie schuf, nicht bewegte, und der List und der Liebe gleich unbretbar war<sup>f</sup>; <sup>h</sup>heinen vielfachen, fruchtbaren, nie ermüdenden Geist<sup>h</sup>, <sup>i</sup>weich und bilsam genug<sup>i</sup>, <sup>k</sup>augenblicklich in alle Formen zu schmelzen<sup>k</sup>; <sup>l</sup>bewährt genug<sup>l</sup>, <sup>m</sup>in keiner sich selbst zu verlieren<sup>m</sup>; <sup>n</sup>stark genug<sup>n</sup>, <sup>o</sup>jeden Glückswechsel zu ertragen<sup>o</sup>. SCHILLER.

(Translate the above carefully.)

[a-a] Principal Sentence; [b-b] Subordinate, therefore Assertion nennt at the end; [c-c] Compound relative clause to Menschen; Assertions schlafen and denken at the end of each component; [d-d] Relative clause to Menschen; Assertion hat at the end. — [e-e] Principal Sentence; [f-f] Compound relative clause to Seele; Assertions bewegte and war at the end of each component; notice: the first part not disturbed in its sequence of words by the interpolated relative clause; [g-g] Relative clause to Hülle with the Assertion schuf at its own end; [h-h] direct object to the verb verbarg in [e-e]; [i-i] predicative adjectives, enlarged by Infinitive clauses [k-k]. (See page 114, iii. b, for these [k-k] clauses.)

Analyse the above sentence in detail, also as shown on Page 84 (at the foot).

Translate and analyse in the same way, both generally and minutely, the following :

- i. Vielen protestantischen Predigern, die um der Religion willen Verfolgungen auszustehen hatten, ließ Katharina von Schwarzburg Schutz und Unterstützung angedeihen. Unter diesen war ein gewisser Kaspar Aquila, Pfarrer zu Saalfeld, der in jüngeren Jahren der Armee des Kaisers als Feldprediger nach den Niederlanden gefolgt war, und, weil er sich dort geweigert hatte, eine Kanonenkugel zu taufen, von den ausgelassenen Soldaten in einen Feuermörser geladen wurde, um in die Luft geschossen zu werden; ein Schicksal, dem er noch glücklich entkam, weil das Pulver nicht zünden wollte. SCHILLER.

- ii. Dann giengen wir in die Sixtinische Kapelle, die wir auch hell und heiter, und die Gemälde wohlbeleuchtet fanden. Das „jüngste Gericht,“ und die mannigfaltigen Gemälde der Decke, von Michel Angelo, teilten unsere Bewunderung. Ich konnte nur sehen und anstaunen. Die innere Sicherheit und Männlichkeit des Meisters geht über allen Ausdruck. Nachdem wir Alles wieder und wieder gesehen, verließen wir dieses Heiligtum und giengen nach der St. Peterskirche. GOETHE.

## Longer Sentences for Composition.

Carefully divide the English first into the separate Principal, Subordinate, and Relative clauses, and refer to page 83 for the sequence of words in each clause **separately**. [See also page 124, and pages 76-79.]

### Example :

#### *English.*

Having heard, that your friend possessed some very rare<sup>a</sup> specimens<sup>b</sup> of butterflies,<sup>c</sup> and knowing that he is always pleased<sup>d</sup>, to show his collections<sup>e</sup> to the friends of his friends, I took the liberty<sup>f</sup> of calling<sup>g</sup> upon him last Saturday, when I was in town; I was delighted<sup>h</sup> with all that he showed me, and in fact<sup>i</sup> almost envied<sup>k</sup> him his treasures, some of which were really<sup>l</sup> magnificent<sup>m</sup>.

#### *Words to above.*

- <sup>a</sup> rare = selten.                      <sup>b</sup> the specimen = die Art.  
<sup>c</sup> the butterfly = der Schmetterling, =s, =e.  
<sup>d</sup> to be pleased = Vergnügen haben.  
<sup>e</sup> the collection = die Sammlung, —, —en.  
<sup>f</sup> to take the liberty = sich (dat.) die Freiheit nehmen.  
<sup>g</sup> to call upon some one = Jemand (acc.) besuchen.  
<sup>h</sup> to be delighted with = entzückt sein, von (dat.).  
<sup>i</sup> in fact = in der That (dat. feminine).  
<sup>k</sup> to envy some one something = Jemand (acc.) um Etwas (acc.) beneiden.  
<sup>l</sup> really = wirklich.  
<sup>m</sup> magnificent = prächtig.

#### *Order of words in German.*

As I heard had<sup>o</sup>, that your friend some very rare specimens of butterflies possessed<sup>o</sup>, and as I know<sup>o</sup>, that he always pleasure has<sup>o</sup>, his collections to-the friends of-his friends to<sup>p</sup> show, so took<sup>t</sup> I to-me the liberty, him last Saturday<sup>q</sup>, when I in the town was,<sup>o</sup> to<sup>p</sup> visit; I was of all, which he to-me showed<sup>r</sup>, delighted and in the deed, envied him almost about his treasures, of which<sup>s</sup> some really magnificent were<sup>r</sup>.

#### *Notes to above.*

- <sup>n</sup> See page 116, iv. d., iv. aa. Translation of Verbal in -ing.  
<sup>o</sup> Assertion last in Subordinate clauses.  
<sup>p</sup> See page 114, iv. Translation of Infinitive after Nouns.  
<sup>q</sup> Use accusative of definite time referred to.  
<sup>r</sup> Assertion last in Relative clauses.  
<sup>s</sup> The relative clause must begin with the relative pronoun (or its preposition), therefore some must follow of which (von denen).  
<sup>t</sup> The Assertion in the Principal Sentence stands before the Subject, if any Subordinate clauses precede the Principal one. See page 83, A, b.

Turn first into German order of words, and then translate (with use of Dictionary).

Having arrived on the summit of the mountain, | we contemplated the view before us in mute admiration. | We were indeed scarcely prepared for such a grand spectacle, | for the mountain, | upon which we stood, | was not a very high one, | yet the landscape below us was not only very lovely, but also very extensive; | and, what lent it a special charm for us, | was the belt of snow-capped mountains, | which framed the picture in the distance. | We were delighted with what we saw | and counted ten lakes | peeping out here and there, | and four rivers, silver ribbons, | winding through the deep green of hill and vale.

# SIXTH TERM

## ON ETYMOLOGY AND WORD-FORMATION

WITH A SHORT

HISTORICAL OUTLINE OF THE GRADUAL GROWTH OF THE

GERMAN LANGUAGE

INTO AN INDEPENDENT IDIOM.

IN these Notes the author must acknowledge valuable aid from the excellent *Deutsche Grammatik in genetischer Zusammenstellung* of Dr. Ernst Götzinger, Professor in St. Gallen ; and also from the *Etymological Dictionary* by Friedrich Kluge.

## HISTORICAL OUTLINE.

THE following remarks do not by any means claim to enter very deeply into the subject of German Etymology; they are merely intended to illustrate in broad outlines some very interesting facts as to the relation of German, and in fact of most of the languages now-a-days spoken in Europe, with Latin and Greek, and the descent of all these from the same ancient idiom, they may thus awaken in some students a desire of examining German words a little more closely; in any case they will enable them to answer the greater number of those questions in Etymology and Word-formation which are now set in most higher examinations in German.

There is no doubt that the study of the etymology of a modern language has a very great fascination for a student, when he is in other ways more or less acquainted with those older languages to which he is constantly referred. It is for this reason mainly that the tracing back of French words, for example, to their Latin or Greek origin has so long found great favour with students in English schools, for they are generally pretty well acquainted with at least classical Latin, and naturally recognise with pleasure ancestors of modern French words, as far as the tonic syllable is concerned, in Latin roots which they have met with previously in their study of Caesar or Cicero, Livy or Tacitus, Ovid or Vergil. But when such languages as Old High- and Low-German, Anglo-Saxon or Gothic, the acquaintance with which in other ways is naturally much rarer and less cultivated than Latin or Greek, are the main sources to which etymology points, it is little wonder that the researches should not be pursued with quite so much interest. Still the following general remarks will show that the study of German etymology brings us very often in contact both with Latin and Greek, and thus proves conclusively that the languages now spoken in Northern Europe belong to one and the same great trunk, of which the classical languages of Athens and Rome were only the earliest fixed branches.

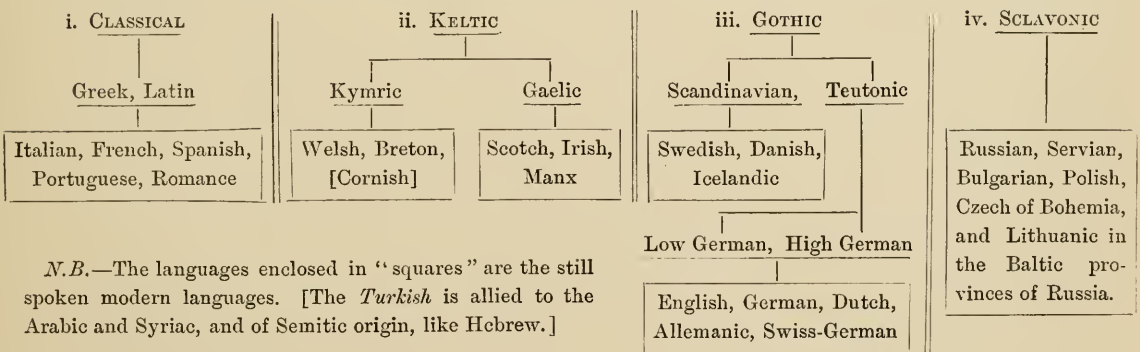
The monuments of the literature of the oldest inhabitants of Upper India and Persia, the cuneiform characters on buildings and statues discovered there lately from time to time, point, in the light of Comparative Philology, to the important fact, that all the races which successively peopled Europe are descended originally from one and the same people, speaking one and the same language; and that in fact the ancestors of the Keltic and Teutonic and Slavonian races were the same as those of the Greeks and the Romans. The period of this identity of language is generally computed to have been some 3000 or 4000 years before our Christian era, and the locality where these ancestors lived was the South Central portion of Asia, *i.e.* Upper India and the plateaux between the Himalaya and the Caucasus. For want of a better name, the races which came thence have been collectively called Aryan, or Indo-Keltic, or Indo-Germanic, or Indo-European. Their original language, of which Sanscrit is held to be the nearest representative, seems to have been exceedingly capable of flexible modification and enlargement, though of course, compared with the idioms which sprung from it, very undeveloped and poor in ideas and views; indeed the objects and thoughts which required interpretation in language must have been very limited compared with later times.



The researches of philology reveal pretty much the same manner of spreading both of those nations and of those idioms as common-sense reasoning would have suggested. The broad outlines seem to be these: From Upper India parts of the original race, as it increased in numbers, overflowed towards China and the East, whilst parts travelled westward. It is these latter Japhetic races which are called Indo-European, and with which we are dealing now. They peopled Persia and Armenia, where the *Persian or Zend idiom* established itself on the banks of the Euphrates and Tigris, supplanting partly the (Semitic) Assyrian and Arabian. The overflow of this population, and also new portions from the other Asiatic plateaux, travelled more northward, and entered Europe, either through Asia Minor or by coasting the northern shores of the Black Sea, and thus our continent became peopled. As these races multiplied and separated, their idioms also became more and more changed, being exposed to different influences and meeting with different circumstances, until in the South of Europe the GREEK idiom, and later the LATIN, stood early fixed by the mighty works of great writers, and became ultimately the parents (mostly by the agency of Roman conquest) of modern French, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, etc., whilst in the North of Europe the GOTHIC idiom established itself, and, dividing into *Scandinavian* and *Teutonic*, became ultimately the parent of modern German, English, Danish, Dutch, Swedish, etc. The KELTIC idiom in the centre of Europe, having never been spoken by a ruling and conquering nation, seems early to have been doomed to extinction, and survives now only in the *Kymric* of Wales, with which the Breton of Brittany and the extinct Cornish of Cornwall are nearly related, and the *Gaelic* of Northern Scotland, to which the Erse or Irish and the Manx of the Isle of Man are akin. As to the SCLAVONIC idiom, it remained behind in the East of Europe, where it became the parent of modern Russian, Slavonian, Servian, and Czech in Bohemia.

The following Diagram shows these divisions:—

### Indo-European Languages (Japhetic) in Europe.



N.B.—The languages enclosed in “squares” are the still spoken modern languages. [The *Turkish* is allied to the Arabic and Syriac, and of Semitic origin, like Hebrew.]

Now these minor divisions of races and languages did not, as a rule, succeed each other chronologically, but took place mostly at about the same time; thus the student must distinctly understand that it is not necessarily true that a German or English word is *derived* from, say, the Greek or Latin, for the sole reason that these latter languages, containing the same root in a slightly different form, were fixed at an earlier period of time. All we can say in a great



many instances is, that the word in a modern language is evidently related to that in the earlier idiom, and that both evidently come from the same original Indo-European root, which changed differently or assumed a different shade of meaning with the different races. Thus it would be wrong to assume that *Vater* (*father*) is *derived* from the Latin *pater*; all we can say is, that both the German and the Latin words come from the old Indo-European word *pātr* or *pitr*, which in its turn points to the root *pā*, conveying the sense of nourishing or protecting. Still more erroneous would it be to say that the English “father” is *derived* from the German *Vater*, or *vice versa*; the two words simply point to the common origin of German and English, and it is doubtful which of the two is the older.

In examining the etymology of some modern words, the student will often notice that there is no similar word, interpreting the same idea, in the one or other of the older idioms, whilst on the other hand a root of an older idiom seems to have left no trace in the modern language. This is due mainly to the following facts: (i.) After separation, the races met each with different circumstances and objects, and formed words to interpret them, these new roots being unknown to other races; (ii.) Roots originally common to different races were gradually lost in some whilst being retained and amplified in others; (iii.) Certain roots gradually assumed distinct shades of meaning in some languages which they did not assume in others. Examples of all these are of very common occurrence.

That however all the nations now peopling Europe, as well as the old Greeks and Latins, did originally belong to one and the same race, allows of no doubt. Examine only the following striking examples by the light of the laws of Vowel and Consonant changes, of which we shall speak later on:—

1. *Words interpreting relationship*.—These were naturally much more numerous and varied in nomadic races, living together in tribes or families in patriarchal fashion, and though many such words detailing relationship are lost (as, for example, the distinction between uncle on the father’s side and uncle on the mother’s side [cf. Latin *patruus* and *avunculus*]), yet many remain, which evidently all point to one common origin. Compare, for example:

German.	English.	Dutch.	French.	Anglo-Saxon.	Gothic.	Latin.	Greek.	Sanskrit.
Mutter	mother	moeder	mère	môdor	[aithei]	mater	μήτηρ	mâtr (mā—)
Vater	father	vader	père	faeder	fadar [atta]	pater	πατήρ	patr, pitr (pā—)
Schwester	sister	zuster	sœur	sweostor	swistar	soror	[φρατήρ]	swasr

[and others which will be found in the appended Dictionary.]

## 2. *The numerals* (up to a hundred at least):—

zwei	two	two	deux	twênê, twâ	twai	duo	δύο	dva
zehn	ten	tien (tyr)	dix	têhan	taihun	decem	δέκα	dekn, daçan

## 3. *Names of parts of the human body*:—

fuß	foot	voet	pied	fôt	fôtus	ped—	ποδ—	pôd—
zahn	tooth	tand	dent	toth (tanth)	tunthus	dent—	ὀδοντ—	dant—

## 4. *Names of very common domestic animals*:—

Sund	hound	hond	chien	hund	hunds	canis	κύν—	çva
Wolf	wolf	wolf	[loup]	wulf	wulfs	lupus	λύκ—	vlka

## 5. Names of the most common phenomena in nature :—

German.	English.	Dutch.	French.	Anglo-Saxon.	Gothic.	Latin.	Greek.	Sanskrit.
Tag	day	dag	[jour]	dæg	dags	dies	—	dina
Nacht	night	nacht	nuit	naht	nahts	noct—	νύκτ—	nokt—

## 6. Some words interpreting common actions or qualities :—

essen	eat	eten	[—]	etan	itan	ēd—	ἔδ—	ēd—
neu	new	nieuw	neuf	niwe	nijuis	nov—	νέος	navas

These are only samples of many more ; still it must not be supposed that the number of words which can thus be almost faultlessly traced back to their Indo-European root (as best represented by the old Sanskrit) is exceedingly large ; the three reasons mentioned on page 130 will indeed account for many omissions and losses ; besides, many words seem to allow of no explanation ; but on the whole, the above leave little doubt that all the languages mentioned are closely related to each other, and come from the same ancient idiom.

To turn from these general remarks to the specially Indo-Germanic races, *i.e.* the Teutonic, it seems that the separation of these from the other Indo-European races, *i.e.* the Greeks, Latins, etc., took place somewhere about 2000 years before Christ, and that about the beginning of the Christian era the characteristically Teutonic transformation of vowels and consonants began to establish itself firmly. At this period, too, the Teutons and Kelts came again into contact with the conquering Romans, and the influence of the latter in a linguistic direction is very pronounced. A host of new words enriched the Gothic idiom, especially words connected with religion, politics, law, weights and measures, cooking, building, and the produce of the earth. We shall refer to this again later on. That the Gothic was a fully established idiom, rich in beauty and wealth of form, already in the fourth century after Christ, is proved by the well-known translation of the Greek Bible into Gothic by Bishop Ulfilas in that century. This Bible contains about 4000 fixed words. From that early period up to our days the development of German can be closely followed through Old and Middle High German. It culminates at last, early in the sixteenth century, in the translation of the Bible by Luther and Melancthon, which work fixed the German language just as much as Chaucer's works fixed the English.

The earliest elements of language are : (i.) words interpreting objects and their actions or qualities (*Verb* and *Noun* with *Adjective*) ; (ii.) words interpreting individuality (*Personal Pronouns*) or pointing out objects, etc. (*Demonstratives*). To these were soon added words interpreting relation of time and place (*Prepositions* and *Adverbs*) and words joining or separating ideas or conceptions (*Conjunctions*). Of these none lent themselves to development except the first class ; hence the stock of the other classes is limited and incapable of increase. But Verbs and Nouns with the Adjective [which is in reality also a verbal function applied to state or condition (for *great* refers to the state or condition of “being-great,” etc.)] are capable of almost unlimited extension by calling in the aid of prepositions and adverbs as prefixes or suffixes, or by combining with other Verbs or Nouns ; with this distinction, however, that Noun can combine with Noun or Verb, but Verb cannot combine with Verb. We can, for example, combine *Haus* with *Garten*, and get *Hausgarten* or *Gartenhaus* ; but we cannot combine “to eat” and “to drink” to get a new verb “to eat-drink” or “to drink-eat.”

Of these combinations we shall speak further under the heading of “Word Formation ;” here we may simply mention that the capacity of German, perhaps more than any other language,

is enormous in this respect. It is computed that of Nouns alone Modern German has close upon 100,000 different forms, and of Verbs perhaps above 50,000. For example, **Haas** appears in some sixty or seventy combinations, and **winden**, with its cognate **wenden** and **wandeln**, enters into the formation of above 900 words now.

Certainly this is true only of the latest perfection of German, still the Old Gothic idiom bore this capacity within itself. It was moreover, as we have seen, early enriched by a host of words through its contact with Latin (and Greek), and later by its contact with other nations in commerce or war. These are of course to be kept separate from the truly Teutonic roots, and are, as a rule, easy of recognition. With respect to Verbs belonging to this class of words, all are weak or regular, showing thus that they entered the German language after grammatical rules had been established; the only exceptions are **schreiben** from Lat. *scribere*, and **preisen** from French *prix*, Lat. *pretium dare*; these two entered therefore into German evidently very early. Altogether German obtained from foreign nations very few Verbs, compared with Nouns, and still fewer Adjectives. The principal sources of these foreign words in German were Latin (and Greek) in the earlier periods, and French in more modern times. We give here only a few examples:—

Of LATIN origin are :

VERBS : **kochen** (*to cook*), **pfeifen** (*to whistle*), **dichten** (*to compose*), **verdammn** (*to condemn*), **spazieren** (*to take a walk*), and a few more.

ADJECTIVES : **falsch** (*false*), **fein** (*fine*), **sicher** (*sure*), and very few more.

NOUNS : *Religion* : **Kirche** (*church*), **Dom** (*cathedral*), **Fest** (*feast*), and a hundred more.

*Common Objects* : **Pferd** (*horse*), **Körper** (*body*), **Frucht** (*fruit*), and a hundred more.

*Plants* : **Kirsche** (*cherry*), **Birne** (*pear*), **Pflaume** (*plum*), and many more.

*Kitchen and House Utensils* : **Flasche** (*bottle*), **Schüssel** (*dish*), **Teller** (*plate*), **Büchse** (*box*), **Uhr** (*clock*),

**Pfanne** (*pan*), and very many more.

*Building Terms* : **Kammer** (*chamber*), **Mauer** (*wall*), **Stube** (*room*), **Tisch** (*table*), etc.

*Law and Government* : **Kaiser** (*emperor*), **Recht** (*law, right*), **Advokat** (*lawyer*), etc.

*Money, Weights and Measures* : **Münze** (*money*), **Pfund** (*pound*), **Meile** (*mile*), etc.

N.B.—Many of these may be further traced back to Greek, of course, and many will also remind the student of French, which is based on Latin.

Of FRENCH origin in *modern times*, and to be distinguished from those Latin roots which entered French and German at almost the same time, are many *nouns* connected with military matters, such as : **Sergeant**, **Capitän**, **Offizier**, **General**, **Infanterie**, etc. etc., and many *verbs*, which in German end in *-iren*, as : **studiren** (*to study*), **probiren** (*to try*), **poliren** (*to polish*), besides many more quite recently introduced. [This *-iren*, by the by, has become so much a favourite in modern German that it is added even to Teutonic roots to form new verbs, as : **haus iren** (*to go from house to house*) and some others, a practice which is however condemned by the best modern writers.]

In addition to the above sources, which are by far the most prolific, the most modern German has borrowed and incorporated some words—

From *English*, as : **Jeckey**, **Sport**, **Whist**, **Criccet**, **Yacht**, etc.

from *Russian*, as : **Droschke** (*cab*), **Sucht** (*a kind of leather*), **Knute** (*whip*), etc.

from *Polish*, as : **Gurke** (*cucumber*), **Ulan** (*Ulan, light-horse soldier*), **Grenze** (*frontier*), etc.



From *Bohemian*, as : Dolch (dagger), Kutsche (cab), Petschaft (seal for letters), etc.  
 from *Turkish*, as : Scharlach (scarlet), Schabracke (trappings of a horse), etc.  
 from *American Indian*, as : Tabak (tobacco), Cigarre (cigar), etc.  
 from *East Indian*, as : Punsch (punch), Arak, Rum, etc.

These words, however, are now cosmopolitan, *i.e.* adopted into all languages.

We refer the student to the short Etymological Dictionary appended for the etymology of many of the most common root-words in German, and will now proceed to a statement of the laws which have governed Vowel and Consonant changes from the earliest periods of the Indo-European languages, without a knowledge of which laws, at least in their broad outlines, etymology is impossible.

## I. VOWELS.

[See the Notice below.]

The oldest of the vowels is *a*, of which the others are all variations, *i* and *u* being the earliest. The Indo-European idioms knew only these three, and we have still some curious remnants of this ancient "tonic chord," as it were, of language. Compare English *Fee-fa-fum*, *tit for tat*, *snip-snap-sn(u)orum*; and German *piff-paff-puff*, *bim-bam-bum*, and a few others. From these three original vowels sprang first of all *e* between *a* and *i*, and *o* between *a* and *u*, so that we may put the ascending scale of vowels, down thus : *u, o, a, e, i*.

### A. ABLAUT (or change of sound).

The *Ablaut* and its laws form a most important chapter in the tracing back of modern words to their roots in the original Indo-European, and must be very carefully studied and distinguished from *Umlaut* or *Modification*.

**Ablaut** is the oldest change of vowel-sound, and it is generally impossible to give reasons for the vowel-changes which it includes. All we know is, that the oldest languages have only three vowels : *ā* and *ī* and *ū*. From these all other vowels and diphthongs spring :

*ā* being weakened into *i* and *ū*, and strengthened into *ā* and *uo*;

*ī* being strengthened into *ē, ē, ī, ei* (the latter=*i* in *thine*).

*ū* being strengthened into *ū, ō, ō, iu* (*eu, ü*), *io* (*ie*), *ou* (*au*), (as *ou* in *thou*).

This *Ablaut* is moreover obscured by vowel-changes due to *Umlaut*, *Brechung*, etc., still we may always assume that owing to *Ablaut*,

(i.) Modern *ā, ā* point to *uo* in O. H. G., and to *ā* in Sanskrit or Indo-Germanic.

(ii.) Modern *ī* (*ie*), *ē, ē, ei* point to *ī* in O. H. G., and to *ī* in Sanskrit, etc.

(iii.) Modern *ū, ō, ō, eu, au* point to *ū, ou, iu* (*io, ie*), *y* in O. H. G. and to *ū* in Sanskrit, whilst modern *ī* (often falsely written *ie*) and *ū* are more doubtful, for *ī* may come from Indo-Germanic *ā* or *ī*, whilst modern *ū* may come from Indo-Germanic *ā* or *ū*. In these two cases some cognate words generally decide the question.

### Notice.

It must be clearly understood, once for all, that in speaking here of

*a* we refer to the broad sound of this vowel, as in *father* (never the *a* as in *lane*); in speaking of

*e* we refer to the sound of *e* in *ten* (never to *e* as in *he*); in speaking of

*i* we refer to the sound of *i* in *him* (never to *i* as in *mine*); also that

*u* refers to the sound of *u* in *rule* (never to any other); and that

*o* refers to the sound of *o* in *alone* (and no other, unless stated).

[Note: — means long; — means short, in the following explanations.]

## Examples of Ablaut.

[N.B.—For the meaning of G., E., M. H. G., etc., see “Abbreviations,” Note on page 143.]

(i.)	G. Däch.	E. thätch.	M. H. G. däch.	A. S. thäck.	Lat. tectum (accidental e)	ǣ class.
(ii.)	G. Wein.	E. wine.	M. H. G. wīn.	A. S. wīn.	Got. wein; Lat. vinum .	ī class.
(iii.)	G. Haus.	E. house.	M. H. G. hūs.	A. S. hȳd.	Got. hūz; Lat. cūs-tos .	ū class.
i. or iii.	{ G. Blūt.	E. blood.	M. H. G. bluot.	A. S. blōd.	Got. bloda . . .	ǣ class.
	{ G. Lāg.	E. lie.	M. H. G. lūc.	A. S. lyge.	Got. liugn . . .	ī class.
i. or ii.	{ G. sitzen.	E. to sit.	M. H. G. sizzan.	A. S. sittan.	Lat. sedeo; Skt. sad— .	ǣ class.
	{ G. Fri(e)de.	E. peace.	M. H. G. frīde.	A. S. frīthu.	Indo.-Germ. pritu-s .	ī class.

Notice: ie (i) if derived from *iu*, *io* as in *Knie*, always points to *ū* class.

Besides the above *organic Ablaut*, German admitted of a *non-organic, accidental* change of *a* into *o*, as in *foß*, *von*, *Mond*, *wo*, *hosen*, etc.; rarer is an accidental change of *a* into *e* without apparent cause, as in *Udel*=*nobility*, *edel*=*noble*; and *e* into *i*, as *Berg*—*Gebirg*. These latter two changes approach the *Umlaut*, and are more modern.

## B. UMLAUT

must be carefully distinguished from *Ablaut*. It is the modification of a root-vowel due to the attraction exerted upon it by an added derivate syllable with *i* (later *e*) in the latter. Thus *angil* became *engil* (M. G. *Engel*, E. *angel*). The *Umlaut* is of comparatively modern date, whilst the *Ablaut* is as ancient as Indo-Germanic itself; indeed, Gothic does not yet know the *Umlaut*: it was only in the seventh century after Christ that it first appeared. It affected then only *a* in the root, but soon the modification spread also to other root-vowels, as: *gruoni* into *grüni* (M. G. *grün*, E. *green*). At a later period, though the inflecting *i* in the derivative syllable sank into an unaccented *e*, or was dropped altogether, the *Umlaut* remained, as in *tragen*—*er trägt* (for *trägit* or *träget*); *sconi* changed into *schön* (E. *beautiful*). At a still more modern period the root-vowel became regularly modified, when derivative syllables containing *i* or *e* were added to a root, as *Graf*—*Gräfin*, *frau*—*Fräulein*, etc.

Notice that only *a*, *o*, *u*, and *au* can be modified or suffer *Umlaut*. The change *er ließt*—*lesen* is not an *Umlaut*, but *Brechung*, and has a much deeper and older etymological origin.

The modern mode of writing, for example, *ä* for *ae* is merely conventional, and an abbreviation for *ä*.

*e* as Umlaut of *a* often became *ö*, as in:

G. Hölle	E. hell.	M. H. G. helle.	O. H. G. halja.	Goth. halja.	to root vowel (i.) ä.
G. zwei(ß)	E. two(tive).	M. H. G. zwe(lif).	A. S. tve(lf).	Goth. twa(lif).	to root vowel (i.) ä.

N.B.—There are a few weak or regular verbs which, while retaining the original *a* vowel in the Imperfect Indicative, and Past Participle, have suffered what Jacob Grimm calls *Rückumlaut* (*Back-umlaut*) in the Infinitive, and Present tenses. These are called anomalous verbs; they are the following:—*brennen*, *fennen*, *nennen*, *rennen*, *senben*, *wenden*, and *denken*.

*bringen* also has suffered such a *Rückumlaut* of *a* into *i*, and *wissen* of *u* into *i* (and *ei*). [See Grammar, page 46.]

## C. BRECHUNG,

or breaking-over, is the change of root-vowel *i* or *u* by an *a* in the added derivative syllable; whereby *i* became *e* and *u* became *o*. This change reaches much further back than the *Umlaut*, and is often as old as the *Ablaut*. Thus *stilan* became *stelan* (M. G. *stehlen*, E. *to steal*); *lisan*



became *lesan* (M. G. *lêsen*, E. *to read*). In the course of time this derivative *a* became, as we see, an *e*, but the *Brechung* remained. Thus also in Skt. *usās*=Lat. *aurora*=A. S. *eastene*=M. G. *Ōsten*=E. *the East*. Similar changes by *Brechung* we find in *Dorf* (-*thorpe*), *Dhōs* (*ox*), *Morgen* (*morning*). The influence of *Brechung* is also seen in the change of *iu* into *io* (modern *ie*), as in G. *Knie*, E. *knee*, O. H. G. *chniu*, Goth. *kniū*, Lat. *genu*, A. S. *cneo*.

#### *Additional remarks on Vowel-changes.*

The above three, *Ablaut*, *Umlaut*, and *Brechung*, were accompanied in more modern periods by *Schwächung*, i.e. weakening of *a* or *i* in **derivative** syllables into *e*, as we have seen in *gruoni*=*grüne*, *lisan*=*lesen*, etc.; and also by still more modern *Dehnung* or lengthening of short vowels into long ones by insertion of *e* after *i* and *h* after all vowels [and after *t* also] or sometimes by doubling of vowel. As to this *Dehnung* there has been a reaction within the last two decades, and Germans begin again to write more correctly: *Mut* for *Muth* (*courage*), *gibt* for *giebt* (*gives*), *Tal* for *Thal* (*valley*), *Schaf* for *Schaaf* (*sheep*), etc.

*N.B.*—In the examples on “Inner or Root-vowel changes,” see pages 137 to 139, many instances of *Ablaut*, *Umlaut*, etc., will be found.

## II. CONSONANTS.

The present system of consonants presents but little variation in the Indo-Germanic idioms except in the so-called *Lautverschiebung*, or change of consonants in the Mutes. We may, according to Jacob Grimm, distinguish three classes of consonants.

### A. SPIRANTES.

Of these the most important is *ś*. Grimm reckons among Spirantes also: (i.) *h* in interjections, as *ha!* *ho!* (ii.) *j*, which is *i* turned consonant, and appears before vowels only, as in *jung*=*young*, or is changed into *h*, as *blühen*, from *blüējen*, *to bloom*, etc. (iii.) *w*, which is *u* turned consonant in front of a vowel, as *wei* [cf. Lat. *duo*]. The organic spirans *ś* remains unaltered from the earliest times, but it changes often with *r*, as in *verlieren*—*Verlust* (*loss*), *was*=*war* (*he was*). *ś* as spirans combines readily with other consonants, and these combinations present some interest, thus: O. H. G. *sk* becomes *sch* in M. G., as *ſcriban*=*ſchreiben*, etc.; *sl*, *sm*, *sn*, *sw* become in M. G. *schl*, *schm*, *schn*, *schw*, as *ſmal*=*ſchmal*, etc.

[This spirans *ś* must not be confounded with the dental mute *ś*; the latter, though now indistinguishable in writing from the former, sprang from O. H. G. *z*, a “dental.”]

### B. LIQUIDAE.

These are *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, and present still less change from the earliest idioms than the Spirantes. Notice also: (i.) *l* often combines, as in *lm*, *lb*, *lp*, *lg*, *lf*, *ls*, *rl*, etc. It sometimes interchanges with *r*, as: Lat. *prunum*, G. *Pflaume*, E. *plum*; Lat. *peregrinus*, G. *Pilgrim*, etc.; (ii.) *m* and *n* often interchange, *m* replacing *n* before labials or dentals, as *entfinden*=*empfinden*; *entfaßen*=*empfangen*; (iii.) *n* is perhaps the most used consonant in German, and combines readily with almost all other consonants; among these combinations *ng* is perhaps the most usual.

We may say *l*, *m*, *n*, *r* govern the whole inflexion of words, and play the most important part in Word-derivation or Word-formation.

## C, MUTAE.

These are the most important of the consonants in Etymology, and their changes often furnish the principal light by which we trace back words to older idioms. They are divided thus, with respect to their production by the organs of speech :

	<i>Soft.</i>		<i>Hard.</i>		<i>Aspirated.</i>		<i>Notes.</i> —(i.) <i>pf</i> is really only one consonant.
					<i>Soft.</i>	<i>Hard.</i>	
Labials, <i>v, b</i>		<i>p</i>		<i>f (v)</i>		<i>pf</i>	(ii.) <i>th</i> is really only one consonant, pronounced hard, guttural after <i>a, o, and u (au)</i> ; but sounded soft in all other combinations now.
Dentals, <i>d</i>		<i>t</i>		<i>ð (=s), th</i>		<i>ð (=ts)</i>	
Gutturals, <i>g (c)</i>		<i>k (c)</i>		<i>h</i>		<i>gh</i>	

Jacob Grimm was the first to point out that between the soft, the hard, and the aspirated mutes of each class (labials, dentals, and gutturals) a more or less regular change took place, so that a soft labial had a tendency to become hard; a hard one to become aspirated, and an aspirated one again soft, etc. The mnemonic word *has* will remind the student of these changes, beginning with the oldest idiom: *has*: hard, aspirate, soft; *ash*: aspirate, soft, hard; *sha*: soft, hard, aspirate. In these changes the Sanskrit, Greek, and Latin form the *first* period; the Gothic, Anglo-Saxon, and Low German the *second* period; and Old and Middle High German with Modern High German the *third* period.

Thus, tracing a mute consonant back we shall find that :

Modern German, (etc.)	<i>v, b</i>	<i>f (v), pf</i>	<i>p</i>	—	<i>b</i>	<i>f, ð (th)</i>	<i>t</i>	—	<i>g</i>	<i>h, gh</i>	<i>k (c)</i>	<i>g (c)</i> point to :
Anglo-Saxon (etc.)	<i>f</i>	<i>p</i>	<i>b</i>	—	<i>s (th)</i>	<i>t</i>	<i>d</i>	—	<i>h</i>	<i>k (c)</i>	<i>g (c)</i> and to :	
Latin (etc.)	<i>p</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>f</i>	—	<i>t</i>	<i>d</i>	<i>s (th)</i>	—	<i>k (c)</i>	<i>g (c)</i>	<i>h (ch)</i>	

However, these changes are but seldom found without exceptions or leaps; and, generally speaking, they are more recognisable in *initials* than in *final* consonants, and also better preserved in *dentals* than in *labials* or *gutturals*.

## Examples of this change of Mutes.

<i>3d Period : High German.</i>			<i>2d Period : Low German.</i>		<i>1st Period : Classical, etc.</i>		
<i>Mod. Germ.</i>	<i>English.</i>	<i>O. H. Germ.</i>	<i>Anglo-Saxon.</i>	<i>Gothic.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Greek.</i>	<i>Sanskrit.</i>
<i>ſieben</i>	*seven	<i>sibun</i>	<i>seofon</i>	<i>sibun</i>	<i>septem</i>	<i>ἑπτὰ</i>	<i>saptan</i>
<i>Feuer</i>	fire	<i>fiur</i>	<i>fȳr (fuir)</i>	<i>fōn (fun—)</i>	<i>(foc—)</i>	<i>πῦρ</i>	<i>[pñ—]</i>
<i>Haupt</i>	*hea(f)d	<i>houbit</i>	<i>heafod</i>	<i>haubith</i>	<i>[caput]</i>	<i>[κεφαλή]</i>	<i>[kubh—]</i>
<i>drei</i>	*three	<i>drī</i>	<i>thrī</i>	<i>threis</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>τρεῖς</i>	<i>trayas</i>
<i>wiſſen</i>	[*know] (wit)	<i>wizzan</i>	<i>wāt—</i>	<i>waitan</i>	<i>video</i>	<i>ἰδεῖν</i>	<i>vid</i>
<i>Türe</i>	*door	<i>turi</i>	<i>duru</i>	<i>daurons</i>	<i>[fores]</i>	<i>θύρα</i>	<i>dur (dvara)</i>
<i>geſtern</i>	yester(day)	<i>gestaron</i>	<i>giſtran</i>	<i>giſtra—</i>	<i>heri</i>	<i>χθές</i>	<i>ghyēs</i>
<i>iſ</i>	I	<i>ih</i>	<i>ic</i>	<i>ik</i>	<i>ego</i>	<i>ἐγώ</i>	<i>aham</i>
<i>Hund</i>	hound	<i>hunt</i>	<i>hund</i>	<i>hunds</i>	<i>[canis]</i>	<i>κύων</i>	<i>çvâ</i>
<i>fönnen</i>	(to) can	<i>chunnan</i>	<i>cunnan</i>	<i>kunnan</i>	<i>gnosco</i>	<i>ἐ-γνων</i>	<i>gnā—</i>

[Notice\* that English often belongs to the 2d period, i.e. the Low-German idioms.]

It will be seen from these examples, which are among the most perfect, that the three steps of changes of Mutes are very rarely perfect or all present; still they prove the general

correctness of this "Grimm's Law," as it is called. Moreover there are in *Modern German* traces of it, in the derivation of new words from older roots, as :

- (i.) change of *h* into *f* before *t*: *Schreiben*—*Schrift*; *geben*—*Gift*, etc.
- (ii.) variation of *h* and *f*, as in *höflich* and *hübsch*; *Säber* and *Säfer* (*oats*).
- (iii.) change of *g* and *h* into *ch* before *t*: *schlagen*—*Schlacht*; *sehen*—*Geficht*, etc.
- (iv.) hard pronunciation of final *b*, *h*, or *g*, as in *fand*, *gab*, *Tag*, formerly written, and still in some parts of Germany pronounced, *fant*, *gap*, *Taf* (*tac*).

(See also APPENDIX B.)

## WORD-FORMATION.

We have already mentioned (see page 130) that the earliest (inflexible) language possessed only two word-elements, (i.) words interpreting conceptions of *objects* or *acts* or *qualities*, as: *man*, *to eat*, *to be good*, etc.; and (ii.) *Pronominal* and *pointing-words*, as: *he*, *that*, *they*, etc. By the combination of these two elements old words were inflected and new ones formed; and we must carefully distinguish between *inflection* and *word-formation*.

*Examples of inflection are*: (a) the *t* in *geh-t* (*he goes*); this *t* is really a remnant of the personal pronoun *hit*=*he*, so that *geh-t*=*geh*+*hit* (O. H. G. *gang-it*) or *go*+*he*; thus by bodily adding a pronoun to the word for an act, this word became inflected as to *person*. (b) the *-te* in the Imperfect of regular verbs, as: *leb-te*; this *-te* is really a remnant of the word *tuon*, *to do*, so that *leb-te*=*leb*+*tat*=*live*+*did*, *live-d*; thus by bodily adding a verb to another verbal root the latter became inflected as to *tense*. Compare French *donner-ai*=*donner*+Pres. of *avoir*.

*Examples of word-formation are*: (a) the *lich* in *glück-lich*; this *-lich* is really the O. G. *g-lich*, E. *like*, so that by putting two independent words together a new adjective was formed. (b) the *-tum* in *Reiſer-tum* is really the old separately-used noun *tuom*=*power*, *authority* (E. *-dom* in *king-dom*), so that by putting together two nouns a new noun was formed.

Many of these originally independent words became in course of time mere prefixes or suffixes, incapable of being used by themselves, such as *-tum*.

We have here only to do with the second of the two processes mentioned above, and indeed only with that part of word-formation which is still active now-a-days; for to trace such suffixes as *-er* in *Bat-er*, etc., or *-t* in *Gift* from *geben*, would be in most cases impossible, and in all extremely difficult.

In the formation of new words three methods present themselves at once, namely: (i.) *Inner or root-vowel changes* (with obsolete derivative letters), (ii.) *Outer or derivative-syllable changes*, and (iii.) *Actual (new) Composition*.

### I. INNER OR ROOT-VOWEL CHANGES.

The most prolific source of new words is to be found in the *strong* (or irregular) verbs, and we give here a few of the most important, with some words formed from each by root-vowel changes. *Notice*: the root verbs are placed in three divisions, as they belong to the Indo-Germanic *ä*, *i*, or *u* group. [See pages 133, 134.]

(i) *a-Class.* [Derivatives with *ä, ï, ü*, or *e* (as *Umlaut* of *a*. See page 134).]

**binden**, E. *to bind*: die *Binde* (the bandage); der *Band* (the volume); das *Band* (the ribbon); der *Bund* (confederation).

**bitten**, E. *to beg*: die *Bitte* (the request); *beten* (to pray); das *Gebet* (the prayer).

[M. H. G. *biren*]=*to bear*: *gebär-en* (to bring forth); die *Geburt* (the birth); die *Bürde* (the burden).

**brechen**, E. *to break*: der *Verbrecher* (the criminal); der *Bruch* (the breaking); die *Brache* (ploughed fields).

**brennen**, E. *to burn*: der *Brand* (the conflagration); die *Brandung* (surf); der *Brunnen* (fountain).

[N. B.—O. H. G. *brinnan*=the phenomenon when water and fire come in contact.]

**dringen**, *to crowd, penetrate*: der *Drang* (the oppression); das *Gedränge* (the crowd); die *Drangsal*, trouble.

**fahren**, *to drive*: die *Fahrt* (the drive); der *Gefährte* (the companion); die *Fährte* (the ford)=die *Furt*.

**finden**, *to find*: der *Find* (the find); der *Finder* (the finder); der *Findling* (the foundling).

**geben**, *to give*: die *Mit-gift* (the marriage portion); das *Gift* (the poison); die *Gabe* (the gift).

**geschehen**, *to happen*: die *Geschichte* (history); das *Geschied*=das *Schicksal* (fate); die *Schicht* (the layer).

**graben**, *to dig*: das *Grab* (the grave); die *Grube* (the hole); der *Graben* (the ditch).

**helfen**, *to help*: die *Hülfe* (the help); der *Helfer* (the helper); der *Gehilfe* (the helpmate).

**hehlen**, *to hide*: der *Held* (the hero); die *Hölle* (hell); die *Hülle* (the covering); der *Helm* (the helmet).

**kommen**, *to come*: die *Ankunft* (the arrival); die *Zukunft* (the future); das *Einkommen* (income).

**liegen**, *to lie*: die *Lage* (the situation); das *Lager* (the camp); die *Gelegenheit* (the occasion).

**malen**, *to grind*: das *Mehl* (the flour); das *Mahl* (the repast) [originally *mal*=fixed point or time].

**nehmen**, *to take*: angenehm (agreeable); die *Vernunft*, f. (reasoning); die *Zunahme*, f. (increase).

**schaffen**, *to create, work*: der *Schöpfer* (the creator) [—*schaft* in many subst.]; das *Geschäft* (business).

**schlagen**, *to beat*: der *Schlag* (the blow); die *Schlacht* (the battle); *schlachten* (to slaughter).

**schrecken**, *to frighten*: der *Schrecken* (the fright); [die *Heuschrecke*, grasshopper, doubtful?].

**sehen**, *to see*: das *Gesicht* (the face, sight); der *Seher* (the seer, prophet); die *Aus-sicht*, etc. (view).

**singen**, *to sing*: der *Gesang* (the song); der *Sänger* (the singer); *fengen* (to set fire to, burn).

**sitzen**, *to sit*: der *Sitz* (the seat); der *Satz* (the sentence, jump); das *Gesetz* (the law); der *Sessel*, m. (chair).

**spinnen**, *to weave*: die *Spinne* (the spider); das *Gespinnst* (the web); die *Spindel* (the spindle).

**sprechen**, *to speak*: das *Sprichwort* (the proverb); die *Sprache* (language); das *Gespräch* (conversation).

**stechen**, *to prick*: der *Stich* (the prick); der *Stachel* (the sting); das *Stück* (the piece); der *Stoß* (stick).

**stehen**, *to stand*: der *Stand* (the standing, platform); die *Stunde* (the hour); die *Stadt* (town).

**tragen**, *to carry*: der *Vertrag* (truce?); die *Tracht* (the costume); also das *Getreide*? (corn).

**trinken**, *to drink*: der *Trunk* (the draught); der *Trank*; das *Getränke* (the drink).

**wachsen**, *to grow*: das *Gewächs* (the plant); der *Wuchs* (growth).

**wiegen**, *to weigh, rock*: das *Gewicht* (the weight); die *Wage* (the scales); die *Woge* (the wave).

**winden**, *to turn*: die *Wand* (side, wall); die *Wunde* (wound); das *Gewand* (dress); der *Wandel* (behaviour).

(ii) *i-Class.* [Derivatives only with *i* (ie); *ei* (or *e* as *Schwächung* of *i*. See page 135).]

**beißen**, *to bite*: das *Gebiß* (the teeth); das *Bisshen* (the little bit); der *Bissen* (the bite, morsel).

**bleiben**, *to remain* (for *be-bleiben*): der *Leib* (the body); *leben* (to live); das *Leben* (life).

**leiden**, *to suffer*: *leider* (alas); das *Glied*, n. (the member); das *Leid* (sorrow).

**reißen**, *to tear*: der *Riß* (the chink); der *Riß* (the tear); der *Reiz* (the charm).

**schleifen**, *to grind*: der *Schliff* (the polish); die *Schleppe* (the train of a garment); *schleppen* (to drag).

**schneiden**, *to cut*: der *Schnitt* (the cut); der *Schneider* (the tailor).

**schreiben**, *to write*: die *Schrift* (the writing); der *Schreiber* (the scribe).

**steigen**, *to mount*: die *Stiege* (the stairs); der *Steig* (*Steg*) (the little bridge, path).

**streichen**, *to stroke*: der *Strich* (the stroke); der *Streifen* (the strip); der *Strick* (the rope).

(iii) *u-Class.* [Derivates only with *u* (ü) or *ö*.] [au for ou, rare.] [ie, as *Brechung* of *io*, *iu*, see pp. 134, 135.]

**biegen**, *to bend*: der *Bogen* (the arc); die *Bucht* (the bay); der *Buckel* (the bent back, hump).

**bieten**, *to offer, command*: das *Gebiet* (the dominion); der *Bot* (the messenger); das *Gebot* (the order).



fliegen, *to fly*: die Fliege (*the fly*); der Flug (*the flight*); die Flucht (*the escape*); der Flügel (*the wing*).  
 fließen, *to flow*: der Fluß (*the river*); der Floß (*the float*); das Fließ-papier (*blotting-paper*).  
 genießen, *to enjoy*: der Genuß (*the enjoyment*); der Nutzen (*the use, advantage*); nützen (*to use*).  
 riechen, *to smell*: der Geruch (*the smell*); der Rauch (*the smoke*); rauchen (*to smoke*).  
 schieben, *to shove, push*: der Schuft (*the rascal*) (*shifty*); die Schaufel (*the spade, shovel*).  
 schießen, *to shoot*: der Schuß (*the shot*); das Geschöß (*the gun*); der Schütze (*the marksman*).  
 schließen, *to close*: das Schloß (*the lock, castle*); der Schluß (*the conclusion*); der Schlüssel (*the key*).  
 trügen, *to deceive*: der Betrug (*the deception*); der Betrüger (*the cheat*).  
 verlieren, *to lose*: der Verlust (*the loss*); der Verließ (*a prison (lost to the world's eyes)*).  
 ziehen, *to draw, pull*: der Zug (*the expedition*); der Herzog (*the leader (duke)*); die Zucht (*education*).

*Note.*—The intelligent student will easily increase the number of such derivatives; the above are more given only as examples, and do not claim to form a complete list; it would be a good practice gradually to collect derivatives and classify them.

## II. DERIVATION OF WORDS.

### A. By Suffixes.

[Very often accompanied by *Umlaut* of *a, o, u*, into *ä, ö, ü, äu*, when the derivative syllable contains *e* or *i*.]

#### (a) VERBS.

1. *-en* (or *n*), added to most nouns or adjectives: (a) to *Singulars*, as: der Pflug—pflügen (*to plough*); der Donner—donnern (*to thunder*). (b) to *Plurals*, as: die Blätter—blättern (*to turn over the leaves of a book*). (c) to *adjectives*, as: ein—einen (*to unite*); sauber—säubern (*to make clean*), etc.
2. *-eln*, added to the root of verbs, forms diminutives with *Umlaut*; the derivatives often having a contemptuous meaning, as: lachen—lächeln (*to smile*); tanzen—tänzeln (*to step foolishly, as in a dance*).
3. *-iren*, originally French, now sometimes added to Teutonic roots, as: halbhiren (*to halve*); haufiren (*to go from house to house*). [*-iren* more usually spelt *-ieren*.]
4. *-ern*, rare for verbs, from nouns, as: der Schlaf—einschläfern (*to lull to sleep*).  
*[N.B.—Not to be confounded with 1., where n is added to roots in er: der Eifer—eifern (to be zealous).]*
5. *-zen*, rare; as in der Schluß—schluchzen (*to sob*); ach—ächzen (*to groan*).

#### (b) SUBSTANTIVES.

1. *-er*, generally of male persons, forms Substantives from (a) *Verbal roots*, as: schneiden—der Schneider (*tailor*); spielen—der Spieler (*player*). (b) *Substantives*, as: das Fleisch—der Fleischer (*butcher*); der Garten—der Gärtner (*gardener*). To this class belong also the nationalities, as: die Schweiz—der Schweizer (*a Swiss*); England—der Engländer (*an Englishman*). Exceptions: der (die) Deutsche (*an adjective*), der Russe, der Türke, der Franzose (etc.).
2. *-ner* belongs to *-er*, which latter was formerly only added to nouns in *-en*; by false analogy *-ner* was afterwards added to nouns instead of *-er* only, as: das Bild—der Bildner (*sculptor*); die Rede—der Redner (*a speaker*).
3. *-in* (*-inn*) forms feminines of 1. and 2., as: der Gärtner—die Gärtnerin (*gardener's wife*).
4. *-el* added to verbal roots forms nouns, representing the instrument used in the action, as: ziehen—der Zügel (*bridle*); gürten—der Gürtel (*girdle*); werfen—der Würfel (*a die, dice*).
5. *-sal* forms nouns from verbs relating to some influence on men's minds, as: schicken—das Schicksal (*fate*); trüben—die Trübsal (*grief, straits*).
6. *-ling* (for *el + ing*) has a classifying force, as: Hof—der Höfling (*courtier*); jung—der Jüngling (*young man*); thus also der Sperling (*sparrow*); der Schmetterling (*butterfly*).



7. *-lein* or *-chen* forms (neuter) diminutives, often with endearing force, as : *der Vater*—*das Väterchen* (*dear little father*) ; *das Kind*—*das Kindlein* (*little (dear, pretty) child*).
8. *-ung* forms (fem.) abstracts from verbs, as : *handeln*—*die Handlung* (*trade, business*) ; it has sometimes a collective force, as : *der Wald*—*die Wäldung* (*forest-district*).
9. *-ei* forms feminine abstracts out of Person's appellations, as : *der Träumer*—*die Träumerei* (*dreaming*) ; *der Schäfer*—*die Schäferei* (*sheep-farm*). [*N.B.* *-ei* in *die Melodei* (or *Melodie*), etc. = *ie* from Lat. *-ia*.]
10. *-niß* forms abstracts from nouns, as : *der Bund*—*das Bündniß* (*treaty*) ; or from adjectives, as : *finster*—*die Finsterniß* (*darkness*) ; it has also sometimes a meaning of locality, as : *gefangen*—*das Gefängniß* (*prison*). [Most words in *-niß* are neuter.] [*-niß* now often spelt *-nis*.]
11. *-heit* (after *-g=keit*) [O. H. G. *die Heit*=*quality, manner*] has (a) a collective force, as : *die Christenheit* (*Christendom*) ; (b) an abstract meaning, as : *krank*—*die Krankheit* (*illness*).
12. *-tum* [O. H. G. *das tuom*=*power, dignity*] has generally a collective force, as : *das Rittertum* (= *body of knights*) ; *das Priester-tum* (*priesthood*).
13. *-schaft* [O. H. G. *die Schaft*=*bodily form, quality*] may be added to nouns, adjectives, or participles, and has (a) a meaning of "connection with," relationship, as : *die Bruderschaft* (*brotherhood*) ; (b) an abstract force, as : *wissend*—*die Wissenschaft* (*science*).

### (c) ADJECTIVES.

1. *-en* or *-n* forms adjectives from nouns implying materials, as : *das Gold*—*golden* ; *das Silber*—*silbern* ; *die Hölzer* (pl.) (*woods*)—*hölzern* (*wooden—of wood*).
2. *-ern*, by false analogy with above [*-er+n*], as : *das Eisen*—*eisern* (*iron*).
3. *-ig* forms adjectives from almost any noun, adjective, verb, pronoun, as : *der Sand*—*sandig* (*sandy*) ; *heute*—*heutig* (*of our days*) ; *fallen*—*fällig* (*due*). [*N.B.* It often implies possession, as : *mutig*=*having* *Mut* (*courage*) ; *bärtig*=*having a* *Bart* (*beard*).]
4. *-icht* implies "full of," as : *steinicht* (*stony*) ; *felsicht* (*rocky*). [*N.B.* *-icht* is often interchanged with *-ig*, as : *steinig*=*steinicht*, etc.]
5. *-isch* applies to *persons* [whilst *-icht* generally applies to *things*] ; *kindisch* (*childish*).
6. *-lich* [O. H. G. = *g-lich* = *gleich* = *like, similar*] forms adjectives implying (a) *quality* or *origin*, as : *königlich* (*kingly*) ; *ängstlich* (*anxiously*) ; (b) *Diminutives*, often with contemptuous sense, as : *ärmlich* (*rather poor*) ; *süßlich* (*rather sweet*).
7. *-sam* [O. H. G. *samo*=*the same*] implies inclination, as : *schweig-sam* (*taciturn, inclined to keep silent*) ; *furcht-sam* (*inclined to fear*) ; *aufmerksam* (*inclined to attention, attentive*).
8. *-bar* [connected with *bir*=*to bear, carry*] implies bearing, bringing, affording, as : *dankebar* (*thankful, bearing thanks*) ; *ehrbär* (*honourable, bringing honour*).
9. *-haft* [O. H. G. (adj.) *haft*=*held, prisoner*] implies having, holding, as : *zweifelhaft* (*doubtful, holding doubts*) ; *wahrhaft* (*true, having truth*), etc.

## B. By Prefixes.

### (a) VERBS. (Inseparable Prefixes only.)

1. *ge-* [connected with Lat. *cum*] implies *with, enduring, quiet*, as in : *gefallen* (*to please*) ; *gelangen* (*to arrive at*). [*N.B.* *glauben*, *to believe*, for *ge+lauben*.]
2. *be-* [O. H. G. *bei*] has the force (i.) of the full meaning of the conception expressed by the verb ; (ii.) of forming transitive verbs out of neuter verbs.—*be-* can be prefixed (a) to *verbs*, as : *bedenken* (*to consider*) ; *bedienen* (*to serve*). (b) to *adjectives*, as : *frei*—*befreien* (*to free*) ; *ruhig*—*beruhigen* (*to quiet*). (c) to *nouns*, as : *das Kleid*—*bekleiden* (*to dress*) ; *das Feuer*—*befeuern* (*to render enthusiastic*). [*N.B.* *be-* is perhaps the most fertile prefix in German. It requires an *accusative* after it.]

3. **er-** [O. H. G. *-ur*] with sense of origin. It has the force (i.) of incipient, beginning activity; (ii.) of emphasising the conception; (iii.) of success through the action. **er-** forms verbs (a) from *verbs*, as: *blühen—erblühen* (to bloom forth); *steigen—ersteigen* (to ascend successfully); (b) from *adjectives*, as: *warm—erwärmen* (to warm).
4. **ver-** is the opposite of **er-**; it has the force of (i.) ending, vanishing activity; (ii.) change of condition, using up, losing.—**ver-** forms verbs (a) from *verbs*, as: *spielen—verspielen* (to lose at play); (b) from *adjectives*, as: *arm—verarmen* (to become poor); (c) from *nouns*, as: *das Blut—verbluten* (to bleed to death).
5. **zer-** implies entire disintegration, resolution into small particles; it forms verbs (a) from *verbs*, as: *reißen—zerreißen* (to tear up altogether); (b) from *nouns*, as: *das Glied—zergliedern* (to dismember).
6. **ent-** [O. H. G. *ant* as in *Antwort* (answer), connected with Gk. *ἀντί*, against]. It has the force of (i.) implying the creation of a new condition, and (ii.) the leaving a former condition. **ent-** forms verbs from verbs only, as: *führen—entführen* (to lead away); *schwinden—entschwinden* (to disappear, vanish).  
[N.B.—Before *f*, *ent* becomes *em*, changing *f* into *pf*, as: *ent-fangen*=*empfangen* (to receive); *ent-finden*=*empfinden* (to feel).]
7. **miß-**, with meaning of badness, as: *mißfallen* (to displease); *mißhandeln* (to ill-treat).

## (b) SUBSTANTIVES.

1. **ge-** forms collectives, either of persons, as: *die Gebrüder* (pl.) (brethren); or of things, as: *das Gebirge* (collection of mountains); *das Gestirn* (collection of stars). Added to verbs, **ge-** has no special signification, as: *der Gesang* (song); *das Gesicht* (face, sight).
2. **un-** is the opposite of *sein* or *sein*; it has a meaning of largeness, and often of badness or enormity, as: *der Unmensche* (monster); *das Unkraut* (bad weeds).
3. **miß-** [O. H. G. *die Misse*=the want, defect, miss] implies error, badness, as: *das Mißjahr* (a bad year); *das Mißvergnügen* (displeasure, bad enjoyment).

## (c) ADJECTIVES.

The *only* prefix which is used to form adjectives is **un-**, which is added to adjectives having a good, pleasant meaning, and which changes such adjectives into their opposites, as: *weise—unweise* (unwise); *glücklich—unglücklich* (unhappy).

## III. COMPOSITION.

Distinguish this from II. (Derivation). By Composition we mean here the more modern putting together of words, each of which may be still used independently; whilst in Derivation we treated of prefixes or suffixes which have now lost their independent meaning, and are no longer used by themselves.

## (a) VERBS.

Verbs can combine with *prepositions or adverbs only*; and the new forms thus obtained are called *separable verbs*; indeed, the preposition or adverb has the accent, and clings to the root verb always, except in the Present and Imperfect tenses, and in the Imperative, and only in Principal Sentences. [See the *Grammar*, p. 54.]

There are only *six* prepositions which may give up their accent to the verb entirely, and form *inseparable verbs* with it (as do *ver*, *zer*, *ge*, etc.). These six prepositions are :

**durch**, as : *durchblicken* (to look through) ; *durchdenken* (to think over).  
**hinter**, as : *hintergehen* (to cheat) ; *hinterlassen* (to bequeath, leave behind).  
**über**, as : *übersetzen* (to translate) ; *übergehen* (to omit, leave out).  
**um**, as : *umgeben* (to surround) ; *umschiffen* (to sail round).  
**unter**, as : *unterdrücken* (to oppress) ; *unterhalten* (to entertain).  
**wider**, as : *widersprechen* (to contradict) ; *widerstehen* (to withstand, oppose).

Of these all (except **wider**) can also form separable verbs, as :

*durchsehen*, to look through ; *hinter . . . gehen*, to go behind, etc.,

though some of these can scarcely be called compound verbs, and are rather verbs governing prepositions. Notice also, that when the above prepositions form inseparable verbs, these are transitive, *i.e.* require a complement, and are conjugated with **haben** in their Compound tenses. [See also p. 54.]

But with almost all other prepositions or adverbs, verbs can combine to form new verbs, separable, and having the accent on the preposition or adverb, which in fact gives its peculiar colour or signification to the root-verb, as :

*an-fangen* (to begin) ; *auf-gehen* (to rise) ; *ab-gehen* (to depart) ; *wieder-kommen* (to return), etc. etc.

*N.B.*—*wieder=* forms only *one* inseparable verb : *wiederholen*, to repeat ; *wider=* cannot form any separable verbs at all.

#### (b) SUBSTANTIVES (the Substantive being the last component).

- (i.) with *preposition or adverb*, as : *die Ab-fahrt* (departure) ; *der Vorfall* (event) ; *der Aus-weg* (the way out, excuse) ; *das Ober-haupt* (the chief), etc. etc.
- (ii.) with *verb*, as : *das Fahr-zeug* (the conveyance) ; *die Schreib-feber* (the pen) ; *das Wohn-haus* (dwelling-house) ; *die Denk-kraft* (the power of thinking).
- (iii.) with *substantive*, as : *das Bilder-buch* (the picture-book) ; *der Blumen-tisch* (the flower-table) ; *das Dampf-schiff* (the steamboat), etc. etc.
- (iv.) with *adjective*, as : *die Jung-frau* (the virgin) ; *der Freimut* (the candour) ; *die Neu-bildung* (the new formation) ; *der Eigen-sinn* (obstinacy), etc. etc.

#### (c) ADJECTIVES (the Adjective being the last component).

- (i.) with *preposition or adverb*, as : *über-voll* (over full) ; *auf-recht* (upright) ; *außer-ordentlich* (extraordinary) ; *ein-drücklich* (impressive), etc. etc.
- (ii.) with *verb*, as : *merk-würdig* (noteworthy) ; *spiel-fähig* (capable of play) ; *reise-fertig* (ready for travelling) ; *tanz-lustig* (fond of dancing), etc. etc.
- (iii.) with *substantive*, as : *helf-reich* (beneficent) ; *kunst-fertig* (accomplished in an art) ; *kreis-förmig* (circular) ; *geist-voll* (witty) ; *treu-loß* (unfaithful), etc. etc.
- (iv.) with *adjective*, as : *bleich-wangig* (pale-cheeked) ; *hoch-heilig* (high and holy) ; *groß-mütig* (generous) ; *braunrot* (brownish red), etc. etc.

*Notice.*—In all these compounds the first component has the principal accent, but the last component takes upon itself all the functions of Gender, Number, Case, Tense, etc. The first component changes under no condition whatever. This applies equally to all Compound Verbs, Substantives, and Adjectives, and to their Conjugation, Declension, and Comparison.

## APPENDIX A.

### SHORT ETYMOLOGICAL DICTIONARY.

WE append a small Etymological Dictionary, which contains some 300 of the most important roots, with hints as to their origin. For further details the student must consult a regular, full, and complete Etymological Dictionary, such as F. Kluge's [Strasburg, K. J. Trübner], from which, indeed, many of the words here given are taken.

*N.B.*—The student must not forget to refer to the rules given (pp. 133 to 137) about Vowel and Consonant changes.

---

ABBREVIATIONS: E. = English; M. H. G. = Middle High German (about 12th century); Got. = Gothic; O. H. G. = Old High German (about 6th century); A. S. = Anglo-Saxon (before 5th century); Lat. = Latin; Gk. = Greek; O. E. = Old English; Skt. = Sanskrit; Ind. G. = Indo-Germanic; cf. = compare; *m.* = masculine; *f.* = feminine; *n.* = neuter; *r.* = regular; *irr.* = irregular.

---

**Abend**, *m.*, E. evening; M. H. G. *ābent*; O. H. G. *aband*; A. S. *aēfen*, *aefning*.

**Abt**, *m.*, E. abbot; M. H. G. borrowed from Lat. *abbas*, *abbatis*; A. S. *abbod*.

**aht**, E. eight; M. H. G. *ahte*; O. H. G. *ahto*; A. S. *eahta*; Lat. *octo*; Gk. *ὀκτώ*; Skt. *astāu*.

**Acker**, *m.*, E. acre; O. H. G. *acchar*; A. S. *aecer*; Lat. *ager*; Gk. *ἀργός*; Got. *akrs*.

**Adel**, *m.*, E. noble, nobility; O. H. G. *adal*; A. S. *aethelu* (as in O. E. *Ethelred*, *Atheling*, etc.).

**Adler**, *m.*, eagle [= *adel-aar* = noble-eagle]; **Ar**, Gk. *ἄρως*, a bird (cf. Ornithology).

**all**, E. all; O. H. G. *al*; Got. *alls*; A. S. *eall*; [*allein* = *all-ein* = all one = alone.]

**Almosen**, *n.*, E. alms; M. H. G. *almuosen*; O. H. G. *alamosan*; A. S. *aemesse*; Gk. *ἐλεημοσύνη* = pity, alms.

**alt**, E. old; A. S. *eald*; Got. *altheis*; [connected with Lat. *al-o*, to nourish, grow up.]

**Apfel**, *m.*, E. apple; O. H. G. *apful*; A. S. *aeppe* (a word borrowed perhaps from the Finns).

**Auge**, *n.*, E. eye; M. H. G. *ouge*; O. H. G. *ouga*; Got. *augo*; A. S. *eage*; Lat. *oculus*.

**aus**, E. out; O. H. G. *ūz*; A. S. *ūt*; Skt. *ūt*.

**Bach**, *m.*, E. beck, brook; O. H. G. *bah*; A. S. *becc*.

**bauen**, *r.*, E. to build; M. H. G. *būwen*; O. H. G. *būan*; Got. *bauan*, to dwell; [Lat. *fuji*; Gk. *φύω*, to be, become.]

**Beispiel**, *n.* [E. example]; M. H. G. *bispil* or *bispel*; A. S. *bispell*, where *spell* = story, fable; cf. E. gospel = God's-spell. *Spell* is O. H. G. for artistic, poetic narration. *bī* = E. by, about; G. *bei*, *he* (as prefix).

**besser**, E. better [comparative of *baß* = good (still used in German sometimes)]; A. S. *betera*.

**bitten**, *irr.*, E. to beg (bid); O. H. G. *bitjan*, *bidjan*; A. S. *biddan*. [Lat. *fido*; Gk. *πιθ* for *φίθ*.]

**Blatt**, *n.*, E. blade, leaf; O. H. G. *blat*; A. S. *blaed*; Lat. *fol-ium*; Gk. *φύλλον*.

**Blume**, *f.*, E. flower, bloom; O. H. G. *bluoma*; A. S. *blōma*; connected with Lat. *flos*.



**brauen**, *v.*, E. to brew ; M. H. G. briuwen ; A. S. breowan ; Ind. G. brū or bhrū. To this root belong **Brød**, bread, and **Bier**, beer ; as E. broth also.

**Brant**, *f.*, E. bride ; O. H. G. brūt (a specially Germanic word) ; A. S. bryd.—The *gam* in **Bräutigam**, E. bridegroom, comes from A. S. *guma* ; Lat. *homo*=a man. [The *i*=*e*, a genitive suffix.]

**brechen**, *irr.*, E. break ; O. H. G. brēhan ; Got. brikan ; A. S. brecan ; Lat. *frango*—*fregi*.

**Brief**, *m.*, E. brief, letter ; from Lat. *brevis*, short ; =a *short* document.

**Bruder**, *m.*, O. H. G. brudar ; A. S. brothor ; Got. brothar ; Lat. *frater* ; Gk. *φράτηρ*, with political meaning.

**Buch**, *n.*, E. book ; O. H. G. buoch, buoh ; Got. bōka. The Singular *bōc* referred to the letters engraved on trees, especially on the beech, **Buche**, *f.* Cf. Lat. *fagus* ; Gk. *φῦλος*. The Plural referred to documents containing such letters, and then generally to documents and *books*.

**Busch**, *m.*, E. bush, from M. Lat. *buscus*, *boscus* ; M. H. G. busch, bosch ; O. H. G. busk.

**Busen**, *m.*, E. bosom ; O. H. G. buosum ; A. S. bōsm (a specially Germanic word).

**Dach**, *m.*, E. roof, thatch ; O. H. G. dah ; A. S. thaec ; Got. (missing). [Lat. *tego* ; Gk. *τέγος*, *στέγη*.]

**denken**, E. to think ; O. H. G. denchen ; A. S. thencan ; Got. tha(n)kjan.

**deuts(che)**, E. German (Dutch) ; M. H. G. tiutsch [Got. *thiudisco*=heathenish ; cf. Gk. *ἑθνικός*] ; connected with O. H. G. *diot*=people ; A. S. *theod* ; Lat. *tuticus*. Compare E. *dict*. Thus **deuts(che)** really means *the people par excellence* in early Germanic.

**Dienstag**, E. Tuesday. **Dinc** from the old Teuton god *Tiu* ; cf. *Zeús* (*Δίος*) ; Lat. *Jovis*.

**Dirne**, *f.*, E. maid, servant ; O. H. G. diorna ; cf. Got. *thiwaīrnō*=daughter of a serf.

**Dorf**, *n.*, E. village (-thorpe) ; A. S. *thorp* ; Got. *thaurp*=land, fields.

**du**, E. thou ; O. H. G. dū ; A. S. thū ; Lat. *tu* ; Gk. *σύ*, *σú* ; Skt. *tvam*.

**dulden**, E. suffer ; O. H. G. dolan ; A. S. tholian ; Lat. *tolerare* ; Gk. *τλῆναι*.

**dumm**, E. stupid, dumb ; O. H. G. tumb ; Got. *dumbs*. [Perhaps Gk. *τυφλός*.]

**durch**, E. through ; O. H. G. duruh ; A. S. thurh. [Cf. E. *thorough*.]

**Duzend**, *n.*, E. dozen (from French *douzaine*) ; Lat. *duodecim*.

**Ehe**, *f.*, E. marriage ; M. H. G. êwe ; A. S. *aew*=time, eternity, law ; Lat. *aevum* ; Gk. *αἰών*.

**Ei**, *n.*, E. egg ; O. H. G. ei ; A. S. *aêg*. [Cf. Lat. *ovum* ; Gk. *ᾠόν*.]

**Eiche**, *f.*, oak ; O. H. G. eih ; A. S. *âc*.

**Eid**, *m.*, E. oath ; M. H. G. eit, eid ; A. S. *âth* ; Got. *aiths*. Perhaps connected with **Ehe** above.

**ein**, E. one, a ; O. H. G. ein ; A. S. *ân* ; Got. *ains* ; Lat. *unus* (*communis*).

**Eis**, *n.*, E. ice ; O. H. G. is. Perhaps connected with *is*, to glitter ; see next word.

**Eisen**, *n.*, E. iron ; M. H. G. isen ; A. S. *isern*, *iren* ; Lat. *aes*=ore (Ind. G. *is*, to glitter).

**elend**, E. [miserable] ; M. H. G. *ellend*=living in banishment, foreign. Cf. Lat. *alius*, other ; Gk. *ἄλλος* ; E. *alien* [Got. *alilandi*=foreign, other lands].

**Engel**, *m.*, E. Angel ; O. H. G. Angil ; A. S. *engel* ; Lat. *angelus* ; Gk. *ἄγγελος*, a messenger.

**Erde**, *f.*, E. earth ; O. H. G. *ërda* ; Got. *airtha* ; A. S. *eorthe* (perhaps Lat. *arvum*, cultivated field).

**erst**, E. first ; O. H. G. *ërist* ; A. S. *ærest*, superlative of *ehe*=early. [Cf. *gûrft*=prince.]

**essen**, *irr.*, E. to eat ; O. H. G. *ëzzan* ; A. S. *etan* ; Got. *itan*. [Cf. Lat. *ësus*, part. of *edo* ; Gk. *ἐδ-ομαι*.]

**ewig**, E. eternal, for aye ; O. H. G. *ëwig* [Lat. *aevum* ; Gk. *αἰών*=eternity. See **Ehe**.]

**Flagge**, *f.*, E. flag, vane ; A. S. *fana*=cloth. [Perhaps Lat. *pannus*=piece of cloth ; Gk. *πῆνος*.]

**fahren**, *irr.*, E. drive, fare ; O. H. G. *faran* ; Got. *farjan*. [Lat. *per-itus*=*erfahren*, versed ; Gk. *πόρος*, as in *Βόσπορος*, a ford for oxen ; E. *Bosporus* ; also Gk. *πορεύω*, to go, lead, get on.]

**fals(che)**, E. false ; Lat. *falsus* [connected with *fallen*, to fall ; Lat. *fallo* ; Gk. *σφάλω*]. (The *-sch* being the Got. *ska*, as adjective suffix.)

**fangen**, E. catch (cf. fangs of an animal) ; O. H. G. *fahan* ; Got. *fāhan* [Lat. *pango*, *pax*?].

**faul**, E. foul, lazy ; O. H. G. *fūl*, root *fū* with derivative *la*, *al* [Lat. *pūteo*, *pus* ; Gk. *πόθω*.]

**fechten**, E. to fight ; O. H. G. *fēhten* ; A. S. *feohtan*. [Cf. Lat. *pugnare*.]

**fein**, E. fine, beautiful ; M. H. G. *vin*, *fin* from Lat. *finire*, etc., hence *fine*=finished, beautiful.



**Feind**, *m.*, E. enemy, fiend ; O. H. G. *fiant* ; A. S. *feond* ; Goth. *fjands* (Lat. *hostis* is not related).  
**Fenster**, *n.*, E. window ; O. H. G. *vēnstar* from Latin *fenestra* introduced in early Gothic times.  
**finden**, *irr.*, E. to find ; M. H. G. *vinden* ; O. H. G. *findan* ; Goth. *finthan* [Lat. *in-venio*].  
**Fisch**, *m.*, E. fish ; O. H. G. *fisk* ; Lat. *piscis*.  
**fließen**, *irr.*, E. flow, fleet(-ing) ; O. H. G. *fliozzan* ; A. S. *fleotan* (compare flood, fleet) [perhaps also Gk. *πλέω* to sail, and even Lat. *pluere*, to rain, French *pleuvoir*].

**Florin**, *m.*, E. florin ; late Latin from Florence in Italy, connected with *flos*, etc., a flower.  
**flut**, *f.*, E. flood ; O. H. G. *fluot* ; Got. *flōdus* ; A. S. *flōd* from root *flō* or *plō* (see *fließen*).  
**fragen**, *r.*, E. ask, pray ; O. H. G. *frāhēn*. Connected with Lat. *precari*, to pray, beg.  
**Frau**, *f.*, E. woman ; M. H. G. *vrouwe* ; O. H. G. *frouwa* [*frō*=lord, *frouwa* its feminine].  
**Freund**, *m.*, E. friend ; O. H. G. *friunt* ; A. S. *freond* (from *frijon*, to love ; hence also *frei*=free).  
**Frucht**, *f.*, E. fruit ; O. H. G. *fruht* from Lat. *fructus* (c before t=i, as in French *nuit*).  
**fünf**, E. five ; O. H. G. *funf*, *finf* ; A. S. *fif* ; from Lat. *quinque* (for *pinque*) ; Gk. *πέντε*.

**Galgen**, *m.*, E. gallows ; O. H. G. *galgo* ; A. S. *gealga* (from Got. *galgan*, a rod, beam). [Cf. *Golgatha* ?]  
**Gast**, *m.*, E. guest ; O. H. G. *gast*, *gesti* from old *ghostis* from Lat. *hostis*=a stranger (enemy).  
**geben**, *irr.*, E. give ; O. H. G. *geban* ; A. S. *gifan* ; Got. *giban* [from it *Ūift*, *Ūaſe*, etc.].  
**gehen**, *irr.*, E. to go ; O. H. G. *gān* ; A. S. *gan* with *gang*. [Perhaps *ge*+aim, with Lat. *eo*, Gk. *εἶμι*.]  
**gerecht**, E. just, right ; O. H. G. *gīreht* from Lat. *rectus*, *directus*.  
**gestern**, E. yester-day ; O. H. G. *gestaron* ; Got. *gistra* ; Lat. *heri* for *hjesi* ; Gk. *χθές*.  
**gleich**, E. like ; O. H. G. *gilih* ; Got. *galeiks*=*[ga(ge)+]* *lika*=a body ; hence *gleich*=with (similar) body.  
**Gold**, *n.*, E. gold ; Got. *gulth* [connected with *gelb*=yellow ; A. S. *geolo* and perhaps Gk. *χλωρός*].  
**Gott**, *m.*, E. God ; Got. *gūth*. Perhaps Skt. *dēva* ; Lat. *deus* ; Gk. *Διός* ?  
**Graf**, *m.*, E. Count, —grave ; O. H. G. *gravo*, *gravjo*. From root *grēf*, to command.

**haben**, E. to have ; O. H. G. *habēn* ; A. S. *hæbban* ; Got. *haban* ; Lat. *habeo*.  
**Hahn**, *m.*, E. cock (hen) ; O. H. G. *hano* ; A. S. *hana*, *cocc* ; from Lat. *cano*, to sing.  
**halb**, E. half ; M. H. G. *halp* ; A. S. *healf* [Got. *halba*=on one side, hence : one half].  
**hart**, E. hard ; O. H. G. *herti*, *harti* ; A. S. *heard*=brave ; cf. Gk. *καρὺς*=strong for *καρπύς*.  
**Haupt**, *n.*, E. head ; O. H. G. *houbit*, *houpt* ; A. S. *heafod* (perhaps Lat. *caput*, Gk. *κεφαλή* ?)  
**haut**, *f.*, E. hide, skin ; O. H. G. *hūt* ; A. S. *hȳd* ; Lat. *cutis*, as in *scutum*, a shield of hide.  
**Heide**, *m.*, E. heathen ; O. H. G. *heidan* ; A. S. *hæthen* ; (Lat. *paganus*=wild, country) Got. *haithi*=field.  
**heil**, E. hale, hail ! whole ; A. S. *hāl* ; Got. *hails*=Hail ! [Lat. *angurium*=luck].  
**Held**, *m.*, E. hero ; O. H. G. *helid* ; A. S. *hæleth* ; [to Got. root : *hal* in *hehlen*, *hüllen*, to cover, protect].  
**Herbst**, *m.*, E. harvest, autumn ; O. H. G. *hervist* (perhaps to Lat. *carpo*, to pluck, gather fruit ?).  
**Herr**, *m.*, E. gentleman, Sir (hero) ; O. H. G. *herro*, comparative of *hēr*=proud, noble ; A. S. *hār*.  
**Herzog**, *m.*, E. duke ; O. H. G. *heri-zogo* ; A. S. *heretoga*=leader of army (*ſcēter*).  
**heute**, E. to-day ; O. H. G. *hiuta* ; A. S. *hes-dæg*=this day (cf. Lat. *hodie*=hoc die).  
**Hirsch**, *m.*, E. hart, stag ; O. H. G. *hiruz*, *hirz* ; A. S. *heorot* (cf. Lat. *cervus* and Gk. *κέρας*=a horn).  
**hoch**, E. high ; O. H. G. *hōh* ; Got. *hanhs* ; A. S. *heah* (connected *hūgel*, hill, etc.).  
**Hölle**, *f.*, E. hell ; O. H. G. *hella* ; Got. *halja* ; A. S. *hell* (to root : *hal* in *hüllen*, to cover).  
**Hund**, *m.*, E. dog, hound ; O. H. G. *hunt(d)* ; Got. *hunds* [Lat. *canis* ; Gk. *κυν-* from *κύων*).  
**hundert**, E. hundred ; Got. *hunda* ; A. S. *hund* ; Lat. *centum* ; Gk. *ἐκατόν*).

[N.B.—the *-rt* in *hunde-rt* belongs to Got. *rathjan*, to count, read.]

**ich**, E. I ; M. H. G. *ich* ; O. H. G. *ih* ; A. S. *ic* ; Got. *ik* ; cf. Lat. *ego* ; Gk. *ἐγώ* ; Skt. *aham*.  
**Insel**, *f.*, E. island, from Lat. *insula*. [Not to be confounded with *Ūilānd*=island, from *ein-land*, i.e. a land by itself.]  
**ja**, E. yes, yea ; A. S. *geā* [cf. Gk. *ἦ*=indeed, really].  
**Jahr**, *n.*, E. year ; O. H. G. *jār* ; Got. *jer*. [Perhaps Gk. *ῥα*=season, spring].  
**je**, E. ever ; M. H. G. *ie* ; O. H. G. *io*, *ēo* ; E. *aye*, connected with Lat. *aevum*, and Gk. *αἰών*.  
**jung**, E. young ; O. H. G. *junc* ; A. S. *geong* ; Got. *juggs* (*jungs*) ; Ind.-Ger. *yuwen* ; Lat. *juvenis*.

- Kampf**, E. battle (camp); O. H. G. champf; A. S. camp (connected Lat. campus (Martius)).
- Kapelle**, E. chapel; from Lat. capella, dimin. of capa, a cloak, then the place where the cloak of Saint Martin was kept, then generally a sacred building (cf. E. cape).
- Kar**-(freitag) or **Char**= E. Good-(Friday) from O. H. G. chara=sorrow, mourning.
- kaufen**, E. buy; M. H. G. koufen; O. H. G. choufōn=trade, sell or buy; A. S. cýpan, E. cheap, connected.
- kec**, E. bold, quick; O. H. G. chec, quec=living, quick; Lat. vivus for gwivus; Gk. βίος, life. Compare E. quick-silver; "the quick and the dead" [wick, for quick].
- Kerl**, E. fellow, churl; O. H. G. Karal; A. S. ceorl=serf; [cf. Karl, Charles].
- Kind**, *n.*, E. child; O. H. G. chind (connected with genus; Gk. γένος, also with gens, etc.).
- Kirche**, *f.*, E. church; O. H. G. chirihha; A. S. cyrice; a Greek word κυριακόν (Κύριος, the Lord).
- Kirsche**, *f.*, E. cherry; O. H. G. chirsa; Lat. cerasius (*adj.*); Gk. κεράσια, cherry-tree.
- Kiste**, *f.*, E. chest; M. H. G. kiste; O. H. G. chista; A. S. cist; Lat. cista; Gk. κίστη.
- klein**, E. small (clean); M. H. G. kleine; A. S. clæne. The G. borrowed from Frisian.
- Kloster**, E. convent, cloister, from M. Lat. claustrum (cf. claudo, to shut up).
- Knappe**, E. boy, knave; M. H. G. knappe; O. H. G. chnappo (perhaps to root *gen*; Lat. genus, etc.).
- Knecht**, E. man-servant (knight); A. S. cniht; O. H. G. chnēht (see above word).
- Knie**, *n.*, E. knee; O. H. G. chniu; Got. kniu; Lat. genu; Gk. γόνυ; Ind. G. gnu, gnew.
- Knopf**, *m.*, E. knob, button [A. S. enopp], connected with **Knospe**, a bud.
- kochen**, E. to cook; O. H. G. chohhon, from Lat. coquere, French cuire.
- kommen**, E. to come; O. H. G. choman, queman; Lat. venio for gvenio.
- König**, E. king; M. H. G. künic, künec; O. H. G. chunig; A. S. cyning, from A. S. cynn=race, noble birth.
- können**, E. can; M. H. G. kunnan; O. H. G. chunnan; Lat. gnosco; Gk. ἔ-γνων.
- Kopf**, *m.*, E. head (cup); O. H. G. choph, chuph; A. S. cuppa. [Lat. cūpa, a barrel; Gk. κεφαλή.]
- Körper**, *m.*, body (corps), M. H. G. körper, körpel, borrowed from Lat. corpus—corporis.
- kostspielig**, E. dear, expensive, from **fo**=victuals, expense, and **spilden** (O. H. G.), to be prodigal.
- Kraft**, E. force (craft=force of mind); O. H. G. chraft [perhaps Gk. κράτος, strong?].
- Krenz**, *n.*, E. cross; M. H. G. kriuz; O. H. G. chrūzi, from Lat. crucis (crux).
- Kreuzer**, *m.*, E. penny, etc., a small coin with a *cross* on it originally, hence the name.
- Krone**, *f.*, E. crown, borrowed in O. H. G. from Lat. corona; M. H. G. krōne, krōn.
- Kuh**, *f.*, E. cow; M. H. G. kuo; A. S. cū; Got. kos (cf. Lat. bos; Gk. βούς; Skt. gaus).
- Kupfer**, *n.*, E. copper; O. H. G. chupfar, from Lat. aes cyprium, from Κύπρος=Cyprus.
- kurz**, E. short, curt; O. H. G. skurz; A. S. sceort; from Lat. curtus.
- lassen**, E. to let; O. H. G. lāzzan; A. S. lætan; Got. lētan [cf. Lat. lassus=tired].
- leben**, E. to live; Got. liban; A. S. libban (cf. to leave; **le**ib and **ble**iben, to remain).
- Leiche**, *f.*, E. corpse (cf. Lich-field, corpse-field); O. H. G. lih; Got. leik, lika=body. [See **glei**ch.]
- leicht**, E. easy, light; M. H. G. liht; O. H. G. lihti. [Perhaps Lat. levis and Gk. ἐ-λαχύς.]
- leiden**, E. to suffer; M. H. G. liden; O. H. G. lidan, connected with Got. leithan, to go, *i.e.* **leiden**=go into strange lands, hence suffer. See **le**iden.
- lernen**, E. to learn; O. H. G. lērnan; A. S. leornian; from Got. lais=I know.
- lesen**, E. to read; O. H. G. lēsan; Got. lisan. [Perhaps Lat. lego; Gk. λέγω, to read.]
- lezt**, E. latest, last; M. H. G. lezzist. Superlative to **laz**=tired (Lat. lassus).
- lieb**, E. dear (lief); M. H. G. liep; O. H. G. liob; A. S. leof; Skt. lubh=desire eagerly. Perhaps to Lat. libido, libet (lubido, lubet).
- liegen**, E. to lie down; O. H. G. lieken, ligen; A. S. liegan; (Lat. lectus, a bed; Gk. λέκτρον.)
- Löwe**, *m.*, E. lion; M. H. G. lēwe; O. H. G. lēwo [borrowed from Lat. leo; Gk. λέων].
- machen**, E. to make; O. H. G. mahhōn; A. S. macian [connected with M. H. G. gemach=comfortable].
- Magd**, *f.*, E. maid, servant; O. H. G. magad=virgin. [Perhaps to Ind. G. mag=be able.]
- Mahl** (Mal), E. meal (times), both from O. H. G. māl=a fixed time, a fixed point.
- Mann**, *m.*, E. man; O. H. G. man; Got. manna; A. S. mon; Skt. manus; Ind. G. manū.

- Marſchall, m.**, E. marshal, from O. H. G. marah=horse, mare, and schalk=servant.
- Maulwurf, m.**, E. mole, from O. H. G. molte=mould, earth, and werfen=to throw up.
- Mauſ, f.**, E. mouse; O. H. G. mūs; Lat. mus; Gk. μῦς; Skt. mūs (mus-ay, to take, rob).
- mehr, E.** more; O. H. G. Comparative merre (cf. Lat. major); Got. maiza.
- Meiſter, m.**, E. master; O. H. G. meistar, from Lat. magister; French maitre.
- Meſſe, f.**, E. mass (Christ-mas); O. H. G. messa, missa, from Lat. missa est, etc. (concio), the words with which the diakonus dismissed the assembly, if no communion took place.
- Mohr, m.**, E. black(-a-moor); M. H. G. mōr, from Lat. Maurus (North Africa).
- Mönch, E.** monk; M. H. G. münech; O. H. G. munich, from Lat. monachus, Gk. μοναχός.
- Mond, m.**, E. moon; M. H. G. mǎnē; O. H. G. māno; Got. mēna; A. S. mōna (Lat. mens-is; Gk. μήν).
- Mühle, f.**, E. mill; M. H. G. mül; O. H. G. mūli; A. S. myln; Lat. mola.
- Münſter, n.**, E. minster; O. H. G. munustiri, borrowed from Lat. monasterium=convent.
- Münze, f.**, E. mint, coin; O. H. G. munizza; borrowed from Lat. moneta=coined money.
- Mutter, f.**, E. mother; M. H. G. mnoter; A. S. mōddor; Lat. mater; Gk. μήτηρ [Skt. root, mā].
- Nachbar, m.**, E. neighbour; M. H. G. nachgebūr; O. H. G. nahgibūr [=naht (near) and bauer=būr]. [See bauen.]
- Nacht, f.**, E. night; O. H. G. naht; A. S. niht; Lat. noct-; Gk. νυκτ-.
- Name, m.**, E. name; O. H. G. namo; A. S. noma; Lat. nomen; Gk. ὄνομα.
- Nebel, m.**, E. mist; O. H. G. nēbul; Lat. nebula; Gk. νεφέλη; Skt. nabhas.
- Neffe, m.**, E. nephew; O. H. G. nēvo; A. S. nefa; Lat. nepos=grandson; Gk. νέποδες=brood, little ones.
- neu, E.** new; M. H. G. niuwe; O. H. G. niuwi; Got. niujis; Skt. navus; Lat. novus; Gk. νέος.
- neun, E.** nine; O. H. G. niun; A. S. nigon; Skt. navan; Lat. novem; Gk. ἐννέα. Most likely connected with neu, new, as nine is the first or new number of the 3d tetrad (or series of four things).
- nüchtern, E.** fasting; O. H. G. nuohturn (perhaps Lat. nocturnus, nightly [night's fast?]).
- Nuß, f.**, E. nut; O. H. G. nuz; not from Lat. nux; for A. S. hnutu. [Skt. knud.]
- Ohr, n.**, E. ear; M. H. G. ōre; O. H. G. ōra; A. S. eare; Lat. auris; Gk. οὖς.
- Öl, n.**, E. oil; O. H. G. ole, ol, borrowed from Lat. oleum in the 5th century.
- opfern, E.** to offer, dedicate; O. H. G. opfarōn; A. S. offrian, from Lat. offerre (for ob-ferre).
- Oſtern, f.**, E. Easter; O. H. G. ostarūn; from Teuton goddess Austrō, of the Dawn; East; connected with Skt. usās, Lat. aurora (for ausos-a); Gk. ἠώς=morning, dawn.
- Paar, n.**, E. pair; O. H. G. pār, borrowed from Lat. par=equal (E. peer).
- Palast, m.**, E. palace; M. H. G. palast, borrowed from French palais, Lat. palatium.
- Papier, n.**, E. paper, from Gk. and Lat. papyrus, a vegetable, furnishing parchment (in Egypt).
- Palz, f.**, E. palatinate; M. H. G. phalenze; Lat. palatium; or perhaps more correctly connected with Pfalz =palings, pales, upon which houses were built in marshes (Lat. palus).
- Pfau, m.**, E. pea-cock, -hen; O. H. G. pfawo; Lat. pavo; Gk. παῶς (perhaps onomatopoeitic name).
- Pferd, n.**, E. horse; M. H. G. tpfert; borrowed from M. Lat. paraveredus, parifredus, a hybrid word from Gk. παρά and Lat. veredus=a horse. Compare E. palfrey, French palefroi.
- Pfingſten, f.**, E. pentecost, Whitsuntide; M. H. G. pfingsten, from Gk. πεντεκοστή=50th (day), i.e. after Easter.
- Pflaume, f.**, E. plum; M. H. G. pflāme, from Lat. prunum (Pl. pruna).
- Pfund, n.**, E. pound; O. H. G. pfunt; A. S. pund, from Lat. pondo.
- Pilgrim, Pilger, m.**, E. pilgrim; O. H. G. pilgrim, from Lat. peregrinus, French pèlerin.
- Post, f.**, E. post, from Latin posita, the place (where the horses stood).
- predigen, E.** preach; O. H. G. predigōn, from Lat. praedicare, to speak before others.
- Prieſter, m.**, E. priest; O. H. G. prēstar, from Gk. πρεσβύτερος, Lat. presbyter.
- Pulver, n.**, E. powder; M. H. G. from Lat. pulvis (-eris), dust, ashes.
- Quackſalber, m.**, E. quack-doctor. Quack from O. H. G. quacken, to boast; Salbe, salve, ointment.
- Quelle, f.**, E. fountain. New word from O. H. G. quellan; Skt. root gel, jala=water.



- Rād**, *n.*, (E. wheel); O. H. G. rad (a word missing in E. and Got.); Lat. rota.
- Rauch**, *m.*, E. smoke, reek; M. H. G. rouch; O. H. G. rouhh; Ind. Germ. root, rūk, to smoke.
- Regen**, *m.*, E. rain; O. H. G. rēgan (Lat. rigare, to water), cf. also to irrigate=water.
- Reich**, *n.*, E. empire; O. H. G. rīhhi; A. S. rice; Got. reiki (Lat. rego=to rule, lead).
- reich**, E. rich, connected with above, originally=powerful, ruling.
- Reue**, *f.*, E. repentance (cf. to rue); O. H. G. riuwa; A. S. hreowan=to repent, be vexed, be sad.
- Ros**, *n.*, E. horse; O. H. G. ros; A. S. hors. [Perhaps Lat. (curso) curro.]
- rot**, E. red; O. H. G. rōt; Goth. rauds; A. S. reod [cf. Lat. rubido, Fk. ἐρυθρός].
- Ruder**, *n.*, E. rudder, oar; O. H. G. ruodar; A. S. rother (Lat. re-mus, ra-tis, Gk. ἐρέτης).
- Sache**, *f.*, E. thing (-sake); O. H. G. sahha; A. S. sacu=quarrel, cause; Got. sakjo.
- sagen**, E. to say; O. H. G. sagan; A. S. sagjan, secjan.
- Salz**, *n.*, E. salt; O. H. G. salz; Got. salt; A. S. sealt; Lat. sal; Gk. ἄλα.
- Samstag**, *m.*, E. Saturday; O. H. G. sambaz-tag (-tac), from Lat. sabbati-dies (cf. French samedi).
- Sau**, *f.*, E. sow; O. H. G. sū; A. S. sū (sugu); Lat. sū(s); Gk. σὺ(s) (Skt. sū=bring forth).
- Schaf**, *n.*, E. sheep; O. H. G. scāf; A. S. sceap (E. ewe, from Lat. ovis, not connected).
- Schale**, *f.*, E. scale; O. H. G. scāla=shell of fruit.
- Schatz**, *m.*, E. treasure; O. H. G. scaz=money, fortune; A. S. sceatt.
- Schere**, *f.*, E. shears, scissors; O. H. G. scāri; A. S. sceran=to cut in two.
- Schiff**, *n.*, E. skiff, vessel; O. H. G. scif, scef; A. S. scip; cf. French é-quiper, to equip.
- Schilling**, *m.*, E. shilling (-ing=derivative syll.); O. Germ. skellan=to sound metallic.
- Schlaf**, *m.*, E. sleep; O. H. G. slāf; Got. slēps; A. S. slæp.
- schlecht**, E. bad; had formerly only the meaning straight, even; O. H. G. slēht; Got. slaihts, straight.
- schließen**, E. to shut; O. H. G. sliozan. (Probably, Lat. claudo-sum for s-clausum.)
- Schmied**, *m.*, E. smith; M. H. G. smit; O. H. G. smid; Got. smī-applies to hard wood, metals.
- Schnee**, *m.*, E. snow; M. H. G. snē; O. H. G. snōo; A. S. snāw; Got. snaiws. The Latin (nix) nivis, and Gk. νίφει, it snows, have lost *s* before the *n*.
- schön**, E. fine; M. H. G. schoene; O. H. G. scōni=glittering, brilliant; Got. skauns=form, originally only meaning "with a form" [cf. Lat. forma for beauty].
- schreiben**, E. write (cf. scribe); O. H. G. scriban, from Lat. scribere. [Connected with E. shrive.]
- Schule**, *f.*, E. school; M. H. G. schuole; O. H. G. scuola, from Lat. scōla, schola.
- Schwein**, *n.*, E. swine; M. H. G. swīn; A. S. swīn; Got. swein [connected with **Satt**, which see].
- Schwester**, *f.*, E. sister; O. H. G. swēster; Got. swistar; A. S. sweostor; Skt. swasr; Lat. soror.
- schwören**, E. to swear; O. H. G. sweren; Got. swaran; A. S. swerjan [cf. E. an-swer].
- sechs**, E. six; O. H. G. sehs; A. S. six; Got. sahs; Lat. sex; Gk. ἕξ; Skt. sas.
- sehen**, E. to see; O. H. G. sēhan; A. S. seohan, seon [cf. Lat. sequi=follow (with the eyes)].
- sein**, E. to be; M. H. G. sīn (from various roots, cf. Lat. sum, sunt; es, est; fio, etc.).
- sich**, E. oneself; O. H. G. sih; cf. Lat. se; Gk. ἐ; Skt. sva=own.
- Sieg**, *m.*, E. victory; O. H. G. sigi, sigu, from Skt. root sah=to conquer. [Perhaps Gk. ἐ-συχ-ον.]
- sitzen**, E. to sit; O. H. G. sizzian; A. S. sittan. Cf. Lat. sedeo; Gk. ἕζομαι for σεδ-jo-.
- Slave**, *m.*, E. slave, from Slavus; a Latin term, from the Slavonian war-prisoners.
- Sohn**, *m.*, E. son; O. H. G. sūn, sunu; Got. sunus; Skt. sūnū [sū=bring forth in Skt.].
- Sold**, *m.*, pay (cf. soldier), from French solde=pay, reward, wages; Lat. solidus, a coin.
- Sommer**, *m.*, E. summer; O. H. G. sumar; A. S. sumor [Skt. sama=year].
- Sonne**, *f.*, E. sun; O. H. G. sunna [cf. Lat. sol; Gk. ἥλιος; Skt. svar, sū, to shine].
- Spiegel**, *m.*, E. looking-glass; O. H. G. spiagal; Lat. speculum.
- stahn**, *m.*, state; and **Stadt**, E. town, from Lat. status; Ind. G. sta=stehen, to stand.
- stehen**, E. to stand; O. H. G. stēn, stān; Got. standan; cf. Lat. stare; Gk. ἵστα-ναι.
- sterben**, E. to die (cf. starve); O. H. G. sterbān; A. S. steorfan.
- stern**, *m.*, E. star; O. H. G. stērnō; Got. staimnō; A. S. steorra; Gk. ἀ-στήρ; Lat. stella.
- Strasse**, *f.*, E. street; O. H. G. strāza; A. S. stract, from Lat. via strata=paved way.

**Stube, f.**, E. room (cf. stove); O. H. G. stuba; A. S. stofe=room with heating contrivance (?).  
**Süd, m.**, E. South, with loss of *n* from O. H. G. sundan; A. S. sūth [connected with sun (?)].  
**süß, E.** sweet; M. H. G. sūeze; O. H. G. swuozī, suozī; A. S. swēte; cf. Lat. suavis; Gk. ἡδύς.

**Tafel, f.**, E. table; M. H. G. tavel; O. H. G. tavalā, from Lat. tabella, tabula.  
**Tag, m.**, E. day; O. H. G. tac(g); Got. dags; A. S. daeg; Skt. dah=to burn [not Lat. dies].  
**Taler, m.**, E. dollar, a new G. word from Joachimstaler, a florin from the Joachimsthal, valley of J.  
**Taufe, f.**, E. baptism [dip]; O. H. G. toufa; Got. daupjan; A. S. dopian (to: tief, deep).  
**Tausend, E.** thousand; M. H. G. tusent; O. H. G. tusunt; A. S. thusend; thusundi.  
**Teil, m.**, E. share (deal); Got. dail; A. S. dael.  
**Teller, m.**, E. plate, from Italian tagliere, connected with tailler, to cut (cf. E. tailor).  
**Teufel, m.**, E. devil; M. H. G. tiuvel; O. H. G. tioval; Lat. diabolus (in 6th century).  
**Tochter, f.**, E. daughter; O. H. G. tohtar; A. S. dohtor; cf. Gk. θυγάτηρ. (Perhaps Skt. dūh=to milk.)  
**Tod, m.**, E. death; M. H. G. tōt; Got. dauthus; cf. E. die (root lost for G. sterben, to die).  
**treu, E.** true; M. H. G. triuwe; A. S. treowe [cf. E. truth, troth; French trêve=truce].  
**tun, E.** to do; M. H. G. tuon; A. S. dōn; cf. Lat. de-di; Gk. θε in τι-θη-μι, to put; Skt. dhā.  
**Türe, f.**, E. door; O. H. G. turi; A. S. duru; Ind. G. dhur; Gk. θύρα; Lat. fores.  
**Tugend, f.**, E. virtue; M. H. G. tugend [to verb taugen, to be worth].  
**Turm, m.**, E. tower, from Lat. turris; A. S. tūr, torr. (Unexplained change of *r* into *m*.)

**üben, E.** to practise; O. H. G. noben [cf. Lat. opus=work; operari, to work, sacrifice].  
**Uhr, f.**, E. clock, hour; from Lat. hora, French heure (silent *h*).

**Veilchen, n.**, E. violet, a diminutive; M. H. G. viēl; from Lat. viola (cf. Fr. violette).  
**Vieh, n.**, E. [fee] beast; O. H. G. fēhu; A. S. feoh, from Lat. pecus, cattle [cf. pecunia=money].

**Wagen, m.**, E. carriage, wain; A. S. waegn; Ind. G. root wegh, to pull, drive; Lat. veh-iculum.  
**wahr, E.** true; O. H. G. wāri; connected with Lat. verus [but A. S. soth, E. sooth].  
**Wasser, n.**, E. water; O. H. G. wazzar; A. S. waeter; Ind. G. ud=wet, in Gk. ὕδωρ, water; Lat. udus.  
**Weib, n.**, E. woman, wife; M. H. G. wib; A. S. wif. [Perhaps Skt. vip=to be enthusiastic (?)]  
**Wein, m.**, E. wine; O. H. G. wīn; A. S. wīn; Got. wein; Lat. vinum; Gk. οἶνος.  
**welch, E.** which; O. H. G. wie-lih; Got. hwi-leiks; A. S. hwylc [=wer+gleið (whe+liko)].  
**Welsh, E.** Welsh; O. H. G. walhisc=romanic [the Celtic "foreigners," the Volcae]. [Cf. E. Wales, Cornwall; G. welsh=French or Italian; also Wallachia.]  
**werden, E.** to become; O. H. G. werdan; Got. wairthan. Perhaps Lat. verito, to turn, change.  
**Westen, m.**, E. west; O. H. G. westan. [Cf. Lat. vesper, Gk. ἑσπερα=evening, west.]  
**wild, E.** wild; O. H. G. wildi=going astray (scarcely with Lat. silva or G. Wald, wood).  
**wissen, E.** know (wit, wot); O. H. G. wizzan (cf. Got. wait=ið weiß, I know); Lat. video.  
**Wort, n.**, E. word; Got. waurd, from Ind. G. wṛdho-. (Cf. Lat. verbum.)

**zählen, E.** to count, tell; M. H. G. zaln, zeln; A. S. tellan; Got. talzjan, to instruct.  
**zeigen, E.** to show; O. H. G. zeigōn; Ind. G. root dik; cf. Lat. dico, Gk. δεικνυμι.  
**zwanzig, E.** twenty; O. H. G. zweinzug; A. S. twentig [-tig from Got. tigu; cf. Lat. decem].  
**zwei, E.** two; M. H. G. zwēne (*fem.* zwo, *neut.* zwei); A. S. *fem.* twō; Lat. duo; Gk. δύο; so that *zwei*, two, is really the neuter form of the word A. S. twegen; Skt. dva.  
**zwischen, E.** between; O. H. G. zwisken, between two; connected with *zwei*, above.

*Note.*—The above short Dictionary contains, as a rule, only root-words, and the intelligent student will easily connect a great number of derivatives with them, especially after he has studied the preceding sections on Derivation and Word-formation. Some words also, the derivation of which from Latin is very self-evident, or which entered straight and unchanged from Latin or Greek, such as *Physiologie*, *Astronomie*, etc., *Rector*, *Nation*, etc., have been omitted.



## APPENDIX B.

[N.B.--These Lists might be learnt with advantage very early in the Student's course.]

IN order to assist the pupil in that most essential and also most difficult part in the study of any foreign language, namely, the speedy acquisition of its vocabulary, we append here the most important words which are, with slight modifications, the same in German and English. Roots only are given as a rule, but the intelligent student will find little difficulty in grouping some derivatives round each root; for example: *sleep*—*Schlaf*, *m.* (given): from this come *schlafen*, *to sleep*; *einschläfern*, *to send to sleep*; *verschlafen* (*sich*), *to oversleep oneself*; *Schlafzimmer*, *bedroom*; *Schlaftrunk*, *sleeping draught*; *schläfrig*, *sleepy*, etc. In almost all cases the etymologically related word in the one language is also the equivalent in meaning of its fellow in the other language; where this is not so, the modern meaning of the word is given in brackets, as, for example, English *town* (*hedge*), a walled-in or hedged-in collection of houses, and German *Baum*, *a hedge*. Unchanged, or only slightly changed, Latin or Greek words are not given in the following lists; many of them are spelt the same way in German and English, as *Nation* (*f.*), *April* (*m.*), *September*, *December*, etc.; others are only different in their terminations, thus, English *-ty*=German *-tät*; as *university*=*Universität*, *faculty*=*Fakultät*, etc. English *-y*=German *-ie*, as *philosophy*=*Philosophie*, *geography*=*Geographie*, etc. English *-ics*=German *-ik*, as *politics*=*Politik*, *physics*=*Physik*, etc.

Proper names of persons, towns, or countries are not given here.

### I. Words exactly alike in form and meaning in English and German.

all	all	butter	Butter, <i>f.</i>	mast	Mast, <i>m.</i>	still (quiet)	stills
altar	Altar, <i>m.</i>	fall	fall-en, <i>irreg.</i>	mild	mild	stink	stink-en, <i>irreg.</i>
ball	Ball, <i>m.</i>	fast	fast-en, <i>reg.</i>	moor	Moor, <i>n.</i>	strand	Strand, <i>m.</i>
balsam	Balsam, <i>m.</i>	find	find-en, <i>irreg.</i>	name	Name, <i>m.</i>	tiger	Tiger, <i>m.</i>
band	Band, <i>n.</i>	finger	Finger, <i>m.</i>	nest	Nest, <i>n.</i>	wall	Wall, <i>m.</i>
bank	Bank, <i>f.</i>	gas	Gas, <i>n.</i>	pack	pack-en, <i>reg.</i>	wander	wander-en, <i>reg.</i>
banner	Banner, <i>n.</i>	gold	Gold, <i>n.</i>	pause	Pause, <i>f.</i>	ware	Ware, <i>f.</i>
baron	Baron, <i>m.</i>	hack	hack-en, <i>reg.</i>	post	Post, <i>f.</i>	warm	warm
begin	begin-n-en, <i>irreg.</i>	hammer	Hammer, <i>m.</i>	ring	Ring, <i>m.</i>	warn	warn-en, <i>reg.</i>
bind	bind-en, <i>irreg.</i>	hand	Hand, <i>f.</i>	rose	Rose, <i>f.</i>	wild	wild
bitter	bitter	hinder	hinder-n, <i>reg.</i>	sand	Sand, <i>m.</i>	wind	Wind, <i>m.</i>
blind	blind	horn	Horn, <i>n.</i>	send	send-en, <i>half reg.</i>	winter	Winter, <i>m.</i>
brief	Brief (= letter)	hunger	Hunger, <i>m.</i>	sink	sink-en, <i>irreg.</i>	wolf	Wolf, <i>m.</i>
bring	bring-en, <i>half reg.</i>	land	Land, <i>n.</i>	stand	Stand, <i>m.</i>	and a few others	

## II. Words nearly alike.

alms	Almosen, <i>n.</i>	hole (cave)	Höhle, <i>f.</i>	pair	Paar, <i>n.</i>	span	Spanne, <i>f.</i>
bake	back=en, <i>irreg.</i>	hell	Hölle, <i>f.</i>	palm	Palme, <i>f.</i>	star	Stern, <i>m.</i>
bible	Bibel, <i>f.</i>	king	König, <i>m.</i>	paper	Papier, <i>n.</i>	state	Staat, <i>m.</i>
bundle	Bündel, <i>n.</i>	knot	Knoten, <i>m.</i>	paradise	Paradies, <i>n.</i>	stir (disturb)	stör=en, <i>reg.</i>
coal	Kohle, <i>f.</i>	lip	Lippe, <i>f.</i>	praise	preis=en, <i>irreg.</i>	title	Titel, <i>m.</i>
cell	Zelle, <i>f.</i>	lungs	Lunge, <i>f.</i>	priest	Priester, <i>m.</i>	true	treu (= faithful)
cellar	Keller, <i>m.</i>	man	Mann, <i>m.</i>	pulse	Puls, <i>m.</i>	verse	Verß, <i>m.</i>
flame	Flamme, <i>f.</i>	mantle	Mantel, <i>m.</i>	rat	Ratte, <i>f.</i>	vest	Veste, <i>f.</i>
friend	Freund, <i>m.</i>	market	Markt, <i>m.</i>	raw	roh	well	wohl
glass	Glas, <i>n.</i>	naked	nackt	see	seh=en, <i>irreg.</i>	west	Westen, <i>m.</i>
grade	Grad, <i>m.</i>	new	neu	sole	Sohle, <i>f.</i>	will	Wille, <i>m.</i>
grass	Gras, <i>n.</i>	nine	neun	son	Sohn, <i>m.</i>	woe !	weh !
grim	grimm[=ig]	often	oft	soul	Seele, <i>f.</i>	wool	Wolle, <i>f.</i>

[These could not be classified in the following lists.]

## III. Vowel Variations.

1. English *a* generally=German *a*, as *father*, Vater (*m.*); *man*, Mann, etc.; but English *a* often=German *e*, as in :

angel	Engel, <i>m.</i>	fat	fett	rain	Regen, <i>m.</i>
arch-	Erz	lark	Perche, <i>f.</i>	to starve (die)	sterben, <i>irreg.</i>
[archbishop]	Erzbis[chof]	to lay	legen, <i>reg.</i>	wasp	Wespe, <i>f.</i>
harvest	Herbst, <i>m.</i>	mass	Messe, <i>f.</i>	way	Weg, <i>m.</i>

2. English *e* sometimes=German *e*, as *bed*, Bett (*n.*); *send*, senden, etc.; but,  
(i.) English *e*=German *a*, as in :

beck	Bach, <i>m.</i>	fern	Farn, <i>m.</i>	stem	Stamm, <i>m.</i>
bench	Bank, <i>f.</i>	guest	Gast, <i>m.</i>	then	dann
eel	Aal, <i>m.</i>	to let	lassen, <i>irreg.</i>	there	da (dar)
evening	Abend, <i>m.</i>	seed	Saat, <i>f.</i>	twenty	zwanzig

- (ii.) English *e*=German *i* (ie), as in :

fever	Fieber, <i>n.</i>	nether	nieder (unter)	step-	Stief
fresh	frisch	paper	Papier, <i>n.</i>	[stepfather]	Stiefvater]
here	hier	seven	sieben		

3. (i.) English *ea*=German *a* (ä), as in :

bear	Bär, <i>m.</i>	ear (of corn)	Ähre, <i>f.</i>	stead	Statt, <i>f.</i>
beard	Bart, <i>m.</i>	meagre (lean)	mager	weapon	Waffe, <i>f.</i>
clear	klar	meal	Mahl (-zeit)	year	Jahr, <i>n.</i>

- (ii.) English *ea*=German *au*, as in :

beam (tree)	Baum, <i>m.</i>	dreary	traurig	to leap (run)	laufen, <i>irreg.</i>
deaf	taub	heap	Haufe, <i>m.</i>	seam	Saum, <i>m.</i>
dream	Traum, <i>m.</i>	leaf	Laub, <i>n.</i>		

(iii.) English *ea*=German *e* (*ee*), as in :

to break	brechen, <i>irreg.</i>	to knead,	kneten, <i>reg.</i>	to seat	setzen, <i>reg.</i>
earnest	ernst	to lean	lehnen, <i>reg.</i>	to shear	schere, <i>irreg.</i>
earth	Erde, <i>f.</i>	to learn	lernen, <i>reg.</i>	spear	Speer, <i>m.</i>
to eat	essen, <i>irreg.</i>	leather	Leder, <i>n.</i>	to steal	stehlen, <i>irreg.</i>
feast	Fest, <i>m.</i>	meal (flour)	Mehl, <i>n.</i>	tea	Thee, <i>m.</i>
feather	Feder, <i>f.</i>	pearl	Perle, <i>f.</i>	to tread	treten, <i>irreg.</i>
heart	Herz, <i>n.</i>	sea	See, <i>f.</i>	weather	Wetter, <i>n.</i>
hearth	Herd, <i>m.</i>				

(iv.) English *ea*=German *ei*, as in :

to heal	heilen, <i>reg.</i>	to reach	reichen, <i>reg.</i>	weak (soft)	weich
heath	Heide, <i>f.</i>	sheath	Scheide, <i>f.</i>	wheat	Weizen, <i>m.</i>
to mean	meinen, <i>reg.</i>	sweat	Schweiß, <i>m.</i>		

(v.) English *ea*=German *o* (*ö*), as in :

dead	tot	Easter	Ostern, <i>n.</i>	to hearken	hören, <i>reg.</i>
death	Tod, <i>m.</i>	flea	Floh, <i>m.</i>	stream	Strom, <i>m.</i>
ear	Ohr, <i>n.</i>	great	groß	to swear	schwören, <i>irreg.</i>
east	Osten, <i>m.</i>	to hear	hören, <i>reg.</i>		

4. (i.) English *ee*=German *a* (*ä*), as in :

cheese	Käse, <i>m.</i>	sheep	Schaf, <i>n.</i>	steel	Stahl, <i>m.</i>
deed	Tat, <i>f.</i>	sleep	Schlaf, <i>m.</i>	street	Straße, <i>f.</i>

(ii.) English *ee*=German *ei*, as in :

free	frei	three	drei
------	------	-------	------

(iii.) English *ee*=German *ie*, as in :

beer	Bier, <i>n.</i>	deep	tief	keel	Riel, <i>m.</i>
creep	kriechen, <i>irreg.</i>	deer [animal]	Tier, <i>n.</i>	knee	Knie, <i>n.</i>

(iv.) English *ee*=German *o*, as in :

fleet	Flotte, <i>f.</i>	need	Not
-------	-------------------	------	-----

(v.) English *ee*=German (*ü*) *u*, as in :

to feel	fühlen, <i>reg.</i>	heed [guard]	Hut, <i>f.</i>	to seek	suchen, <i>reg.</i>
green	grün	keen [bold]	fühn	sweet	süß

5. English *ew*=German *au*, as in :

to brew	brauen, <i>reg.</i>	to hew	hauen, <i>irreg.</i>	screw	Schraube, <i>f.</i>
dew	Tau, <i>m.</i>	to mew	miauen, <i>reg.</i>		

6. English *i*=often German *i*, as in *milk*, *Milch* (*f.*), etc. ; but,(i.) English *i*=German *ai*, as in :

bride	Braut, <i>f.</i>	to dive	tauchen	fist	Faust, <i>f.</i>
dip (baptize)	taufen, <i>reg.</i>	to drip	traufen	to sip (sup)	saufen

(ii.) English *i* = German *e*, as in :

field	Feld, <i>n.</i>	liver	Leber, <i>f.</i>	slight (bad)	schlecht
to fight	fechten, <i>irreg.</i>	to milk	melken, <i>irreg.</i>	to stick	stecken, <i>reg.</i>
to give	geben, <i>irreg.</i>	quick (bold)	feß	to strive	streben, <i>reg.</i>
knight (groom)	Knecht, <i>m.</i>	right	Recht, <i>n.</i>	to think	denken, <i>half reg.</i>
to live	leben, <i>reg.</i>	six	sechs		

(iii.) English *i* = German *ei*, as in :

to bite	beißen, <i>irreg.</i>	to grip	greifen, <i>irreg.</i>	to smite	schmeißen, <i>irreg.</i>
to drive	treiben, <i>irreg.</i>	mile	Meile, <i>f.</i>	stiff	steif
ditch, dyke (pond)	Teich, <i>m.</i>	pipe	Pfeife, <i>f.</i>	swine	Schwein, <i>n.</i>
ice	Eis, <i>n.</i>	prize, price	Preis, <i>m.</i>	tide (time)	Zeit, <i>f.</i>
idle (vain, useless)	eitel	rich	reich	twig	Zweig, <i>m.</i>
iron	Eisen, <i>n.</i>	to ride	reiten, <i>irreg.</i>	white	weiß
fig	Feige, <i>f.</i>	ripe	reif	wide	weit
file	Feile, <i>f.</i>	side	Seite, <i>f.</i>	wife	Weib, <i>n.</i>
fine	fein	to shine	scheinen, <i>irreg.</i>	wise	weise
to glide	gleiten, <i>irreg.</i>				

(iv.) English *i* = German *u* (*ü*), as in :

birth	Geburt, <i>f.</i>	hip	Hüfte, <i>f.</i>	sin	Sünde, <i>f.</i>
cripple	Krüppel, <i>m.</i>	kiss	Kuß, <i>m.</i>	thin	dünn
to fill	füllen, <i>reg.</i>	mill	Mühle, <i>f.</i>	thirst	Durst, <i>m.</i>
flight	Flucht, <i>f.</i>	minster	Münster, <i>n.</i>	tinder	Zunder, <i>m.</i>
to gird	gürten, <i>reg.</i>	mint	Münze, <i>f.</i>		

7. (i.) English *o* = German *a*, as in :

cold	kalt	long	lang	to throng	sich drängen, <i>reg.</i>
to fold	falten, <i>reg.</i>	nose	Nase, <i>f.</i>	wold (wood)	Wald, <i>m.</i>
to hold	halten, <i>irreg.</i>	old	alt		

(ii.) English *o* = German *e*, as in :

more	mehr	snow	Schnee, <i>m.</i>	worth	Wert, <i>m.</i>
roe	Reh, <i>n.</i>	work	Werk, <i>n.</i>		

(iii.) English *o* = German *ei*, as in :

bone	Bein, <i>n.</i>	holy	heilig	stone	Stein, <i>m.</i>
both	beide	home	Heim, <i>n.</i>	stroke	Streich, <i>m.</i>
cloth (dress)	Kleid, <i>n.</i>	hot	heiß	token	Zeichen, <i>n.</i>
ghost	Geist, <i>m.</i>	most	meist	two	zwei

(iv.) English *o* = German *u* (*ü*), as in :

bosom	Busen, <i>m.</i>	fodder	Futter, <i>n.</i>	over	über
box	Büchse, <i>f.</i>	for	für	to prove	prüfen, <i>reg.</i>
brother	Bruder, <i>m.</i>	ford	Furt, <i>f.</i>	shot	Schuß, <i>m.</i>
copper	Kupfer, <i>n.</i>	fox	Fuchs, <i>m.</i>	storm	Sturm, <i>m.</i>
to do	tun, <i>irreg.</i>	to hop	hüpfen, <i>reg.</i>	wonder	Wunder, <i>n.</i>
-dom	-tum	mother	Mutter, <i>f.</i>	worm	Wurm, <i>m.</i>
as : kingdom	Reichthum				

8. English *oa*=German *ei*, as in :

broad	breit	oath	Eid, <i>m.</i>	soap	Seife, <i>f.</i>
oak	Eiche, <i>f.</i>				

9. English *oo*=German *u* (*ü*), as in :

blood	Blut, <i>n.</i>	cool	kühl	foot	Fuß, <i>m.</i>
bloom (flower)	Blume, <i>f.</i>	door	Türe, <i>f.</i>	good	gut
book	Buch, <i>n.</i>	flood	Flut, <i>f.</i>	hoof	Huf, <i>m.</i>
booth	Bude, <i>f.</i>	floor	Flur, <i>f.</i>	stool	Stuhl, <i>m.</i>
brood	Brut, <i>f.</i>				

10. (i.) English *ou*=German *au*, as in :

foul (lazy)	faul	louse	Laus, <i>f.</i>	rough	rauh
house	Haus, <i>n.</i>	mouse	Maus, <i>f.</i>	sour	sauer
loud	laut	out	aus	thousand	tausend

(ii.) English *ou*=German *u*, as in :

enough	genug	plough	Pflug, <i>m.</i>	through	durch
ground	Grund, <i>m.</i>	round	rund	wound	Wunde, <i>f.</i>
hound	Hund, <i>m.</i>	south	Süd(en)		

11. English *ow*=German *au* (*u*), as in :

brown	braun	cow	Ruh, <i>f.</i>	sow	Sau, <i>f.</i>
brows	Brauen	shower	Schauer, <i>m.</i>	town (hedge)	Zaun, <i>m.</i>

12. (i.) English *u*=German *au*, as in :

to endure	dauern, <i>reg.</i>	scum	Schaum, <i>m.</i>	up	auf
plum	Pflaume, <i>f.</i>	thumb	Daumen, <i>m.</i>		

(ii.) English *u*=German *e*, as in :

to burn	brennen, <i>half reg.</i>	churl (fellow)	Berl, <i>m.</i>	to run	rennen, <i>half reg.</i>
---------	---------------------------	----------------	-----------------	--------	--------------------------

(iii.) English *u*=German *o*, as in :

full	voll	summer	Sommer, <i>m.</i>	thunder	Donner, <i>m.</i>
gulf	Golf, <i>m.</i>	sun	Sonne, <i>f.</i>	tun	Tonne, <i>f.</i>
murder	Mord, <i>m.</i>	to stutter	stottern, <i>reg.</i>	turf	Torf, <i>m.</i>
spur	Sporr, <i>m.</i>				

(iv.) English *u*=German *ü*, as in :

hut	Hütte, <i>f.</i>	must	müssen, <i>aux.</i>	to pluck	pflücken, <i>reg.</i>
-----	------------------	------	---------------------	----------	-----------------------



## IV. Consonant Variations.

[The Student is recommended to look up pp. 135-137 in the Grammar.]

1. VOWEL-CONSONANTS *y, i* in English = *g* in German, as in :

day	Tag, <i>m.</i>	rain	Regen, <i>m.</i>	wain (carriage)	Wagen, <i>m.</i>
eye	Äuge, <i>n.</i>	[said	ge-sag-t]	way	Weg, <i>m.</i>
honey	Honig, <i>m.</i>	sail	Segel, <i>n.</i>	yester(-day)	gestern
to lay	leg-en, <i>reg.</i>	to say	sag-en, <i>reg.</i>	<i>y=j</i> (spirans)	
maid	Magd, <i>f.</i>	to slay (hit)	schlag-en, <i>irreg.</i>	young	jung
nail	Nagel, <i>m.</i>				

2. SPIRANS *s*, by itself, presents no variations in the two languages, but(a) English *sh* = German *sch*, as in :

ash(es)	Asche, <i>f.</i>	shade	Schatten, <i>m.</i>	ship	Schiff, <i>n.</i>
bishop	Bischof, <i>m.</i>	shame	Scham, <i>f.</i>	shoe	Schuh, <i>m.</i>
bush	Busch, <i>m.</i>	sharp	scharf	shot	Schuß, <i>m.</i>
fish	Fisch, <i>m.</i>	shear	scher-en, <i>irreg.</i>	shovel	Schaufel, <i>f.</i>
flesh	Fleisch, <i>n.</i>	sheath	Scheide, <i>f.</i>	shower	Schauer, <i>m.</i>
fresh	frisch	sheep	Schaf, <i>n.</i>	to wash	wasch-en, <i>irreg.</i>
marsh	Marſch, <i>m.</i>	to shine	ſchein-en, <i>irreg.</i>		

(b) English *sk* (*sc*) = German *sch*, as in :

flask	Flasche, <i>f.</i>	scarlet	Scharlach, <i>m.</i>	skiff	Schiff, <i>n.</i>
scale	Skale, <i>f.</i>	scour	ſchener-n, <i>reg.</i>	skirt	Schürze, <i>f.</i>
scarf	Schärpe, <i>f.</i>	scum	Schaum, <i>m.</i>		(=apron)

(c) English *sl* = German *schl*, as in :

to slay (hit)	ſchlag-en, <i>irreg.</i>	slight (bad)	ſchlecht	to slumber	ſchlummer-n, <i>reg.</i>
to sleep	ſchlaf-en, <i>irreg.</i>				

Exception : slave = Sklave [Fr. *esclave*].

(d) English *sm* = German *schm*, as in :

small	ſchmal	smith	Schmied, <i>m.</i>	smut	Schmutz, <i>m.</i>
to smite (throw)	ſchmeiß-en, <i>irreg.</i>				

(e) English *sn* = German *ſchn*, as in *snow* = Schne.

## 3. LABIAL MUTES :

(a) English *b* generally = *b* in German, except in :

bolster	Polſter, <i>n.</i>	knob	Knopf, <i>m.</i>	table	Taſel, <i>f.</i>
N.B.—English <i>mb</i> = German <i>mm</i> , as in :					
chamber	Kammer, <i>f.</i>	dumb (stupid)	dumm	thumb	Daumen, <i>m.</i>
to climb	klimm-en, <i>irreg.</i>	lamb	Lamm, <i>n.</i>	to tumble	tummel-n, <i>reg.</i>
comb	Kamm	to slumber	ſchlummer-n, <i>reg.</i>		

(b) (i.) English *p*=German *f* (*ff*), as in :

ape	Affe, <i>m.</i>	help	Hilfe, <i>f.</i>	sharp	scharf
bishop	Bischof, <i>m.</i>	hip	Hüfte, <i>f.</i>	sheep	Schaf, <i>n.</i>
deep	tief	to hope	hoffen, <i>reg.</i>	ship	Schiff, <i>n.</i>
to drip	triefen, <i>irreg.</i>	to leap (run)	laufen, <i>irreg.</i>	sleep	Schlaf, <i>m.</i>
to gape (gaze)	gaffen, <i>reg.</i>	open	offen	soap	Seife, <i>f.</i>
to grip (grasp)	greifen, <i>irreg.</i>	pepper	Pfeffer, <i>m.</i>	step	Stufe, <i>f.</i>
harp	Harfe, <i>f.</i>	ripe	reif	up	auf
heap	Haufe, <i>m.</i>	shape (create)	schaffen, <i>irreg.</i>	weapon	Waffe, <i>f.</i>

(ii.) English *p* (*pp*)=German *pf*, as in :

apple	Apfel, <i>m.</i>	pan	Pfanne, <i>f.</i>	plough	Pflug, <i>m.</i>
copper	Kupfer, <i>n.</i>	path	Pfad, <i>m.</i>	to pluck	pflücken, <i>reg.</i>
cramp	Krampf, <i>m.</i>	penny	Pfennig, <i>m.</i>	plum	Pflaume, <i>f.</i>
drop	Tropfen, <i>m.</i>	pepper	Pfeffer, <i>m.</i>	post (beam)	Pfosten, <i>m.</i>
to hop	hüpfen, <i>reg.</i>	pipe	Pfeife, <i>f.</i>	pound	Pfund, <i>m.</i>
hop(s)	Hopfen, <i>m.</i>	plant	Pflanze, <i>f.</i>	to stamp	stampfen, <i>reg.</i>
pale (paling)	Paßl, <i>m.</i>	plaster	Pflaster, <i>n.</i>		

(c) (i.) English *f*=German *b*, as in :

calf	Kalb, <i>n.</i>	life	Leben, <i>n.</i>	staff	Stab, <i>m.</i>
deaf	taub	loaf	Laib, <i>m.</i>	thief	Dieb, <i>m.</i>
half	halb	self	selb(-st)	wife	Weib, <i>n.</i>
leaf	Laub, <i>n.</i>				

(ii.) English *f*=German *p*, as in :

cliff	Klippe, <i>f.</i>	to offer (sacrifice)	opfern, <i>reg.</i>	scarf	Schärpe, <i>f.</i>
flat	platt				

(iii.) English *f*=German *v*, as in :

father	Vater, <i>m.</i>	be-fore	vor	to for-get	ver-geffen, <i>irreg.</i>
folk	Volk, <i>n.</i>	[fowl (bird)]	Vogel, <i>m.</i>	to for-sake	ver-laffen, <i>irreg.</i>
four	vier	full	voll		

(d) (i.) English *v*=German *b*, as in :

dove	Taube, <i>f.</i>	to have	haben, <i>aux.</i>	to shave	schaben (rasieren), <i>reg.</i>
to drive	treiben, <i>irreg.</i>	to heave (lift)	heben, <i>irreg.</i>	to shove	schieben, <i>irreg.</i>
even	eben	knave (boy)	Knabe, <i>m.</i>	sieve	Sieb, <i>n.</i>
evening	Abend, <i>m.</i>	to live	leben, <i>reg.</i>	silver	Silber, <i>n.</i>
evil	übel	liver	Leber, <i>f.</i>	to starve (die)	sterben, <i>irreg.</i>
fever	Fieber, <i>n.</i>	navel	Nabel, <i>m.</i>	to strive	streben, <i>reg.</i>
to give	geben, <i>irreg.</i>	over	über	to weave	weben, <i>irreg.</i>
grave	Grab, <i>n.</i>	raven	Rabe, <i>m.</i>		
harvest	Herbst, <i>m.</i>	seven	sieben		

(ii.) English *v*=German *f*, as in :

devil	Teufel, <i>m.</i>	oven	Ofen, <i>m.</i>	shovel	Schaufel, <i>f.</i>
five	fünf	to prove (examine)	prüfen, <i>reg.</i>	twelve	zwölf
haven	Hafen, <i>m.</i>				

## 4. DENTAL MUTES :

(a) English *d*=German *t*, as in :

beard	Bart, <i>m.</i>	dip (baptize)	taufen, <i>reg.</i>	hard	hart
to bid	bieten, <i>irreg.</i>	ditch (pond)	Teich, <i>m.</i>	idle (vain)	eitel
bladder	Blatter, <i>f.</i>	to do	tun, <i>irreg.</i>	to knead	kneten, <i>reg.</i>
blade (leaf)	Blatt, <i>n.</i>	-dom	-tum	loud	laut
blood	Blut, <i>n.</i>	door	Türe, <i>f.</i>	middle	Mitte, <i>f.</i>
bread	Brot, <i>n.</i>	dough	Teig, <i>m.</i>	need	Not, <i>f.</i>
bride	Braut, <i>f.</i>	dove	Taube, <i>f.</i>	old	alt
broad	breit	dream	Traum, <i>m.</i>	red	rot
brood	Brut, <i>f.</i>	drink	trinken, <i>irreg.</i>	to ride	reiten, <i>irreg.</i>
cold	kalt	to drip	triefen, <i>irreg.</i>	saddle	Sattel, <i>m.</i>
dale	Tal, <i>n.</i>	to drive	treiben, <i>irreg.</i>	seed	Saat, <i>f.</i>
dance	Tanz	drop	Tropfen, <i>m.</i>	seldom	selten
daughter	Tochter, <i>f.</i>	flood	Flut, <i>f.</i>	side	Seite, <i>f.</i>
day	Tag, <i>m.</i>	fodder	Futter, <i>n.</i>	shade	Schatten, <i>m.</i>
dead	tot	to fold	fallen, <i>reg.</i>	spade	Spaten, <i>m.</i>
deaf	taub	ford	Furt, <i>f.</i>	stead	flatt
dear	teuer	garden	Garten, <i>m.</i>	tide (time)	Zeit, <i>f.</i>
deep	tief	to gird	gürten, <i>reg.</i>	to tread	treten, <i>irreg.</i>
deer (animal)	Tier, <i>n.</i>	to glide	gleiten, <i>irreg.</i>	to wade	waten, <i>reg.</i>
devil	Teufel, <i>m.</i>	God	Gott, <i>m.</i>	wide	weit
dew	Tau, <i>m.</i>	good	gut	word	Wort, <i>n.</i>

(b) (i.) English *t*=German *ff*, *ß*, as in :

better	besser	kettle	Kessel, <i>m.</i>	to smite (throw)	schmeißen, <i>irreg.</i>
to bite	beißen, <i>irreg.</i>	to let	lassen, <i>irreg.</i>	spit	Spieß, <i>m.</i>
to eat	essen, <i>irreg.</i>	lot	Los, <i>n.</i>	street	Straße, <i>f.</i>
foot	Fuß, <i>m.</i>	nettle	Nessel, <i>f.</i>	sweat	Schweiß, <i>m.</i>
to forget	vergeßen, <i>irreg.</i>	nut	Nuß, <i>f.</i>	sweet	süß
great	groß	out	aus	that	daß, daß
to hate	hassen, <i>reg.</i>	settle (chair)	Essel, <i>m.</i>	water	Wasser, <i>n.</i>
hot	heiß	to shoot	schießen, <i>irreg.</i>	white	weiß

(ii.) English *t*=German *z* (*ß*), as in :

cat	Katze, <i>f.</i>	smut (dirt)	Schmutz, <i>m.</i>	town (hedge)	Zaun, <i>m.</i>
curt	furz	swart (black)	schwarz	twelve	zwölf
heart	Herz, <i>n.</i>	tell (count)	zählen, <i>reg.</i>	twenty	zwanzig
malt	Malz, <i>f., n.</i>	ten	zehn	twig	Zweig, <i>m.</i>
mint	Münze, <i>f.</i>	tide (time)	Zeit, <i>f.</i>	to twitter	zwitschern, <i>reg.</i>
net	Netz, <i>n.</i>	tin	Zinn, <i>n.</i>	two	zwei
plant	Pflanze, <i>f.</i>	tinder	Zunder, <i>m.</i>	wart	Warze, <i>f.</i>
salt	Salz, <i>n.</i>	to (at)	zu	wheat	Weizen, <i>m.</i>
to set	setzen, <i>reg.</i>	token	Zeichen, <i>n.</i>	to whet	weßen, <i>reg.</i>
to sit	sitzen, <i>irreg.</i>	toll	Zoll, <i>m.</i>	wit	Wiß, <i>m.</i>
skirt (apron)	Schürze, <i>f.</i>	tongue	Zunge, <i>f.</i>		

(c) (i.) English *th*=German *ð*, as in :

bath	Bad, <i>n.</i>	oath	Eid, <i>m.</i>	thine	dein
both	beide	path	Pfad, <i>m.</i>	thing	Ding, <i>n.</i>
booth	Bude, <i>f.</i>	sheath	Scheide, <i>f.</i>	to think	denken, <i>half reg.</i>
brother	Bruder, <i>m.</i>	smith	Schmied, <i>m.</i>	thirst	Durst, <i>m.</i>
cloth	Kleid, <i>n.</i>	south	Süd(en), <i>m.</i>	this	dies(=er, =e, =es)
death	Tod, <i>m.</i>	that	daß, das	thorn	Dorn, <i>m.</i>
earth	Erde, <i>f.</i>	thatch	Dach, <i>n.</i>	thou	du
feather	Feder, <i>f.</i>	the	der, die, das	three	drei
heath	Heide, <i>f.</i>	there	da, dort	throng	Drang, <i>m.</i>
hearth	Herd, <i>m.</i>	thick	dicke	through	durch
leather	Leder, <i>n.</i>	thief	Dieb, <i>m.</i>	thumb	Daumen, <i>m.</i>
north	Nord(en), <i>m.</i>	thin	dünn	thunder	Donner, <i>m.</i>

(ii.) English *th*=German *t* (*tt*), as in :

birth	Ge-burt, <i>f.</i>	mother	Mutter, <i>f.</i>	worth	Wert, <i>m.</i>
father	Vater, <i>m.</i>	weather	Wetter, <i>n.</i>		

## 5. GUTTURAL MUTES :

(a) English *ch*=German *f*, as in :

anchor	Anker, <i>m.</i>	chamber	Kammer, <i>f.</i>	chest	Kiste, <i>f.</i>
bench	Bank, <i>f.</i>	chapel	Kapelle, <i>f.</i>	chin	Kinn, <i>n.</i>
-chafer	Käfer, <i>m.</i>	cheese	Käse, <i>m.</i>	finch	Fink, <i>m.</i>
chalk (lime)	Kalk, <i>m.</i>				

(b) (i.) English *gh*=German *ch*, as in :

daughter	Tochter, <i>f.</i>	light	Licht, <i>n.</i>	sight	Sicht, <i>f.</i>
eight	acht	might	Macht, <i>f.</i>	slight (bad)	schlecht
to fight	fechten, <i>irreg.</i>	neighbour	Nachbar, <i>m.</i>	through	durch
flight	Flucht, <i>f.</i>	night	Nacht, <i>f.</i>	wight	Wicht, <i>m.</i>
high	hoch	right	Recht, <i>n.</i>	wight	Ge-wicht, <i>n.</i>
knight (groom)	Knecht, <i>m.</i>				

(ii.) English *gh*=German *g*, as in :

dough	Teig, <i>m.</i>	trough	Trog, <i>m.</i>	to weigh	{ wägen, <i>reg.</i> { wiegen, <i>irreg.</i>
plough	Pflug, <i>m.</i>				

(c) English *c* (hard)=German *f* (*ff*), as in :

acre	Acker, <i>m.</i>	cleft	Kluft, <i>f.</i>	come	kommen, <i>irreg.</i>
calf	Kalb, <i>n.</i>	climb	klimmen	cook	Koch, <i>m.</i>
can	können, <i>aux.</i>	coast	Küste, <i>f.</i>	corn	Korn, <i>n.</i>
cap	Kappe, <i>f.</i>	cold	kalt	to cost	kosten, <i>reg.</i>
cat	Katze, <i>f.</i>	comb	Kamm, <i>m.</i>		

(d) English *k* (*ck*) = German *ch*, as in :

ark	Arch <i>e</i> , <i>f</i> .	like	g-leich	sick	ſich
beck (brook)	Bach, <i>m</i> .	to make	machen, <i>reg</i> .	sickle	ſichel, <i>f</i> .
book	Buch, <i>n</i> .	milk	Milch, <i>f</i> .	spoke (of a wheel)	Spelche, <i>f</i> .
to break	brechen, <i>irreg</i> .	monk	Mönch, <i>m</i> .	stroke	Streich, <i>m</i> .
to cook	kochen, <i>reg</i> .	oak	Eiche, <i>f</i> .	token	Zeichen, <i>n</i> .
hark !	horch !	to reek (smoke)	rauchen, <i>reg</i> .	week	Woche, <i>f</i> .
lark	Lerche, <i>f</i> .	to seek	ſuchen, <i>reg</i> .		

(e) English *x* = German *chſ*, as in :

axle	Achſe, <i>f</i> .	flax	Flachſ, <i>m</i> .	six	ſechſ
box	Buchſ, <i>m</i> .	fox	Fuchſ, <i>m</i> .	wax	Wachſ, <i>n</i> .
box	Büchſe, <i>f</i> .	ox	Ochſ(e), <i>m</i> .		

6. The liquids *l*, *m*, *n*, *r* present only very isolated variations in the two languages, as :

to freeze	fric-en, <i>irreg</i> .		iron	Eiſen, <i>n</i> .
-----------	-------------------------	--	------	-------------------

THE END.



*PRINTED AT THE EDINBURGH UNIVERSITY PRESS*

BY T. AND A. CONSTABLE, PRINTERS TO HER MAJESTY.



14 DAY USE  
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED

**LOAN DEPT.**

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or  
on the date to which renewed.

Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

12 JAN '61	
REC'D LD	
FEB 20 1961	
6 MAR '61 LJ	
REC'D LD	
JUN 3 1961	
5 SEP '61 LUX	
REC'D LD	
JUN 16 1962	
9 JAN '65 MD	
REC'D LD	
DEC 16 '64 - 10 AM	

LD 21A-50m-4,'60  
(A9562s10)476B

General Library  
University of California  
Berkeley



